

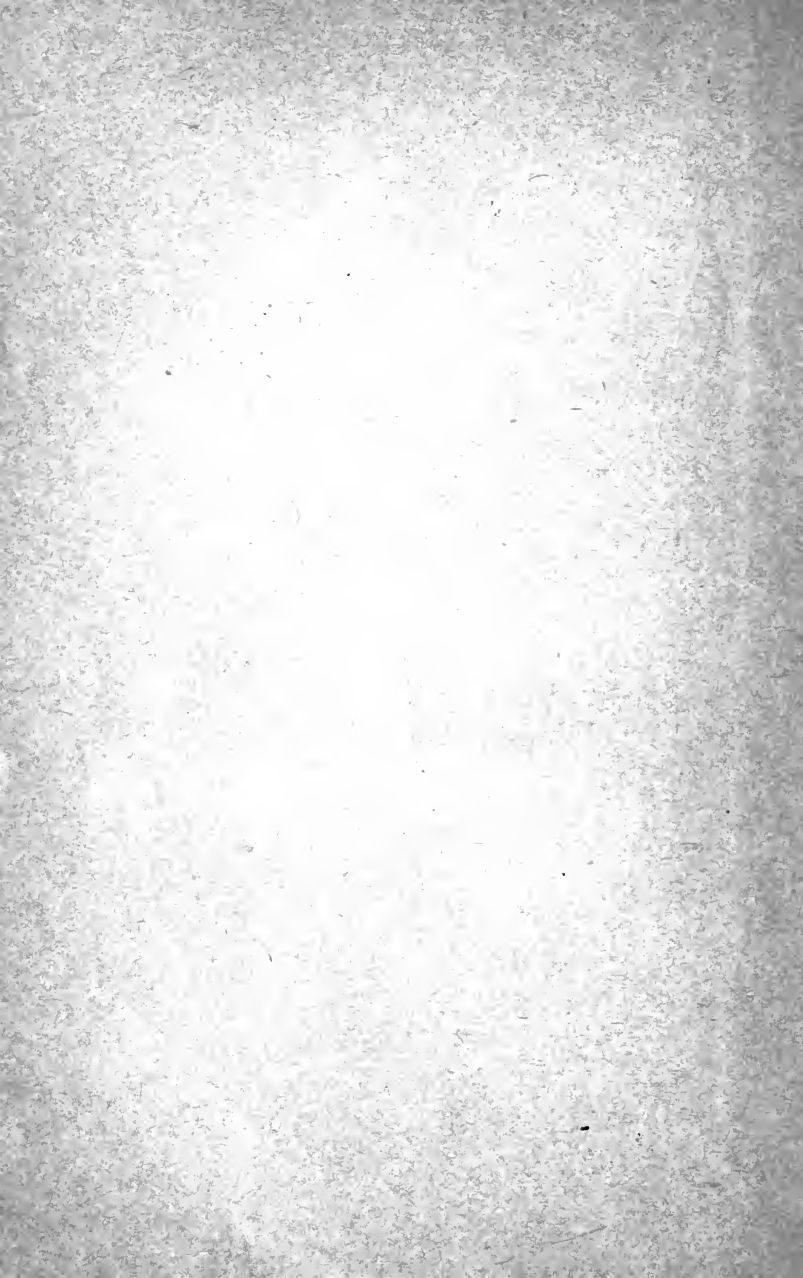


LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.
GIFT OF

Pres. Martin Kellogg.

Received *Sept.* 1895.

Accessions No. *60772* Class No. *760*



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

AN INDUCTIVE LATIN METHOD

AN INDUCTIVE
M. Kellogg
LATIN METHOD

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

ISAAC B. BURGESS, A.M.

INSTRUCTOR IN PUBLIC LATIN SCHOOL. BOSTON, MASS.



NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

FROM THE PRESS OF
IVISON, BLAKEMAN & COMPANY.

60772
Copyright, 1888,

BY IVISON, BLAKEMAN, AND COMPANY

7431
11-12
176
M4



PREFACE.

THERE is clearly no demand for a new Introductory Latin book, unless it is one which differs essentially from those already in use. The score or more of methods which have appeared in this country are constructed practically according to the same idea. Though many of them are scholarly and progressive, all are merely companions to the grammar, and not guides to the language. The existence of so many "methods" indicates a feeling that, thus far, an entirely satisfactory introductory book has not been found. If anything additional were needed to justify the existence of this feeling, it would be found in the lack of interest which characterizes the average student of Latin, and in the confessedly small results accomplished in college.

The method presented in this book claims to overcome both of these difficulties. It will arouse enthusiasm; it will increase results. It is not supposed that this claim will be accepted until the merits of the method have been tested in the class-room; but the following outline of the plan of the work which it advocates may, perhaps, show the value of the principles on which the claim is based.

1. A sentence or part of a sentence of the original text (in later work, even a section) is placed before the pupil. The pronunciation and exact translation of each word are furnished him. By the aid which the teacher gives him in advance, and with the help given in the book, he thoroughly masters the words and phrases of this

sentence or section. His knowledge is tested by requiring him to recite or write the Latin sentence, with only the translation before his eye.

2. In connection with this mastery of the words and phrases of the sentence assigned, the pupil reads and digests the contents of the "Notes" on these words. This study accomplishes two things: first, the careful examination of each remark, with its application to the work in hand, aids in fixing more firmly in mind the word sought to be mastered; second, grammatical material is being collected from the very beginning of his work.

3. The "Text" and "Notes" having been learned, the next step is one of a more general character. Out of the material which has thus far been mastered, those principles which are of most importance, and which the pupil himself will be most likely to recognize, are pointed out under the head of "Observations." The pupil may be brought to see these points for himself before having his attention called to them in the "Lesson."

4. The grammatical material obtained in the "Lesson" is now systematized and arranged with references to the two leading grammars. This not only furnishes a review of what already has been done, but also enables the pupil to see the connection of each new fact or principle with the others to which it stands related.

5. The words of the sentence or section are now separated from their context and placed in alphabetical order. Thus separated, they form the basis of additional study. In some cases words similar in form and meaning to familiar English words are inserted in order to allow greater variety in the exercise.

6. In order to prevent the memorizing of the Latin text without a clear idea of the force of each word, to impress more firmly on the mind the words and phrases of the text, and to drill the pupil in prose composition, — "Exercises," Latin into English and English into Latin, are given. These are always based upon the sentence or section which furnishes the basis of the "Lesson." Prose composition taught in this manner ceases to be dreaded by the pupil, and becomes, indeed, a source of delight.

7. Once more the leading points of the entire lesson, whether suggested in the "Notes," the "Observations," or the "Grammar Lesson," come up for consideration under the head of "Topics for Study." Upon each topic the student is expected to make a statement of what *he knows* (not of what has been said in the book). If his statement is not sufficiently full, it will be criticised by the class.

From this outline the idea of the Method will be apparent. It proposes : first, to gain an accurate and thorough knowledge of some of the facts of the language ; second, to learn from these facts the principles which they illustrate, and by which they are regulated, third, to apply these principles in the further progress of the work. A few words in explanation of this statement are needed :

1. The method employed is inductive, and yet a slight departure is made at times to allow a more complete treatment of a subject, in order to elucidate some detail of which an example has not occurred.

2. The term "facts," as used, includes data from every source. Special emphasis is laid upon the collecting of facts from the living page of the original text ; but paradigms and vocabularies are also to be used for this purpose.

3. It is not to be supposed that a long time must elapse before the beginner is ready to take hold of principles. As a matter of fact, he is taught important principles, and that, too, inductively, during the first hour's work. The three processes are all the while going on together. He is increasing the store of facts at his command, learning from the facts thus acquired new principles, and applying these principles to the new forms continually coming to his notice.

4. The memorizing of the facts of a language, before a knowledge of the principles has been acquired, is, indeed, a piece of drudgery, and yet not so great as is the memorizing of grammar without a knowledge of the facts. Nor will it long remain drudgery ; for very soon the student begins to see analogies, to compare this word with that, and in short to make his own grammar.

The Lessons cover Chapters 1-20 of Book I. of Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and include a formal study of almost every

portion of the grammar. Special attention is given to review, lessons for the purpose being frequently inserted. Some additional items of interest to teachers will be found elsewhere.

Professor Lewis Stuart, Ph.D., of Alma College, Alma, Mich., and Professor George H. Horswell, Ph.D., of the North-Western University, Evanston, Ill., were at first associated in the work of preparing the book ; but ill-health and the pressing duties of their positions compelled them to withdraw. The material of Appendix C, viz. the Latin Word-Lists, has been kindly furnished by Professor Horswell.

The sheets, as well as a part of the manuscript, have been read by Professor Charles Chandler, Denison University, Granville, Ohio. It is not to be understood that Professor Chandler is responsible for all the statements contained in the book ; the authors, however, desire hereby to acknowledge the great value of his contributions to the work. Many valuable hints have been received also from Professor William E. Waters, Ph.D., Cincinnati, Ohio, and from Professor F. J. Miller, M.A., Worcester, Mass.

It is hardly to be expected that the first edition of a book constructed upon a plan so different from any heretofore employed will be found perfect in execution. For suggestions, corrections, and criticisms, proper acknowledgment will be made. It is hoped that this book may receive from instructors of Latin as kindly a reception as has been accorded by instructors of Hebrew to the Inductive Hebrew Method.

WILLIAM R. HARPER,
ISAAC B. BURGESS.

AUGUST 18, 1888.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

1. Use twenty minutes of every hour in explaining to the class the new points of the advance-lesson ; and in no case ask a class to prepare a lesson which has not thus been explained.

2. Do not fail to require the pupil so to master the text that, with the English translation before his eye, he can repeat or write the original with accuracy and without hesitation ; and with every advance-lesson let the text of the ten or twelve preceding lessons be reviewed.

3. Let every point referred to in the "Notes" be called up in one form or another in the class-room.

4. In teaching the "Observations," let the words or phrases which serve as the basis of the "Observations" be written upon the board.

5. Insist upon the thorough mastery of the "Vocabularies," not only from the Latin into English, but also from the English into Latin.

6. In the translation of the English sentences into Latin, the following order is suggested : (1) The pupil will write the exercise in a blank-book ; (2) He will copy it upon the blackboard ; (3) The instructor will read and correct the work on the board, the pupil at the same time incorporating the corrections in his blank book ; (4) The instructor will examine the book and mark all words which contain an error ; (5) The pupil will take the book and correct all words so marked. To carry out this plan two blank books are required.

7. The Review lessons are very important, and should be dwelt upon until thoroughly mastered.

8. Much time can be saved and much good accomplished by having the class do a portion of the work in concert. This is especially helpful in reproducing the original text from the English translation and in reviewing the "English-Latin Exercises."

9. It is unnecessary, indeed harmful, to tell the pupil everything that may be said concerning a word or form, when it first occurs. Nor should one feel obliged, when a general statement is made concerning a given point, to indicate all the exceptions which exist.

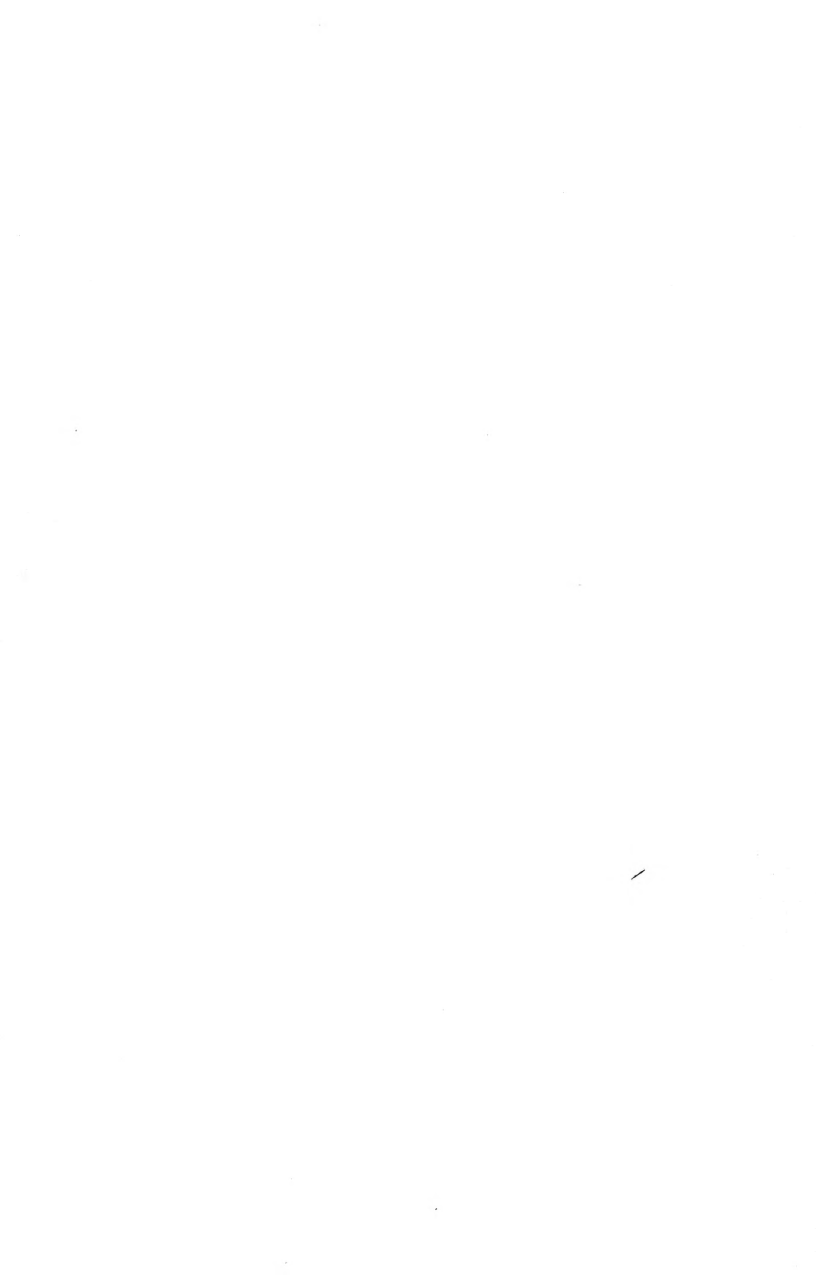
10. Require the mastery of the paradigms, but not merely that they may be recited by rote. The pupil should study and compare them, with a view to ascertaining the principles in accordance with which they are constructed. As paradigms are commonly studied, they work more injury than benefit.

11. Introduce conversation in Latin upon the text if possible ; it relieves the monotony of a recitation ; it fixes the text more firmly in mind ; it teaches the pupil to think in the language which he is studying. Every teacher knows the common stock of interrogative words and phrases, or can get them from a grammar.

12. It is not supposed that an ordinary class will learn *one* lesson a day. If the seventy lessons can be covered in one hundred to one hundred and forty recitations, the progress should be regarded as satisfactory.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS	ix
LESSONS I.-LXIX.	7
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	249
TEXT OF CÆSAR, B. G. I. 1-29	256
LITERAL AND FREE TRANSLATION	271
APPENDIX A. METHOD OF READING LATIN	279
APPENDIX B. NOTES ON B. G. I. 21-29	281
APPENDIX C. WORD-LISTS	287
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	290
VOCABULARY : —	
LATIN-ENGLISH	291
ENGLISH-LATIN	312



INDUCTIVE LATIN METHOD.

LESSON I.

NOTE. — In studying the “Text” and “Notes,” the pupil will observe the following suggestions: —

(1) Take up first the word **Gāl-lī-ǎ**, and notice the number of syllables, the marks of quantity over the vowels, and the meaning. After reading carefully what is said about the word in Note 1 (*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*), pronounce it aloud several times, each time associating the meaning with the sound.

(2) Treat in the same manner the remaining words of the lesson, but in no case take up a new word until the word preceding it has been thoroughly mastered.

(3) Having mastered the words separately, study the sentence as a whole, pronouncing and writing out the Latin with only the English translation (p. 271) before the eye.

(4) Understand from the beginning that every word and sentence of the Latin text is to be mastered. Nothing short of absolute mastery will answer the purpose.

1. TEXT.

Gāl-lī-ǎ	ěst	ǫ-mnīs	dī-vī-sǎ	īn	pǎr-tēs	trēs.
Gaul	is	as-a-whole	divided	into	parts	three.

2. NOTES.

1. **Gāl-lī-ǎ**, *Gaul*; cf. *Galatia*, *Gael*, *Gaelic*: (*a*) vowel sounds, ǎ as in *Cuba* correctly pronounced, ī as in *cigar*;¹ (*b*) vowels unmarked, or marked thus, ǎ, are short, — marked thus, ā, are long; (*c*) accent the first syllable; (*d*) the ending -ǎ indicates the feminine singular.

¹ It would be confusing to explain two methods of pronunciation in the same notes. The teacher who prefers the English method will omit these notes on pronunciation and substitute others adapted to that method.

2. *ĕst, is; cf. est* (French), *ist* (German), *is*: (a) *ĕ* as in *met*; (b) *-t*, the ending of the third person singular of the verb, means *he, she, or it*. **Est** (*he, she, or it*) *is*; **Galliā est**, *Gaul is*.

3. *ō-mnīs, all, as-a-whole; cf. omni-present omni-bus (for all)*: (a) *ō = o* in *obey*; (b) accent the first syllable.

4. *dī-vī-sā, divided*: (a) *ī = i* in *caprice*; the long vowels are identical with the short vowels in quality, the only difference being that the short vowels are less prolonged in pronunciation; (b) *v = w* in *we*; (c) *s* is always like *ss* in *hiss*, never like *z*; (d) accent the second syllable, *dīvīsā*; (e) the feminine singular ending is *-ā*; *cf. Galliā*; (f) *est dīvīsā, is divided*; *omnis Galliā est dīvīsā, all Gaul is divided*; *Galliā est omnis dīvīsā, Gaul is as-a-whole divided*.

5. *īn, into; cf. in* (Eng. and Germ.), *en* (French).

6. *pār-tēs, parts*: (a) *ē = ey* in *they*; (b) the ending *-ēs* indicates the plural; *cf. the Eng. hero, heroes*.

7. *trēs, three; cf. tre-ble, tri-pod, and three*: (a) *-ēs* is seen here as well as in *partēs* above; (b) here also it indicates the plural.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Vowel sounds in this lesson; *ǻ, ĕ, ĭ, ō, ē, ī*, as in *art, met, cigar, obey, they, caprice*.

2. The consonants, except *v*, are sounded as in English; but *s* never has the sound of *z*. *v* as *w* in *we*, *s* as *ss* in *hiss*.

3. Words of two syllables take the accent on the first, *ōmnis, pártēs*.

4. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the syllable next to the last (that is, on the penult), if it is long, *dīvīsā*; otherwise on the syllable before the penult (that is, on the antepenult), *Galliā*. A vowel before another vowel is short.

5. The ending *-ā* indicates the feminine singular, *Galliā, dīvīsā*.

6. The ending *-ēs* indicates the plural, *partēs, trēs*.

7. The ending *-t* of the verb indicates the third person singular.

8. All the Latin words in this lesson have related words in English.

9. Names of objects without sex are neuter in English, but in Latin they are often classed as masculine or feminine.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Pronunciation,

Roman method . A. & G. 16.

H. 5, 6, 7.

English method A. & G. 17, entire.

H. 9, 10, 11, 12, 13.

2. Accent A. & G. 19, *a, b*.

H. 17, 18.

3. Number A. & G. 31.

H. 44.

4. Gender A. & G. 28, *a, c*, and note. H. 41 and foot-note.

5. VOCABULARY A.

1. **dī-vī-să**, fem. sing., *divided*.5. **ō-mnīs**, masc. and fem. sing., *all*,2. **ēst**, (*he, she, it*) *is*.*every, as-a-whole*; plur. **ōmnēs**.3. **Gāl-lī-ă**, fem. sing., *Gaul*.6. **păr-tēs**, fem. plur., *parts*.4. **īn**, prep., *into*, sometimes *in*.7. **trēs**, *three*.6. VOCABULARY B.¹1. **Ăquītānĭă**,² *Aquitania*.4. **Ālpēs**, *the*⁵ *Alps*.2. **Hēlvētĭă**,³ *Switzerland*.5. **clĭēntēs**, *clients*.3. **prōvĭncĭă**,⁴ *province*.6. **lĕgĭōnēs**,⁴ *legions*.7. **mōntēs**, *mountains*.8. **ōmnēs**, *all*.9. **pōssĕssĭōnēs**,⁴ *possessions*.10. **quăttŭŏr**,² *four*.11. **ēt**, *and*.

7. EXERCISES.

1. *Translate*: (a) **Galliă est dīvīsă**. (b) **Omnis Galliă est dīvīsă**.
 (c) **Galliă est omnis dīvīsă**. (d) **Omnis Galliă in partēs trēs dīvīsă**
est. (e) **Galliă est omnis dīvīsă in partēs trēs**.

2. (a) **Trēs legiōnēs**. (b) **Alpēs montēs**. (c) **Possessiōnēs**

¹ In this vocabulary the words ending in **-ă** are of course feminine; those ending in **-ēs** are plural.

² **qu** = English *qu* in *quite*.

³ This word is not used by Cæsar.

⁴ **c, g, s**, and **t**, are always pronounced as in *cat, go, so*, and *to*.

⁵ The Latin has no article.

omnēs. (*d*) Clientēs quattuor. (*e*) In quattuor partēs. (*f*) Galliā est prōvinciā. (*g*) Prōvinciā est dīvisā. (*h*) Omnis Helvētiā in quattuor partēs dīvisā est. (*i*) Aquitāniā est dīvisā.

3. *Translate*: (*a*) Gaul is as-a-whole divided. (*b*) All Gaul is divided into parts. (*c*) Gaul is as-a-whole divided into three parts. (*d*) Gaul as-a-whole is divided into three parts. (*e*) As-a-whole Gaul is divided into three parts.

4. (*a*) Three clients. (*b*) All the legions. (*c*) All Helvetia.¹ (*d*) The province as-a-whole is divided. (*e*) Helvetia is as-a-whole divided into four parts.

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Feminine ending. 2. Plural ending. 3. The word for *all*, sing and plur. 4. Place of accent in words of two syllables. 5. In words of more than two syllables. 6. Sound of **v**, **s**. 7. Penult. 8. Antepenult. 9. Related words. 10. Difference in pronunciation between short and long vowels.

LESSON II.

1. TEXT.

Read again the suggestions given in connection with Lesson I. for taking up the text.

Galliā est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs;
 quā-rūm ū-nām in-cō-lūnt Bēl-gæ, ā-lī-ām
 of-which one inhabit the-Belgæ, another
 Ā-quī-tā-nī.
 the-Aquitāni.

2. NOTES.

1. quā-rūm, of which; (*a*) qu = kw = qu in quite; (*b*) ā = a in father; (*c*) ū = oo in book; (*d*) accent on the first syllable.

¹ The student should pronounce proper names in the Eng. exercises as Eng. words and not as Lat. words.

2. **ū-nām**, one; cf. *unit, unite, one*: (a) **ū** = oo in *moon*: (b) for **ā** see **Galliā** I. N. 1 (a)¹; (c) accent on the first syllable; cf. **ōmnis, pártēs, quārum, ūnam**; (d) -am indicates the fem. sing. as direct object; (e) cf. the following sentences: — *confused 2 lines be*

Ūnā (pars) est **Aquītānia**, one part is *Aquitania*.

Ūnam (partem) incolunt **Aquītānī**, the *Aquitani* inhabit one part.

(f) -ā, it will be seen, indicates the fem. sing. as subject, that is, fem. sing. nominative case; while -am indicates fem. sing. as object, that is, fem. sing. objective case, or, as it is called in Latin, accusative case; so, **Galliā, dīvīsam**. *only in one declension*

3. **īn-cō-lūnt**, they inhabit: (a) for vowels **ī, ō, ū**, see above; (b) accent on the antepenult; why? cf. **Gālliā, dīvīsā**; (c) -nt, the ending of the third person plural, *they*; **incolunt**, they inhabit; **Belgæ incolunt**, the *Belgæ* inhabit. *Gas. 8 comes in lat*

4. **Bēl-gæ**, the *Belgæ*: (a) for **ē** see above; (b) **g** is always hard like *g* in *go*, never as in *gem*; (c) **æ** = *i* in *kite*; (d) the ending -æ indicates the feminine plural as subject, i. e. the feminine plural nominative; **prōvinciā**, a province, **prōvinciæ**, provinces; (e) **Belgæ** although having a feminine ending is masculine, because it denotes male beings. A. & G. 29; H. 42, I. 1.

5. **ā-lī-ām**, another, other; cf. *alien, alias, alibi*: (a) for the vowels **ā, ī**, see above; (b) accent on the antepenult; cf. **Gāllia, incolunt, āliam**; (c) -am indicates the fem. sing. accusative; cf. **ūnam, aliam**.

6. **A-quī-tā-nī**, the *Aquitani*: (a) **qu** = *qu* in *quite*; cf. **quā-rūm**; (b) place of the accent? why?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New vowels, **ū, ā, ū** = oo in *book*, *a* in *father*, oo in *moon*; consonants, **g** pronounced as in *go*, **qu** as in *quite*; the diphthong **æ** = *i* in *kite*.

2. Personal endings, 3d sing. -t, 3d plur. -nt.

3. The nominative is the case of the subject, **Galliā, Belgæ**.

4. The accusative is the case of the direct object, **ūnam, aliam**.

¹ I. N. 1 (a) = Lesson I., Note 1, division (a).

5. The ending **-ă** indicates fem. sing. nom., **Galliă**, **dīvisă**.

6. The ending **-am** indicates fem. sing. accus., **ūnam**, **aliām**.

7. The ending **-æ** indicates fem. plur. nom., **prōvinciæ**; but *cf.* **Belgæ**, which is masculine by meaning.

8. Examine the nom. plur. in **Belgæ**, **Aquītānī**, and **partēs**, and note that in Latin there are different declensions, *i. e.* the same case is formed with different endings in different words; *cf. wars, boxes, oxen.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Quantity of vowels . . . | A. & G. 18, <i>a, b, c.</i> | H. 16, notes 1, 2, 3,
4, foot-note 3. |
| 2. Quantity of syllables . . . | A. & G. 18, <i>d, e.</i> | H. 16, I. II. III. |
| 3. Nominative case . . . | A. & G. 31, <i>a.</i> | H. 365, I. |
| 4. Accusative case . . . | A. & G. 31, <i>d.</i> | H. 365, III. 432. |
| 5. Gender | A. & G. 29. | H. 42. |

5. VOCABULARY A.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ă-lī-ă , nom. sing. fem., <i>other,</i>
<i>another.</i> | 5. Bēl-gæ , <i>the Belgæ.</i> |
| 2. ă-lī-ām , accus. sing. fem. | 6. īn-cō-lūnt , <i>they inhabit.</i> |
| 3. ă-lī-æ , nom. plur. fem. | 7. quæ , nom. plur. fem., <i>which.</i> |
| 4. Ă-quī-tā-nī , nom. plur. masc.,
<i>the Aquitani.</i> | 8. quā-rūm , plur. fem., <i>of-which.</i> |
| | 9. ū nă , nom. sing. fem., <i>one.</i> |
| | 10. ū-nām , accus. sing. fem. |

6. VOCABULARY B.

NOM. SING. FEM.

ACCUS. SING. FEM.

NOM. PLUR. FEM.

Nouns.

- | | | |
|--|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Găllīă , ¹ <i>Gaul.</i> | Găllīām. | |
| 2. Hēlvētīă , <i>Switzerland.</i> | Hēlvētīām. | |
| 3. prōvinciă , <i>province.</i> | prōvinciām. | prōvinciæ , <i>provinces.</i> |
| 4. vīă , <i>way.</i> | vīām. | vīæ , <i>ways.</i> |

¹ The marks over the vowels indicate the quantity of the vowels, not the quantity of the syllables in which they stand. The first syllable of **Găllīă** is, of course, long. H. p. 4, foot-note 4.

*Adjectives.*5. *ălăă, other.**ălăăm.**ălăæ.*6. *dīvīsă, divided.**dīvīsăăm.**dīvīsæ.*7. *ūnă, one.**ūnăăm.*

NOM. PLUR. MASC.

NOM. PLUR. MASC.

8. *Ăquītānī, the Aquitani.*11. *Tōlōsătēs, the Tolosates.*9. *Rōmānī, the Romans.*12. *Vērbīgēnī, the Verbigeni.*10. *Tīgūrīnī, the Tigurini.**Verbs.*13. *īncōlūnt, they inhabit.*14. *mīttūnt, they send.*

7. EXERCISES.

In the case of the following words and phrases, (1) pronounce, noting every letter the sound of which in Latin is different from its usual sound in English, also the force of significant endings; (2) translate; (3) give the principle of accent for each Latin word.

1. (a) *Quārum ūnă.* (b) *In partēs trēs.* (c) *Belgæ ūnam* (partem) *īncolunt.* (d) *Aquītānī aliam* (partem) *īncolunt.* (e) *Belgæ et Aquītānī Galliam īncolunt.*

2. (a) *In Helvētiam.* (b) *In Aquītāniam.* (c) *Ūnă pars.* (d) *Trēs partēs.* (e) *Ūnă viă.* (f) *Trēs viæ.* (g) *Tolōsătēs prōvinciam īncolunt.* (h) *Quattuor legiōnēs in Galliam Rōmānī mīttunt.* (i) *Tīgūrīnī et Vērbīgēnī Helvētiam īncolunt.* (j) *Helvētiă est omnis dīvīsă in partēs quattuor, quārum ūnam īncolunt Tīgūrīnī, aliam Vērbīgēnī.*

In the case of the following phrases and sentences, (1) translate into Latin; (2) note the significant endings.

3. (a) Into three parts, of which the Belgæ inhabit one. (b) Into three parts, of which the Aquitani inhabit another. (c) One (part) the Aquitani inhabit. (d) Another (part) the Belgæ inhabit. (e) The Belgæ and the Aquitani inhabit parts.

4. (a) One province. (b) Three provinces. (c) Into another road. (d) Three other roads. (e) The Tolosates inhabit the mountains. (f) The Romans send three legions into the province.

LESSON III.

1. TEXT.

Galliā est omnis divisā in partēs trēs; quārum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitānī,¹

těr-tĩ-ām, quī ĩ-psō-rŭm ĩn-
the third (part, those inhabit) who of themselves in the

guā Cěl-tæ, nŏ-strā Gāl-lī āp-pěl-lān-tŭr.
language Kelts, in ours Gauls are called.

2. NOTES.

1. *těr-tĩ-ām*, *the third*; *cf. tertiary*: (a) *t* always has the sound of *t* in *tin*, never that of *sh* as in *action*; (b) place of accent? (c) this word is the object of *incolunt*, and agrees with the Latin word meaning *part*, both of which are supplied in thought from the preceding clauses; (d) *-a-m* indicates accus. sing. fem., the *a* generally indicating fem. gender and the *-m* accus. sing.; *cf. ūnam, aliam*.

2. *quī*, *who*: (a) the ending *ī* here indicates nom. plur. masc., *cf. Aquitānī*; (b) subject of *appellantur*.

3. *ĩ-psō-rŭm*, *of themselves, their own*: (a) *ō = o* in *note*; (b) place of accent? (c) the ending *-ō-rum* indicates here the genitive case, plur. masc.; *cf. qu-ā-rum*, which is gen. plur. fem. How is the masc. distinguished from the fem. ending in these words? (d) *Aquitānī*, *quī*, *ipsōrum* have the same endings in the nom. and also the gen. plur. masc. What, then, is the nom. plur. masc. of *ipsōrum*? What means *of the Aquitani*, *of whom* or *whose*? (e) *ipsōrum* is joined in translation with *linguā*, *in their own language*. (f) What English case does the Latin genitive somewhat resemble?

¹ From the first, the review should be translated at hearing, and should be pronounced with only the English translation before the eye.

4. *Īn-guā*, in the language; cf. *language*, *lingual*, *linguist*: (a) *gu* before a vowel = *gw*; cf. *qu* in *quite*; (b) *g* is always hard in pronunciation; cf. *Belgæ* II. N. 4; (c) pronounced in two syllables, since *u* is not here a vowel; (d) the ending *-ā* indicates fem. sing., answering the question, *wherein? whereby?* i. e. ablative case. How does *linguā* differ from *linguā* in ending? *linguā*, the language, *linguā*, in the language; the difference in meaning is indicated by *-ā* and *-ā*; the former is nom., the latter is called ablative.

5. *Cēl-tæ*, *Kelts*: (a) *c* = *k*, never *s*; (b) *æ* = *i* in *kite*; cf. *Belgæ*; (c) *-æ* indicates nom. plur. and usually belongs to fem. nouns, but (d) *Celtæ* and *Belgæ* are masc. because the names of males; names of males are always masc. in Lat. as in Eng.

6. *nō-strā*, in ours, cf. *nostrum*, i. e. our remedy, *pater noster*, our father; (a) the ending *ā* indicates ablative (note the translation, in ours), sing. fem., cf. *linguā*; (b) with *nostrā*, *linguā* is to be supplied.

7. *Gāl-lī*, *Gauls*: (a) *ī* indicates nom. plur. masc.; cf. *Aquītānī*, *quī*; (b) *Gallia*, *Gaul*, the country, *Gallī*, *Gauls*, the people inhabiting it.

8. *āp-pēl-lān-tūr*, (they) are called; cf. *appella-ntur*, *es-t*, *he*, *she*, or *it is*, *incolu-nt*, *they inhabit*; hence (a) *appella-t*, *he*, *she*, or *it calls*, *appella-nt*, *they call*, *appella-ntur*, *they are called*; (b) *appellat* means, *he calls by name*, cf. *appellation*. Another meaning of the Eng. word *call*?

3. OBSERVATIONS.¹

1. The ending *-ā* indicates nom. sing. fem.; *-ā* indicates ablative sing. fem.

2. The endings *-ā*, *-ām*, *-ā*, are all sing. fem.; what cases?

3. The endings *-æ*, *-ī*, *-ē*, are all plur.; what cases?

4. The endings *-ārum*, genitive plur. fem.; *-ōrum*, genitive plur. masc.

5. The endings of verb: in active voice, *-t*, *he*, *she*, or *it*, *-nt*, *they*; in passive voice, *-ntur*, *they*.

¹ In reciting the observations, the pupil should give examples of the principles stated, from the text.

4. VOCABULARY A.

In the study of this vocabulary, let the instructor call for the various forms of each word which the pupil should be expected to know.

1. **ăp-pēl-lăn-tŭr**, *they are called (by name).*
2. **Cēl-tæ**, nom. plur. masc., *the Kelts.*
3. **Găl-lī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Gauls.*
4. **ī-psī**, nom. plur. masc., *themselves.*
5. **līn-guă**, nom. sing. fem., *the tongue, language.*
6. **nŏ-stră**, nom. sing. fem., *our.*
7. **quī**, nom. plur. masc., *who.*
8. **těr-tī-ă**, nom. sing. fem., *third.*

5. VOCABULARY B.

9. **Gěr-mă-nī**, **Germănŏrum**, *the Germans.*
10. **Græ-cī**, **Græcŏrum**, *the Greeks.*
11. **Hěl-lē-nēs**, *the Hellenes.*
12. **mī-lī-tēs** (*cf. military, militia*), *soldiers.*
13. **Rŏ-mă-nī**, **Romănŏrum**, *the Romans.*
14. **sŭ-pě-răn-tŭr** (*cf. superior, superb*), *they are overcome.*
15. **těr-ră** (*cf. terra firma, terrestrial, subterranean*), *the earth, a country.*

6. EXERCISES.

(1.) Pronounce. (2.) Translate. (3.) Name the case of each noun or adjective.

1. (a) **Nostră linguă**. (b) **Nostræ linguæ**. (c) **Nostrā linguā**. (d) **Ipsŏrum linguă**. (e) **Ipsŏrum linguā**. (f) **Ūnam** (partem) incolunt **Belgæ**. (g) **Aliam** (partem) incolunt **Aquītānī**. (h) **Tertiam** (partem) incolunt **Celtæ**. (i) **Gallī ipsŏrum linguā Celtæ appellantur**. (j) **Celtæ**, **quī nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur**, **tertiam** (partem) incolunt.

2. (*a*) *Omnēs Germānī superantur.* (*b*) *Militēs Rōmānōrum superantur.* (*c*) *Gallī prōvinciam nostram incolunt.* (*d*) *Graeci ipsōrum linguā Hellēnēs appellantur.* (*e*) *Tertiam (partem) incolunt quī Rōmānōrum linguā Gallī appellantur.* (*f*) *Ūnam terram incolunt Gallī, aliam Germānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Hellēnēs, nostrā Graeci appellantur.*

3. (*a*) The Gauls are called Kelts. (*b*) The Gauls, who in their own language are called Kelts, inhabit the third (part). (*c*) The Kelts, who in our language are called Gauls, inhabit one part. (*d*) The Aquitani and the Belgæ are called Gauls. (*e*) Gaul is as a whole divided into three parts, one of which the Belgæ inhabit, another the Aquitani, the third (those) who in their own language are called Kelts, in ours Gauls.

4. (*a*) Three legions are overcome. (*b*) Gaul is the country of the Gauls. (*c*) They send their own possessions into another part. (*d*) The Belgæ and the Aquitani inhabit three parts. (*e*) (There) is one way into the divided province.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Eng. prepositions equivalent to the endings **-rum** and **-ā**, as used in this lesson. 2. The Eng. pronouns, equivalent to endings **-t**, **-nt**, and **-ntur** in verb. 3. The different Lat. cases and their uses. 4. Feminine endings. 5. Words to be supplied in thought in the text of this lesson. 6. Pronunciation of consonants **t**, **gu**, **g**, and **c**; of vowel **ō** and diphthong **æ**.

LESSON IV.

1. TEXT.

Hī ō-mnēs līn-guā, īn-stī-tū-tīs, lē-gī-būs, īn-tēr
 These all in language, customs, laws, among
sē dīf-fē-rūnt.
 themselves differ.

2. NOTES.

1. **Hī, these:** (a) **ī** indicates nom. plur. masc.; cf. **Aquītānī, quī, Gallī.** (b) The Lat. for *of these* (sometimes equivalent to *their*)? cf. **ipsōrum, quōrum** III. N. 3.

2. **ō-mnēs, all:** (a) for **ō** see I. N. 3. (b) for **s** see I. N. 4 (c). (c) **ēs** indicates plur.; cf. **partēs, trēs.** (d) cf. **omnis**, nom. sing.; **Galliā omnis, all Gaul**, sing.; **hī omnēs, all these**, plur.

3. **līn-guā, in language:** (a) **ā** indicates fem. sing. abl. case; cf. **linguā** III. N. 4, and observe that the ablative **linguā** modifies the verb like an adverb; **ipsōrum linguā appellantur, they are called in (or by) their own language; linguā differunt, they differ in language.** The ablative is the case of adverbial relations. **H. 365, VI.**; (b) since **linguā** tells in what respect *these differ* it is called the abl. of respect, or, by some, the abl. of specification. (c) **linguā, language**, as subject, nom. sing.

linguām, language, as object, accus. sing.

linguā, language, in adverbial uses, abl. sing.

linguæ, languages, as subject, nom. plur.

4. **īn-stī-tū-tīs, in customs, cf. institute, institution:** (a) place of accent? (b) abl. plur. of respect; cf. **linguā** 3 (b).

5. **lē-gī-būs, in laws, cf. legal, legislate.** (a) **g** as in *go*. (b) place of accent? why? (c) abl. plur. of respect. (d) What is the difference between the use of **linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus**, in this sentence and that of **linguā** in III.? see 3 (a), (b). (e) though **insti-**

tūt-īs and **lēg-ībūs** are both abl. plur., one ends in **-īs** and the other in **-ībūs**, see II. Ob. 8.

6. **in-tēr**, *between, among, cf. interval, interview, intervene.*

7. **sē**, *themselves; cf. suicide: (a) accus. plur. with the preposition inter, like the Eng. objective with preposition; cf. in partēs.*

8. **dīf-fē-rūnt**, *they differ; cf. differ, different: (a) -nt ending of the 3d plur., they; cf. incōlu-nt; (b) made up of two words, viz. dis, apart, and ferunt, they bear; cf. in-cōlunt and appellatur for ad-pellantur.* Such words are called compound.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The preposition **in** when it means *into* and the preposition **inter**, *between, among*, require the accusative after them.

2. The ablative of respect or specification is used without a preposition to denote that in respect to which a statement is true.

3. Abl. endings: in sing., **-ā**; in plur., **-īs, -ibus**.

4. Nom. plur. endings, **-æ, -ī, -ēs**.

5. The endings **-æ, -ā-rum**, plur. fem.; **-ī, -ō-rum**, plur. masc.

6. The ending **-is** in nom. sing. becomes **-ēs** in nom. and accus. plur.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. Use of the abl. case in general | A. & G. 242. | H. 365, VI. |
| 2. Abl. of respect or specification | A. & G. 253. | H. 424. |
| 3. Inter | A. & G. 196, f. 153. | H. 433, I. |

5. VOCABULARY A.

- dīf-fē-rūnt**, *they bear apart, differ.*
- hī**, nom. plur. masc., *these.*
- in-stī-tū-tīs**, abl. plur. *customs, institutions.*
- in-tēr**, prep. with accus., *between, among.*
- lē-gī-būs**, abl. plur. *laws; lēgēs*, nom. plur.
- ō-mnīs**, adj. in nom. sing., *all, every; ōmnēs*, nom. plur.
- sē**, accus. plur., *themselves.*

6. VOCABULARY B.

1. **cō-pī-ā**, nom. sing. fem., *plenty*; in plur. *forces, troops*; cf. Eng. *copious, cornucopia (horn of plenty)*.
2. **ēx-trā**, prep. with accus., *beyond*, cf. Eng. *extra*.
3. **Līn-gō-nēs**, nom. and accus. plur., *the Lingones*.
4. **nā-tū-rā**, nom. sing. fem., *nature, disposition*.
5. **Sē-quā-nī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Sequani*.

7. EXERCISES.

Translate, point out the abl. of respect, and name the case of every noun used.

1. (a) *Omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.* (b) *Hi lēgibus inter sē differunt.* (c) *Rōmānī in montēs quattuor legiōnēs mittunt.* (d) *Legiōnēs Rōmānōrum in Alpēs mittuntur.* (e) *Trēs partēs inter sē differunt.*

2. (a) *Terra Belgārum et Celtārum est extrā prōvinciam.* (b) *Via inter montēs et prōvinciam est.* (c) *Cōpiā Sēquanōrum Lingonēs superant.* (d) *Gallī et Germānī nātūrā inter sē differunt.* (e) *Sēquanī et Lingonēs ipsōrum linguā Celtæ appellantur.* (f) *Hi omnēs Galliam incolunt et nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur.*

3. (a) *Their country (the country of these) is Gaul.* (b) *All these differ from one another in language.* (c) *The soldiers of the Belgæ are overcome.* (d) *The Celtæ and the Belgæ, who inhabit Gaul, differ from one another in laws.*

4. (a) *Aquitania is beyond our province.* (b) *The Greeks (Græcī) and Romans differ from one another in disposition.* (c) *The clients are sending (their) possessions.* (d) *They send all the soldiers into the country of the Sequani who dwell beyond the Alps.*

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The following endings of nouns and adjectives: **-ā, -ā, -æ, -ā-rum, -ō-rum, -īs, -ibus, -a-m, -ēs, -ī.** 2. The arrangement of these endings by genders. 3. By cases. 4. The use of the abl. case. 5. Corresponding cases in Eng. and Lat. 6. Difference in form and use of act. and pass. voices. 7. Pronunciation of **o, s,** and

g. 8. The analysis (*i. e.* the separation into component parts) of the endings **-ārum**, **-ōrum**, **-am**, and the explanation of the force of each part. 9. The method of marking quantity in the last Latin exercise.

LESSON V.

1. TEXT.

Gāl-lōs āb A-quī-tā-nīs Gă-rŭm-nă flū-mĕn,
The Gauls from the Aquitani the Garumna river,

ā Bĕl-gīs Mā-trō-nă ět Sĕ-quă-nă dī-vī-dīt. ¹
from the Belgæ the Matrona and the Seine divide(s).

2. NOTES.

1. **Gāl-lōs**, *the Gauls*: (a) **-ō-s** indicates accus. plur. masc.; all nouns and adjectives having the nom. plur. ending **-ī** have **-ō-s** in the accus. plur., *e. g.* **quī**, **quōs**; **Aquītānī**, **Aquītānōs**; **hī**, **hōs**; (b) the object of **dīvidit**; (c) corresponding to the masc. endings **-ōrum**, **-ōs**, are the feminine endings **-ārum**, **-ās**.

2. **āb**, *from*; *cf. absolve*: prep. with the abl. case.

3. **A-quī-tā-nīs**, *the Aquitani*; **-īs** indicates abl. plur.; *cf. institūtīs* IV. N. 4. All nouns and adjectives with the ending **-ī** in nom. plur. have the ending **-īs** in abl. plur.; *cf.* III. N. 3 (c).

4. **Gă-rŭm-nă**, the name of a river: (a) what case? (b) subject of **dīvidit**; (c) **-ă** in the nom. sing. usually indicates fem. gender, but **Garumna**, like most names of rivers, is masc. by meaning; *cf. Celtæ* III. N. 5 (d).

5. **flū-mĕn**, *that which flows, the river*; *cf. fluid*: (a) nom. sing., neuter gender; (b) the word **flūmen** refers to the same thing as **Garumna**, and describes it like an adj., just as the word *river* describes **Garumna** in the phrase *the Garumna, a river, or the river Garumna*.

¹ The pupil should not lose sight of the suggestions made in the first lesson, touching the order and plan of study.

6. *ā*, *from*; *cf. avert*: same word as **ab**; *cf. 2*; before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* the form **ab** must be used; before a consonant, except *h*, *ā* is generally used.

7. **Bēl-gīz**, *the Belgæ*: (a) abl. plur., from nom. plur. **Belgæ**; *cf. II. n. 4*; (b) the ending is **-īs**, as in **Aquītānīs**, which has nom. plur. ending **-ī**.

8. **dī-vī-dīt**, *he, she, or it divides*; *cf. dīvīsa I. n. 4*: (a) **-t** indicates 3d person sing., *cf. est*; (b) the verb though having two subjects connected by **et** (*and*) is sing., because the two rivers, *Matrona* and *Seine*, are thought of as forming a single boundary.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending **-ō-s**, accus. plur. masc.; **-ā-s**, accus. plur. fem.
2. The ending **-īs**, abl. plur. masc. and fem.
3. The abl. is used with prep.
4. Two or more sing. subjects may take a verb in the sing. when they form a unit in sense.
5. The prep. *ā* or **ab** is used with the ablative. **Ab** stands before a vowel or *h*, *ā* before a consonant.
6. The ending **-en** in the nom. sing. is neuter.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| 1. Two or more subjects with a sing. verb | H. 463, II. 3. |
| 2. Gender of names of rivers . . . A. & G. 29, a. | H. 42, I. 2. |
| 3. Abl. with prep. A. & G. 260. | H. 432. |

5. VOCABULARY A.

1. *ā*, *ab*, prep. with abl., *from, by*.
2. **dī-vī-dīt**, *he, she, or it divides*; **dīvidunt**, *they divide*; **dīviduntur**, *they are divided or being divided*.
3. **flū-mēn**, nom. sing. neut., *a river*.
4. **Gă-rūm-nă**, nom. sing. masc., *the Garumna*.
5. **Mā trō-nă**, nom. sing. masc., *the Matrona*.
6. **Sē-quă-nă**, nom. sing. fem., *the Seine*. H. 43, 1.

6. VOCABULARY B.

1. **contendit**, *he strives, hastens.*
2. **Helvētiā**, *the country of the Helvetii, now Switzerland.*
3. **Helvētiī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Helvetii.*
4. **lēgātī**, nom. plur. masc., *lieutenants, ambassadors.*
5. **Orgetorix**, nom. sing. masc., *a Helvetian chief.*
6. **Rhodanus**, nom. sing. masc., *the Rhone.*

7. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Aquitānōs ā Gallis Garumna flūmen dīvidit. (b) Gallōs ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. (c) Flūmen est Garumna inter Gallōs et Aquitānōs. (d) Belgās ā Germānīs Rhēnus dīvidit. (e) Helvētiī, quōs ā prōvinciā montēs dīvidunt, Helvētiam incolunt.

2. (a) Ūna in Sēquanōs via est. (b) Sēquanī ab Helvētiīs dīviduntur. (c) Lēgātī ab Helvētiīs contendunt. (d) Prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs Rhodanus flūmen dīvidit. (e) Lēgātōs in Germānōs Helvētiī mittunt.

3. (a) The Garunna river separates the Gauls from the Aquitani. (b) Orgetorix hastens into the country of the Sequani. (c) All these differ from one another. (d) All these are called Kelts in their own language. (e) The legions are sent between the mountains and the Helvetii.

4. (a) The Romans overcome the soldiers whom the Aquitani send. (b) The languages of the Gauls differ from one another. (c) The Kelts differ from the Aquitani in language, customs, and laws. (d) Ambassadors, whose country is Gaul, hasten into Helvetia. (e) The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Analysis of the endings **-ōs** and **-ās** and force of each part.
2. New nom. ending. 3. Agreement of verb and subject. 4. Plur. ending of masc. nouns. 5. Similarity of masc. and fem. nouns in the plur. 6. Cases with prep. 7. Use of prefix *a* or *ab* in Eng. 8. Gender by meaning rather than ending in Lat. 9. The new gender in this lesson. 10. Position of **ā** and **ab**.

LESSON VI.

1. TEXT.

Hō-rūm ō-mnī-ūm fōr-tīs-sī-mī sūnt Bēl-gæ,
 Of these (of) all the bravest are the Belgæ,
 prōp-tēr-ē-ā quōd ā cūl-tū āt-quē
 on account of this because from the civilization and also
 hū-mā-nī-tā-tē prō-vīn-cī-æ lōn-gīs-sī-mē āb-sūnt.
 the refinement of the province very far they are distant.

2. NOTES.

1. **Hō-rūm**, of *these*; cf. 3: (a) case and gender? cf. **hī** IV. N. 1; **ipsōrum** III. N. 3. (b) To what persons previously mentioned in the narrative does **hōrum** refer?

2. **ō-mnī-ūm**, of *all*; cf. **Galliā omnis** I. N. 3; **Galliā dīvisā** I. N. 4; **partēs trēs** I. N. 6 and 7; **hī omnēs** IV. N. 1 and 2: (a) gen. plur.; (b) **omnis** agrees with **Gallia**, **dīvisā** agrees with **Galliā**, **trēs** agrees with **partēs**, **omnēs** agrees with **hī**, and **omnium** agrees with **hōrum**, in case, number, and gender.

3. **fōr-tīs-sī-mī**, the *bravest*; (a) **-ī** indicates nom. plur. masc.; cf. **hī**, **quī**, **Gallī**; (b) **-issimī**, like English **-est** in *brav-est*, is the ending of the superlative degree of the adj.; positive, **fortis**, cf. **omnis**; (c) **hōrum** 1, is joined in translation with this word, thus, *the bravest of these*; i. e., **hōrum** depends upon (hangs from) **fortissimī**; (d) *these*, **hōrum**, denotes the whole (the whole of the Gauls) of which *the bravest*, **fortissimī**, are only a part; cf. **quārum** II., which denotes the whole, while **ūnam** (**partem**), on which it depends, denotes a part; **hōrum** and **quārum** are called partitive genitives, or, by some, perhaps more correctly, genitives of the whole; (e) cf. **ipsōrum linguā** III., where the genitive has exactly the force of an Eng. possessive, *in their own language*; (f) agrees with **Belgæ**, the subject of **sunt**; cf. 2 (b).

4. **sūnt**, *they are* : (a) full form, **es-unt** ; cf. **es-t**, **incol-unt**, Eng. *'t is* for *it is* ; (b) many words have a clearly distinguishable part which remains unchanged, while the endings change ; cf. **appella-t**, **appella-nt**, **appella-ntur**, **linguă**, **linguā**, **linguā-rum**, **linguā-s**. In some cases this common base, called the stem, has been modified or obscured ; cf. **es-t**, **sunt** (for **es-unt**).

5. **prōp-tēr-ē-ā quōd** : **propterea**, adverb, *on account of this* ; **quod**, conjunction, *because*. Both words together may be translated *because*.

6. **ā**, *from* ; cf. **ā** and **āb**, V. N. 2 and 6.

7. **cūl-tū**, *culture, civilization*, abl. sing. masc.

8. **āt-quē**, *and also* : a conjunction, stronger than **et**, emphasizes the word or phrase following it.

9. **hū-mā-nī-tā-tē**, *the humanity, refinement* : abl. sing. fem., used with **ā** like **cultū**.

10. **prō-vīn-cī-æ**, *of the province* : (a) nom. sing. fem. **prōvin-ciā** ; cf. **Galliā**, **linguā** ; (b) **-æ** indicates nom. plur. fem., and also, as here, the gen. sing. fem. (c) Is it a possessive or partitive gen. ? cf. N. 3 (d) (e).

11. **lōn-gīs-sī-mē**, *farthest, very far* : (a) **-ē** is ending of adverb ; (b) **-issimus** indicates nom. sing. masc. of the superlative of the adj. ; **-issimē**, superlative of the adverb. (c) Give the superlative of the adverb meaning *bravely* ? cf. 3 ; (d) this superlative may mean either *most bravely* or *very bravely* ; cf. *farthest, very far*.

12. **āb-sūnt**, *they are away or distant* ; cf. **absent** : **ab**, *away*, and **sunt**, *they are* ; cf. 4 : **b** is pronounced like *ps*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Ending **-æ** indicates gen. sing. fem., as well as nom. plur. fem.
2. The ending of the adverb is **-e**, usually long.
3. Ending **-issimē** indicates superlative degree of adverb.
4. Endings **-i-um**, gen. plur. ; **-ū** and **-e**, abl. sing.
5. "The gen. is put with words which denote a part of a thing, in order to designate the whole which is divided (the partitive gen.)."
6. The name of the person or thing to whom something belongs is often put in the gen., which then has the force of the Eng. possessive.

7. The Lat. adj., including the participle, agrees in case, number, and gender, with the noun to which it belongs.

8. In Lat. all inflected words (*i. e.* all words which change their form when they change their use) have a common base called the stem, to which the inflectional endings are added.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Genitive case . . . A. & G. p. 146, note, H. **393, 394, 395.**
without classification,
and **213.**
2. Possessive genitive . A. & G. **214** and foot- H. **396, I.**
note.
3. Partitive genitive . A. & G. **216.** H. **397.**
4. Agreement of adjectives A. & G. **186.** H. **438.**
5. The stem . . . A. & G. **20** and **21.** H. **46, 1** and **3.**

5. VOCABULARY A.

1. *ăb-sunt, (they) are away or distant ; ăb-est. he, she, or it is away.*
2. *ăt-quě, and, and also.*
3. *cŭl-tŭ, abl. sing., culture, civilization.*
4. *fŏr-tis-sĩ-mĩ, nom. plur. masc. superlative, bravest.*
5. *hŭ-mā-nĩ tā tě, abl. sing. fem., refinement.*
6. *lŏn-gĩs sĩ mŏ, adv., farthest, very far.*
7. *ŏ-mnĩ ũm, gen. plur., of all.*
8. *prŏp-těr ă-ă, adv., for this reason.*
9. *prŏ-vĩn-cĩ-ă, a province.*
10. *quŏd, conj., because.*

6. VOCABULARY B.

1. *ăl tĩs-sĩ-mĩ, nom. plur. masc. superlative, highest.*
2. *fĩ nĩs, nom. sing. masc., the end.*
3. *fĩ nēs, nom. plur., limits, confines, territory.*
4. *Gě-nă-vă or Gě-nŭ-ă, nom. sing. fem., Geneva, a town in Switzerland.*
5. *nŏ-bĩ lĩs, nom. sing., well-known, noble by birth.*
6. *pěr, prep. with accus., through.*

7. EXERCISES.

Translate, distinguish the possessive from the partitive gen., and give the agreement of every adjective.

1. (a) *Hī omnēs fortēs sunt.* (b) *Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.* (c) *Fortissimī sunt proptereā quod longissimē absunt.* (d) *Ab hūmānitāte prōvinciæ absunt.* (e) *Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ, proptereā quod ā cultū longissimē absunt.*

2. (a) *Hī montēs sunt altissimī.* (b) *Helvētiōrum omnium nōbilissimus est Orgetorix.* (c) *Cōpiæ prōvinciæ fortēs sunt.* (d) *Nostræ cōpiæ ā Germānīs longē absunt.* (e) *Per finēs Sēquanōrum in Helvētiam legiōnēs contendunt.* (f) *Montēs quī ab Rōmānīs Helvētiōs dīvidunt, Alpēs sunt.*

3. (a) From the refinement and also from the civilization of the province. (b) The ambassadors are the most noble of the Gauls. (c) They are very far distant from the province. (d) The three parts of Gaul differ from one another. (e) Three parts, of which the Belgæ inhabit one.

4. (a) Four soldiers, of whom these are the tallest (highest). (b) They send all their own possessions beyond the province. (c) The Helvetii hasten through the territory of the Germans. (d) The clients of the Sequani are sent. (e) The Sequani surpass (overcome) the Belgæ in civilization

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The gen. case. 2. The possessive gen. 3. The gen. of the whole. 4. The difference between the two. 5. Agreement of adj. 6. The stem of fem. nouns and adj. learned thus far. 7. Of masc. 8. Of verbs like **appellat**. 9. Of **sunt**. 10. The ending of adverb. 11. The formation of the superlative. 12. Two translations of the superlative. 13. Difference between adj. and adv. in form (or spelling); in meaning. 14. New endings, **-ū**, **-e**, **-i-um**. 15. Two uses of the ending **-æ**. 16. Difference between abl. and gen.

LESSON VII.

1. TEXT.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ, proptereā quod
 ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciæ longissimē absunt,

mī-nī-mē-quē ād ē-ōs mēr-cā-tō-rēs sæ-pē cōm-mē-ānt
 least also to them merchants often go-to-and-fro

āt-quē ē-ā quæ ād ēf-fē-mī-nān-dōs ā-nī-mōs
 and those (things) which to enervate minds

pēr-tī-nēnt īm-pōr-tānt;
 (they) tend (they) bring in;

2. NOTES.

1. **mī-nī-mē-quē**, *least also*; *cf.* Eng. *minimum*: (a) **-ē** in **mi-nimē** indicates ending of adv.; *cf.* **longissimē** VI.; (b) **-quē**, conj., *and, also*, always attached to some other word, and called enclitic, *i. e. leaning upon*; (c) joins the word to which it is attached so closely to that which precedes as to form with it one idea; *cf.* **et** (**Mātrona et Sēquana** V.), which joins less closely things equally important, and **atque** (**cultū atque hūmānitāte** VI.), which throws the emphasis on what follows.

2. **ād**, *to near*: prep., with the accus.; *cf.* **in**, **inter**, **extrā**, **per**.

3. **ē-ōs**, *these, them*: (a) **-ō-s** indicates accus. plur. masc., *cf.* **Gal-lōs** V.; (b) a pron., having for its antecedent **Belgæ**; (c) both **eōs** and **Belgæ** are 3d plur. masc.; *cf.* **quārum** II. and its antecedent **partēs** I.; both are 3d plur. fem. In what respects does the pron. agree with its antecedent? In what respect does it not agree?

4. **mēr-cā-tō rēs**, *merchants*; *cf.* *merchandise, commerce*: (a) **-ēs** indicates nom. or accus. plur.; (b) here nom., subject of **commeant**.

5. *sæ-pě, often*: -ě here indicates an adv.

6. *cõm-mě-ănt, they go-to-and-fro, visit*: (a) cf. *mercătōrēs commeant, Orgetorix commeat*; in what respects does the verb agree with its subject? (b) What is the stem of this tense of the verb? VI. N. 4.

7. *ě ā, those (things)*: (a) accus. plur. neut., direct object of *important*; (b) the nom. and accus. plur. neut. always end in -ă.

8. *quæ, which*: (a) nom. plur. neut. (irregular ending), subject of *pertinent*; (b) antecedent is *ea*; (c) cf. *quī*, nom. plur. masc., *who*; *quōs*, accus. plur. masc., *whom*; *quārum*, gen. plur. fem., *of which*.

9. *ěf-fě-mī-năn-dōs* (in connection with *ad* and *animōs*), *to enervate or weaken minds*; cf. *effeminate*; (a) -ō-s indicates accus. plur. masc.; (b) a participle in agreement with *animōs*; cf. *Gallia dīvisa*.

10. *ă nī mōs, minds, feelings, courage*, accus. plur. masc., after prep. *ad*.

11. *pěr-tī něnt, they stretch out, pertain, tend*: cf. Eng. *pertinent, impertinent*; cf. *pertine-t, it tends, pertine-nt; commea-t, commea-nt; dividi-t, dividu nt*.

12. *īm-põr-tănt, they bring in*; cf. *import, important*: (a) compounded of *in* (changed to *im* before *p*) *into or in*, and *portant, they bring, carry*; (b) subject is *mercătōrēs*; (c) stands at the end of the clause to which it belongs; cf., as to position, *pertinent, commeant, absunt VI., dīvidit V., differunt IV., appellantur III., incolunt II., est I., sunt VI.*; (d) *incolunt* is followed by its subject, and is made emphatic by being placed first; while (e) the verb meaning *to be* in Lat. does not follow the usual rule as to position.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Et* simply connects, *-que* is an enclitic and connects more closely than *et*, *atque* gives prominence to what follows.

2. The ending -ă is the ending of all neut. nouns and adj. in nom. and accus. plur., as well as of nom. sing. fem.

3. There are three classes of verbs as to the formation of present tense indicative mode; one with **a** before the personal ending, one with **e** and one with **i** in 3d sing. and **u** in 3d plur.

4. In composition **n** before **p** is changed to **m**; **d** before **p**, to **p**; and **s** before **f**, to **f**.

5. The prep. **in**, **inter**, **ad**, take the accus., **ā** or **ab** the abl.

6. The pron. agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender, but not in case.

7. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

8. In general, the verb stands at the end of its clause, but the verb meaning *to be* (**est**, **sunt**) does not follow this rule.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Enclitics A. & G. **19**, *c.* H. **18**, 2, 1).
2. **Et**, **-que**, **atque** . . . A. & G. **156**, *a.* H. **554**, 2.
3. Agreement of pron. . . A. & G. **198**. H. **445**.
4. Agreement of verb . . . A. & G. **204**. H. **460**.
5. Position of verb . . . A. & G. **343**, **344**, *a.* H. **560**, **561**, I., II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ā-nī-mī** (*cf. Gallī*), nom. plur. masc., *souls, minds, feelings*.
2. **cōm-mē-ānt**, *they go back and forth, visit*.
3. **ēf-fē-mī-nāt**, *he, she, or it makes effeminate, enervates*.
4. **ī-ī** or **ē-ī**, nom. plur. masc., *they*; *cf. ēā*, nom. and accus. plur. neut., and **ēōs**, accus. plur. masc.
5. **īm-pōr-tānt**, *they bring in, import*.
6. **mēr-cā-tō-rēs**, nom. and accus. plur. masc., *merchants*.
7. **mī nī-mē**, adv., superlative degree, *least, by no means*.
8. **pēr-tī nēnt**, *they stretch out, tend, pertain*.
9. **-quē**, conj., *and*; enclitic.
10. **quī**, nom. plur. masc., *who*; **quæ**, nom. and accus. plur. neut., *which*; **quārūm**, gen. plur. fem., *of which*.
11. **sæ-pē**, adv., *often*; **mīnīmē sæpē**, *by no means often, i. e. very seldom*.

6. EXERCISES.

(1) Translate, (2) explain significant endings, (3) give the number, gender, and antec. of the pron. so far as you can.

1. (a) Minimē ad eōs mercātōrēs sæpe commeant. (b) Ad eōs mercātōrēs ea quæ ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important. (c) Animī eōrum quī ā cultū prōvinciæ longissimē absunt minimē effēminantur. (d) Ad eōs quōrum terram flūmen dīvidit mercātōrēs mittunt.

2. (a) Prōvincia Rōmānōrum ad Galliam pertinet. (b) Rōmānī ad Gallōs sæpe commeant. (c) Belgæ et Celtæ partēs Galliæ incolunt. (d) Hōrum omnium linguæ, institūta,¹ lēgēs inter sē differunt. (e) Nōbilissimī Belgārum proptereā quod eōrum finēs longissimē absunt, hūmānitāte ab Sēquanīs differunt.

3. (a) The merchants very seldom bring in those things which tend to weaken courage. (b) Those (things) which tend to enervate minds are very far distant from the Belgæ. (c) Those who are called Belgæ overcome the Aquitani. (d) The merchants hasten from our province into the territory of the Tigurini.

4. (a) The Belgæ differ from the Romans in civilization and refinement. (b) The merchants often go to and fro to the Celtæ. (c) The Belgæ are the bravest of all the Gauls. (d) Those (things) which merchants send to the Sequani are very seldom brought to the Belgæ.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two uses of the endings -ā, -æ, -ē or -ě. 2. Three classes of verbs. 3. Agreement of verb. 4. Position of verb. 5. Antec. and agreement of pron. 6. List of pron. in first seven lessons.² 7. Enclitics. 8. Three words meaning *and*, with difference. 9. Changes in spelling in compounds. 10. Four accus. plur. endings. 11. The various forms which have occurred of that pron. the plur. neut. of which is *ea*.

¹ Nom. plur. neut., cf. *ea*.

² The instructor should aid the pupil in this work of classifying his material. Blank-books, properly ruled, should be used. It is of extreme importance that, from the beginning, the pupil should be encouraged to do independent work.

LESSON VIII.

1. TEXT.

prō-xī-mī-quē sūnt Gēr-mā-nīs, quī trāns Rhē-nūm
nearest also they are to-the-Germans, who across the Rhine

In-cō-lūnt, quī-būs-cūm cōn-tī-nēn-tēr bēl-lūm gē-rūnt.
dwell, with whom continually war they wage.

2. NOTES.

1. **prō-xī-mī-quē**, *nearest also*; cf. **minimēque**, and *proximate, proximo*: (a) case, number, gender? (b) What part of speech, and with what does it agree? (c) irregular superlative; (d) force of **-que**?

2. **Gēr-mā-nīs**, *to the Germans*: (a) **-īs** indicates here the case of the indirect object in the plural; (b) this case is called the dative; (c) in the Eng. expressions *nearest the Germans, like his father, he gave the boy a book* — *Germans, father*, and *boy* are in the dative case; (d) the ending **-īs** is also used for the abl. plur.; cf. **ab Aquītānīs** V. N. 3.

3. **Rhē-nūm**, *the Rhine*: (a) **-u-m** indicates accus. sing. masc. or neut.; cf. **ūn-a-m**, accus. sing. fem., II. N. 2; (b) after the prep. **trāns**; cf. **in, inter, ad**.

4. **quī-būs-cūm**, *with whom*; two words, **quibus** and **cum**: (a) **cum**, prep. with abl.; cf. **ā** or **ab**; (b) joined to the end of **quibus** and some other pronouns, though it usually has the same position as **ā** or **ab**; (c) **quibus**, abl. plur. masc.; cf. **lēgibus** IV.; **quārum** II. N. 1; **quī** III. N. 2; **quæ** VII. N. 8; (d) antecedent?

5. **cōn-tī-nēn-tēr**, adv., *continually*; cf. **per-ti-nent** VII. N. 11; **-tēr** (as well as **-ē** or **-ē**) is an ending of adverbs.

6. **bēl-lūm**, *war*; cf. *bellicose*: (a) **-ū-m**, accus. sing. neut.; (b) why accus.? (c) in all neut. nouns and adj. the nom. is like accus. in both sing. and plur.; cf. **ea** VII. N. 7; (d) nom. and

accus. plur. **bella** ; *cf.* **ea** ; dat. and abl. plur. **bellīs** ; *cf.* **īnstitūtīs**, from nom. sing. **īnstitūtum**.

7. **gē-rūnt**, *they carry on, wage* ; *cf.* **belligerent**, from **bellum** and stem of **gerunt** ; **gerit**, *he wages*, *cf.* **dīvidit** V.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dative is the case of the indirect object.
2. The ending **-īs** is that of dat. and abl. plur.
3. The preps. **in**, **inter**, **ad**, **trāns**, take the accus. ; **ā** or **ab** and **cum** take the abl.

4. With the abl. of **quī**, *who*, **cum** is attached to the end of the word.

5. The ending **-u-m** is that of the accus. sing. masc. and neut. ; **-a-m**, that of the accus. sing. fem.

6. Endings of adverbs, **-e**, **-ē**, and **-ter**.

7. Neut. endings : nom. and accus. sing., **-u-m** ; nom. and accus. plur., **-a** ; dat. and abl. plur., **-īs**.

8. The nom. is used as the subject, the gen. as an adj., the dat. as the indirect object, the accus. as the direct object, and the abl. as an adv.

9. All the above cases, except the abl., are found in Eng., though they are not always called by these names.

10. Having arranged, in the order of cases used in Obs. 8, all the forms of nouns and adjs. which have the nom. sing. in **-a**, like **Gallia**, observe that : (a) all these forms contain **a** except the abl. plur., and (b) here the absence is only apparent, as **-īs** is contracted from **a-is** ; (c) the stem (*cf.* VI. N. 4 (b)) ends in **a**, and for this reason these words are called **a** nouns or adj. ; (d) they belong to what is called the first declension ; (e) they are all fem. except where masc. by meaning ; *cf.* II. N. 4 (e), V. N. 4 (c).

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Declension . . . | A. & G. 20, 26. | H. 46. |
| 2. First declension | A. & G. 35, stella . | H. 48, mēnsa . |
| 3. Dative case . . . | A. & G. 224 and read note. | H. 382, 383. |

5. VOCABULARY A.

1. **bēl-lūm**, nom. and accus. sing. neut., *war*.
2. **cōn-tī-nēn-tēr**, adv., *continually*.
3. **cūm**, prep. with abl., *with*.
4. **gē-rūnt**, *they carry on, wage*.
5. **prō-xī-mī**, nom. plur. masc., *the nearest*.
6. **Rhē-nūm**, accus. sing. masc., *the Rhine*.
7. **trāns**, prep. with accus., *across*.

6. VOCABULARY B.

Collect from all preceding vocabularies the **a** nouns and adj. which they contain.

1. **bona**, nom. sing. fem., *good, goodly*.
2. **frūmentum**, nom. and accus. sing. neut., *grain*.
3. **māgna**, nom. sing. fem., *great, large*.

7. EXERCISES.

(1) Translate; (2) explain significant endings; (3) give the case of every noun and adj.

1. (a) Belgæ fortissimī sunt proptereā quod proximī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. (b) Gallī cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. (c) Helvētiū proximī sunt Sēquanīs. (d) Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt.

2. (a) Belgæ et Celtæ Galliam incolunt. (b) Gallia est divīsa in partēs trēs quārum ūna Aquitānia est. (c) Cōpiæ Celtārum sunt proximæ Helvētiīs. (d) Ūna via est per prōvinciam nostram. (e) Institūta prōvinciæ inter sē differunt. (f) Flūmen ā Belgīs Celtās dividit.

3. (a) Parts of a divided province. (b) They hasten across the country of the Belgæ. (c) The road is nearest to the Sequani. (d) All the Germans differ from the Gauls in culture and courage.

4. (a) Switzerland is called a goodly land. (b) The Belgæ inhabit a large country. (c) He goes back and forth across the Matrona and the Seine. (d) The Germans send ambassadors to (ad) the Celtæ.

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. New endings : **-is** as dat., **-u-m**, **-ter**. 2. Two or more uses of endings **-is**, **-u-m**, **-e**, **-æ**, **-a**. 3. Various forms of the pronoun **qui**, all genders, plur. 4. Neuter nouns. 5. Cases in Eng. and Lat. 6. Formation of cases from the stem in **-a** nouns. 7. Gender of **-a** nouns. 8. Parts of speech having **-a** stems. 9. The use of the dat. 10. Declension in Eng. 11. Position of **cum**.

LESSON IX.

1. TEXT.

Quā dē cau-sā Hēl-vē-tī-i quō-quē rē-lī-quōs
Which from cause the Helvetii also the-rest-of

Gāl-lōs vīr-tū-tē præ-cē-dūnt, quōd fē-rē quō-tī-dī-ā-nīs
the Gauls in valor surpass, because almost (in) daily

præ-lī-is cūm Gēr-mā-nīs cōn-tēn-dūnt, cūm aut
battles with the Germans they contend, when either

sū-is fī-nī-būs ě-ōs prō-hī-bēnt, aut
from their own boundaries them they keep away, or

ī-psī īn ě-ō-rūm fī-nī-būs bēl-lūm gē-rūnt.
themselves in their boundaries war wage.

2. NOTES.

1. **Quā**, *which*: (*a*) abl. sing. fem., 1st decl.; (*b*) here an adj. agreeing with **causā**; (*c*) *cf.* **quī**, **quārum**, **quæ**, **quibus**; (*d*) when

it stands at the beginning of a sentence, as here, it may be translated like **eā**, *this, for this reason*.

2. **dē**, *from, for*; prep. with abl., cf. **ā**, **ab**, **cum**.

3. **cau-sā**, *cause, reason*: (a) diphthong **au** = *ow* in *how*; (b) case? (c) stem and decl. complete?

4. **quō-quē**, conj., *also, likewise*: (a) follows the emphatic word of the clause, **Helvētiī**; (b) **Helvētiī quoque**, *the Helvetii also*; **atque Helvētiī**, *and also the Helvetii*.

5. **rē-lī-quōs**, adj., *the-rest-of*; cf. *relique, relic*: (a) case, number, gender, and why? cf. VI. N. 2 (b), and Obs. 7; **Gallōs**, V. N. 1 (a); (b) *of*, in the translation *the-rest-of*, is part of the meaning of **reliquōs**, and not the translation of a gen.

6. **vīr-tū tē**, *in valor*, cf. *virtue*: (a) case? cf. **hūmānitāte** VI. N. 9; (b) why? cf. **linguā** IV. N. 3 (b).

7. **præ-cē-dūnt**, *they go before, surpass*; cf. *precede, precedent*: **præ**, *before*, and **cēdūnt**, *they go*.

8. **quō-tī-dī-ā-nīs**, *daily*, adj. in agreement with **prœliīs**.

9. **prœ-lī-īs**, *in or by battles*: (a) diphthong **œ** = *oi* in *coin*; (b) nom. sing. **prœlium**, cf. **bellum** VIII. N. 6; (c) abl. plur. neut., cf. **institūtīs** IV.

10. **cūm**, prep., *with*; here in its usual position; cf. **quibuscum**, VIII. N. 4 (b).

11. **Gēr-mā nīs**, *the Germans*: (a) abl. plur. masc.; (b) cf. **proximī Germānīs** VIII., where **Germānīs** is dat. plur. masc., though having the same form as here.

12. **cūm**, conj., *when*: (a) also written **quum**; (b) not to be confounded with prep. **cūm**.

13. **aut**, *or, either*: (a) for diphthong **au**, see **causā** 3; (b) where **aut** is repeated in the same sentence, as here, the first **aut** is translated *either*, the other or others *or*.

14. **sū īs**, *their or their own*: (a) possessive adj. limiting **fīnibus**; (b) cf. the corresponding reflexive **sē** IV. N. 7.

15. **fī-nī-būs**, *from boundaries*; cf. *confines, finite*: (a) abl. plur. masc., cf. **lēgibus**, **quibus**; (b) the nom. sing. is **fīnis**, *end, limit*; cf. **omnis** I.; (c) the abl. here denotes removal or separation, and is used with the verb **prohibent**, which means *they keep away*;

(*d*) the prep. is usually expressed with the abl. of separation; *cf.* **ab Aquītānīs** V., **ā cultū** VI., but with **prohibent** it is often omitted.

16. **ē ōs**, *them*; *cf.* **ē-ōs** VII. N. 3. What is its antec.?

17. **pro-hī-bēnt**, *they keep away*; *cf.* **prohibit**: (*a*) contrast **prohibent**, **prohibet**, **pertinent** VII., and **appellat**, **appellantur**, **important**; (*b*) what difference of stem ending?

18. **īn**, with abl., means *in*; with abl., it denotes rest in a place; with accus., motion toward a place; *cf.* **īn partēs** I., *into parts*; and **īn fīnibus**, *in territory*.

19. **ē-ō-rūm**, *of those, of them, their*: (*a*) gen. plur. masc.; *cf.* **ipsōrum** III., **hōrum** VI.; (*b*) **suīs** 14, and **eōrum** both mean *their*; but **suīs** refers to **Helvētiī**, the subject of the clause in which it stands, while **eōrum** refers to **Germanīs**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence may be freely translated by the corresponding demonstrative, *i. e.* *this cause for which cause, these things for which things, these for who*, etc.

2. The abl. regularly expresses separation, generally with but often without a prep.

3. With **īn**, the accus. is used to express motion toward a place; the abl., position in a place.

4. The relative, like *which* in Eng., is often an adj.

5. **ā**, **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, take the abl.

6. **quoque**, conj., immediately follows the emphatic word of its clause.

7. Diphthongs **au** = *ow* in *how*, **œ** = *oi* in *coin*.

8. **cum** is a conj. meaning *when*, as well as a prep. meaning *with*.

9. **suī**, nom. plur. masc., *their*, and **sē** must refer to the subject of some verb in the sentence, but **eōrum**, *of them, their*, need not so refer.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. Ablative of separation | A. & G. 243 and a. | H. 413 and n. 3. |
| 2. Suī | A. & G. 196, 197. | H. 448, 449. |

5. VOCABULARY.

Hereafter, if no case is given after a noun, adj., or pron., it is in the nom. sing.

1. **aut**, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.
2. **cau-să**, fem., *cause, reason*.
3. **dē**, prep. with abl., *from, down from, concerning, for*.
4. **fē-rē**, adv., *almost*.
5. **præ-cē-dūnt**, *they precede, surpass*.
6. **prœ-lī ūm**, neut., *battle*.
7. **prō-hī-bēnt**, *they keep away, prevent*.
8. **quō-quē**, conj., *also*.
9. **quō-tī-dī-ā-nūm**, adj., neut., *daily*.
10. **rē-lī-quī**, adj., nom. plur. masc., *the rest of*.
11. **sū-ă**, fem., **sū-ūm**, neut., adj., *his, her, its, their*.
12. **vīr-tū-tē**, abl. sing. fem. *virtue, valor*; **vīrtūtēs**, nom. and accus. plur.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Belgæ cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. (b) Helvētīi cum Germānīs ferē quotīdīānīs prœliīs contendunt. (c) Proximī sunt Germānīs quibuscum ferē quotīdīānīs prœliīs contendunt. (d) Helvētīi aut suīs finibus Germānōs prohibent, aut ipsī in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

2. (a) Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt quod prœliīs cum Germānīs sæpe contendunt. (b) Minimē cum Belgīs Aquītānī prœliīs contendunt. (c) Rōmānī cum Gallīs sæpissimē bellum gerunt. (d) Ad Rhēnum finēsq̄ue Germānōrum Helvētīi contendunt.

3. (a) The Romans keep the Germans from the territory of the Sequani. (b) The Helvetii are overcome in battles. (c) Wars are waged in the territory of the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine. (d) When the brave Romans keep the Gauls from their country. (e) The large river divides their province into parts.

4. (a) The Tolosates are in the province. (b) These excel the rest of the Belgæ in valor. (c) Gaul is their province. (d) They

send soldiers into their province. (*e*) The Belgæ are very far distant from the civilization of the province, and for this reason (Lat. idiom, for which reason) excel the Celtæ in valor.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The abl. endings in this lesson. 2. The uses of the abl. in this lesson. 3. Two meanings of **cum**. 4. Two meanings of **in**. 5. Difference in meaning between **bellum** and **prælium**. 6. Usual position of verb in clause; of **sunt**; position of **cum**, prep.; of **quoque**; of **-que**; of relative pronoun. 7. Antecedent of each pron. in lesson. 8. Difference in use of **suīs** and **eōrum**. 9. Verb stems ending in **-e**; in **-a**. 10. Masc., fem., and neut. words in the lesson.

LESSON X.

1. TEXT.

E-ō-rŭm	ū-nă	părs,	quăm	Găl-lōs	ōb-tŭ-nē-rē
Of these	one	part,	which	the Gauls	to hold
dŭc-tŭm ěst,	ĭn-ĭ-tŭ-ŭm	că-pŭt	ă	flŭ-mŭ-nē	
it has been said,	beginning	takes	from	the river	
Rhō-dă-nō;	cŏn-tŭ-nē-tŭr	Gă-rŭ-mnă	flŭ-mŭ-nē,		
Rhone;	it is bounded	by the Garumna	river,		
Ō-cē-ă-nō,	fŭ-nŭ-bŭs	Běl-gă-rŭm;	ăt-tŭn-gŭt		
by the ocean,	by the territory	of the Belgæ;	it reaches		
ě-tŭ-ăm	ăb	Sē-quă-nŭs	ět	Hěl-vē-tŭ-ŭs	
also	on-the-side-of	the Sequani	and	the Helvetii	
flŭ-mĕn	Rhē-nŭm;	vĕr-gŭt	ăd	sĕp-tĕn-trŭ-ō-nēs.	
the river	Rhine;	it slopes	toward	the north.	

2. NOTES.

1. **E-ō-rūm**, *of these*: (a) Possessive or partitive genitive? VI. N. 3 (c) (d) (e); (b) the *these* here referred to means all the inhabitants of Gaul; (c) decline in plur. masc., fem., and neut.

2. **pārs**, *part*: (a) nom. sing. fem.; (b) *cf.* abl. sing. **parte**, like **virtūte**; nom. and accus. plur. **partēs** I.; gen. plur. **partium**, like **omnium**; dat. and abl. plur. **partibus**, like **finibus**; the nom. sing. is formed by adding **s**, and **t** of the stem is dropped before it: **pars** = **par(t)s**; (c) *cf.* stem **omni-**, nom. sing. **omnis**; stem **hūmānitāt-**, nom. **hūmānitā(t)s**; stem **virtūt-**, nom. **virtū(t)s**; (d) subject of **capit**, **continētur**, **atingit**, **vergit**.

3. **quām**, *which*: (a) accus. sing. fem.; *cf.* abl. sing. fem. **quā** IX., gen. plur. fem. **quārum** II.; (b) obj. of **obtinēre**; (c) *antec.* and *why*? VII. N. 3.

4. **ōb-tī-nē-rē**, *to hold, occupy, possess*: (a) compounded of **ob**, *against*, and **tenēre**, *to hold, to hold against (all comers)*; *cf.* **per-tinent**; (b) **-re**, the sign of the pres. infinitive act.; *cf.* **ob-tine-t**, **ob-tine-nt**; **importa-nt**, **importā-re**.

5. **dīc-tūm**, *said, or having been said*; *cf.* *dictation, diction*; (a) with **est** translated *it is said, or it has been said*; (b) nom. sing. neut., *cf.* **bellum**; (c) pass. participle, *cf.* **dīvīsa** I.; (d) **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est**, *which it has been said the Gauls occupy*; (e) the **Gallōs** here referred to are the **Celtae** III.

6. **īn īt-ī-ūm**, *beginning*; *cf.* *initiative*; accus. sing. neut., *cf.* **bellum** VIII.

7. **cā pīt**, *it takes*; *cf.* *capture*, and **dīvidit** V.

8. **flū-mī-nē**, *the river*: (a) abl. sing. neut., *cf.* **virtūte**; (b) *cf.* nom. sing. **flūmen** V., and note change in vowel; (c) *cf.* **flūmina**, nom. and accus. plur., *rivers*, *cf.* **ea**; **flūminum**, *cf.* **omnium**; **flūminibus**, *cf.* **finibus**; (d) *why* abl.? IX. N. 15.

9. **Rhō dā-nō**, *the Rhone*: (a) abl. sing. masc., distinguished by **-ō**, *cf.* abl. sing. fem. **causā**; also abl. sing. **virtūte**, **cultū** VI.; (b) explains **flūmine**, and refers to the same thing; is therefore in the same case; *cf.* **flūmen** V. N. 5 (b). Such a word is called an appositive.

10. **cōn-tī-nē-tūr**, *it is held together, bounded*; cf. Eng. *continent*, noun and adj.: (a) compounded of **con**, *together*, and **tenēre**, *to hold*; cf. **pertinent** VII. N. 11; **obtinēre** 4; (b) 3d sing. pass., ending -tur; (c) cf. **dīvidi-t**, **pertine-nt**, **appella-ntur**, **appella-t**, **appellā-tur**, **dīvidi-tur**, **differu-nt**, **dīvidu-ntur**, and note that the ending is the same for the same voice, person, and number, while the stem is different in different verbs.

11. **Gă-rŭ-mnā**, *by (i. e. by means of) the Garumna*: (a) the prep. expressed in the translation does not appear in the Lat.; cf. **linguā** III., **linguā** IV., **prōvinciae** VI., **fīnibus** IX.; (b) expresses the means by which one part is bounded, and is called an abl. of means or instrument; **linguā** III. and **praeliīs** IX., though translated by *in* are really examples of the same use of abl.

12. **Ō-cē-ā-nō**, *by the ocean*: (a) abl. sing. masc. of means, like **Garumnā**, and **fīnibus** following; (b) abl. sing. masc. of **animōs**, **eōrum**? (c) position of accent, and why?

13. **āt-tīn-gīt**, *it touches upon, it reaches to*: (a) compounded of **ad**, *to*, and **tangit** (*he, she, it touches*; cf. *tact, contact*); (b) **d** before **t** changed to **t**, cf. **appellantur** III.; (c) **a** of **tangit** changed to **i**, cf. **tenēre** and **obtinēre**, **flumen** and **flūmine**.

14. **āb**, *from, on the side of*; occasionally indicates position rather than separation.

15. **Rhē-nŭm**, *Rhine*: (a) the ending -u-m indicates here the accus. sing. masc.; (b) in apposition with **flūmen**, which is the object of **attingit**.

16. **sēp-tēn-trī-ō-nēs**, *the constellation of the Great Bear* ("the Great Dipper"), which is in the northern part of the heavens, *the north*: (a) accus. plur. masc. ending -ēs; cf. **partēs** I. N. 6; **mercātōrēs** VII.; (b) sing. in sense, though plur. in form.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.
2. Means or instrument is expressed by the abl. without a prep.
3. An ending in Lat. often expresses an idea which requires a prep. in Eng.

4. Noun endings : **-s**, nom. sing.; **-ō**, abl. sing. masc.; **-u-m**, accus. sing. masc.

5. Verb endings : **-t**, *he, she, or it*, act.; **-tur**, *he, she, or it*, pass.; **-nt**, *they*, act.; **-ntur**, *they*, pass.; **-re**, ending of pres. infinitive act.

6. The letter **t** is dropped before **s**, **d** before **t** is changed to **t**, **a** and **e** are often changed to **i** when a word is lengthened.

7. Many stems ending in **t** and **i** form the nom. by adding **s**.

8. **Ob** in composition means *against, in the way of*; **con**, *together*, or simply strengthens the meaning of the word with which it is compounded.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. Abl. of means . . . | A. & G. 248. | H. 420. |
| 2. Apposition . . . | A. & G. 183, 184. | H. 363. |
| 3. Change of a or e to i . | A. & G. 10, b. | H. 22, 1. |
| 4. Assimilation . . . | A. & G. 11, f. 3. | H. 344, 5, ad. |
| 5. Omission of t before s | A. & G. 44. | H. 36, 2. |

5. VOCABULARY A.

1. **ăt-tîn-gŭnt**, *they touch upon, reach.*
2. **că-pît**, *he, she, or it takes.*
3. **côn-tî-něnt**, *they hold together, bound.*
4. **dīc-tŭm**, neut., *said, or having been said.*
5. **ě-tī-ăm**, *even, also.*
6. **ī-nī-tī-ŭm**, neut., *beginning.*
7. **ōb-tī-něnt**, *they hold against (all comers), occupy, possess.*
8. **ōb-tī-nē-rě**, *to possess.*
9. **Ō-cě-ă-num**, accus. sing. masc., *the ocean*; **Ōceanō**, abl. sing.
10. **pārs**, fem., *part*; nom. plur., **partēs**.
11. **sěp-těn-trī-ō-nēs**, *the Great Bear, the north.*
12. **věr-gŭnt**, *they slope, verge, are situated.*

6. VOCABULARY B.

1. **amīcī**, nom. plur. masc., *friends.*
2. **carrī**, nom. plur. masc., *carts, wagons.*

3. **influit**, *it flows*, or *flows into*.
4. **numerus**, accus. sing. masc., *a number*.
5. **pāgī**, nom. plur. masc., *cantons, districts*.

7. EXERCISES.

(1) Translate ; (2) select and classify all the abl. in these exercises ; (3) name all the appositives.

1. (a) *Ūna pars, ad quam Gallōs commēare dictum est, vergit ad septentrionēs.* (b) *Alia pars, quam incolunt Aquītānī, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, Pŷrēnāis montibus.* (c) *Tertia pars, quam Belgæ obtinent, ā Morinīs et Menapiīs Ōceanum attingit.* (d) *Ūna Galliæ pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō.* (e) *Britannia Ōceanō continētur.*

2. (a) *Lēgātī nōbilēs ad Sēquanōs mittuntur.* (b) *Māgnum carrōrum numerum importat.* (c) *Flūmina sunt quæ per fīnēs Gallōrum in Rhodanum influunt.* (d) *Helvētia omnis in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est.*

3. (a) *One part of Gaul reaches the river Rhine.* (b) *The Garumna river divides the Gauls from the Aquitani.* (c) *A good way into the province is very far distant.* (d) *Orgetorix surpasses in valor the rest of the soldiers who are in Helvetia.*

4. (a) *Those things which are brought in enervate the minds of the Gauls.* (b) *The Hædui are called friends.* (c) *The Belgæ keep the Germans from their territory.* (d) *The bravest of all the Gauls are overcome in war.*

8. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The abl. of means. 2. Difference between abl. of means and abl. of respect. 3. When the prep. is expressed with abl. 4. When omitted. 5. New endings: **-tur, -re, -s, -ō, -u-m** as accus. masc. 6. Uses of endings **-u-m** and **-a**. 7. Change of vowels in words. 8. Change or omission of consonants. 9. Distinguish endings **-t, -ntur, -nt, -tur**. 10. Force of **ob** and **con** in composition. 11. Translation of the infinitive with a verb of saying. 12. Distinguish **-u-m** and **-a-m**; also **-u-m, -um, and -rum**. 13. Four endings of abl. in sing., two in plur.

LESSON XI.

Beginning with this lesson, only long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels should be treated as short. Diphthongs are long.

1. TEXT.

Bel-gæ ab ex-trē-mis Gal-li-æ fī-ni-bus
The Belgæ from the remotest of Gaul boundaries

o-ri-un-tur, per-ti-nent ad in-fe-ri-ō-rem par-tem
take their rise, they extend to the lower part

flū-min-is Rhē-nī, spec-tant in sep-ten-tri-ō-nem et
of the river Rhine, they look into the north and

o-ri-en-tem sō-lem. A-quī-tā-ni-a ā Ga-ru-mnā
the rising sun. Aquitania from the Garumna

flū-mi-ne ad Py-rē-næ-ōs mon-tēs et e-am par-tem
river to the Pyrenean mountains and that part

Ō-ce-a-nī quæ est ad His-pā-ni-am per-ti-net,
of the ocean which is near Spain extends,

spec-tat in-ter oc-cā-sum sō-lis et sep-ten-tri-ō-nēs.
it looks between the setting of the sun and the north.

2. NOTES.

1. Gal-li-æ, of Gaul: gen. sing. fem., cf. prōvinciæ VI. N. 10 (b).

2. o-ri-un-tur, they rise, begin; cf. orient: (a) third plur., pass. form, cf. appellantur; (b) this verb is pass. in form, but act. in meaning.

3. par-tem, part: (a) accus. sing. fem., after ad. (b) What is the

case ending? *cf.* **pars** X. N. 2; (c) limited by **inferiōrem**, which has the same ending.

4. **flū-mi-nis**, of the river: (a) gen. sing. neut. (b) What is the case ending? *cf.* **flūmine** X. N. 8 (b) (c).

5. **Rhē-nī**, of the Rhine: (a) **-ī** is here the ending of the gen. sing. masc.; (b) distinguish **-ī**, the ending of the nom. plur. masc.; *cf.* **Gallī** III. **hī** IV.; (c) case, and why?

6. **o-ri-en-tem**, rising: (a) participle, *cf.* **dīvīsa** I., **dictum** X.; (b) from verb **oriuntur** 2; (c) for ending **-em** *cf.* **partem** 3, and **septentriōnem**, **sōlem**; (d) for nom. sing. **oriens**, *cf.* **pars** X. N. 2 (b) (c).

7. **e-am**, that: (a) here an adj. limiting **partem**, which is used with prep. **ad**; *cf.* **quā** IX. N. 3; (b) *cf.* **quam**, and **ea**, **eōs**, **eōrum**.

8. **quæ**, which: (a) nom. sing. fem. (irregular ending); (b) a masc. or fem. pron. in Lat. may be translated *which* or *it* when the antec. in Eng. is neut.; (c) carefully distinguish the neut. **quæ** VII. N. 8; (d) antec.? How do you know it?

9. **sō-lis**, of the sun: (a) for ending *cf.* **flūminis** 4; (b) *cf.* **sōlem**; (c) possessive or partitive?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New endings: **-em** of accus. sing.; **-ī** and **-is**, gen. sing.

2. Masc. and fem. words which have the gen. sing. **-is** have the accus. sing. **-em**; **sōlis**, **sōlem**, and the nom. and accus. plur. **-ēs**; **partem**, **partēs**, **mercātōrēs**.

3. Select the neuter nouns and adjs. from the text and vocabularies of the lessons, and note that all but **flūmen** have the nom. and accus. sing. in **-um**, the nom. and accus. plur. in **-a**, and the abl. plur. in **-īs**.

4. Distinguish carefully ending **-ī**, gen. sing. and nom. plur. masc.; **-a**, nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut.; **-æ**, gen. sing. fem. and nom. plur. fem.; **-e** abl. sing., and **-e** or **-ē** adv.; **-īs** abl. plur., and **-īs** gen. sing.

5. Some verbs are pass. in form but act. in meaning.

6. The form **quæ** is both the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. and accus. plur. neut. of the rel. pron.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Neut. 2d decl., A. & G. 38, bellum ; H. 51, templum.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. ex-trē-mī, nom. plur. masc., *extreme, the end of* ; cf. reliquī, *the rest of*.
2. Hi-spā-ni-a, fem., *Spain*.
3. in-fe-ri-ō-rem, accus. sing., *lower*.
4. oc-cā-sum, accus. sing. masc., *the falling, setting*.
5. o-ri-ēns, adj., *rising* ; accus. sing. orientem ; oriuntur, *they rise*.
6. Pŷ-rē-næ-ī, adj., nom. plur. masc., *Pyrenean, of the Pyrenees*.
7. sō-lis, gen. sing. masc., *of the sun* ; accus. sing., sōlem.
8. spec-tant, *they look, face*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Belgæ ab extrēmīs Galliæ fīnibus oriuntur. (b) Belgæ ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent. (c) Belgæ in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem spectant. (d) Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnæōs montēs pertinet. (e) Aquitānia ad eam partem Oceanī quæ est ad Hispāniam pertinet. (f) Aquitānia inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs spectat.

2. (a) Quotīdianō praeliō contendit. (b) Bellīs māgnīs Germānī Gallōs superant. (c) Pŷrēnæī montēs sunt altissimī. (d) Via per extrēmōs fīnēs est. (e) Suōs fīnēs dīvidunt. (f) Eōrum pāgōs capit.

3. (a) The Nervii keep the Germans from their boundaries. (b) Aquitania is bounded by the Garumna river and the ocean. (c) One part of the river is near Spain. (d) The Belgæ touch upon the part which the Gauls occupy.

4. (a) They wage great wars. (b) The good soldiers of the Romans surpass the Gauls in war. (c) The customs which the Romans bring in are good. (d) The land which is called Gaul slopes toward the north.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Agreement of pron. 2. Agreement of adj. 3. Agreement of verb. 4. Three gen. sing. endings. 5. Three accus. sing. endings. 6. Three gen. plur. endings. 7. Three accus. plur. endings. 8. Peculiarities of neut. nouns. 9. Why **ab extrēmīs finibus**, but **ā Garumnā**? 10. Contrast the Roman and the Eng. way of expressing the points of the compass.

LESSON XII.

REVIEW.

This lesson is a review of all that have preceded it. Nothing is so necessary, in the acquisition of a language, as constant and thorough review. One should carry forward with him at least nine-tenths of what he has learned. The preceding lessons contain in all one hundred and forty-seven different words, together with a large number of grammatical forms. Many of the most important principles of the language have been considered. Others might have been brought forward, but it has been deemed wise to hold them in reserve. It is understood that the student will in no case proceed to take up Lesson XIII. until this lesson, with all that it includes, is learned. Let every word, every phrase, every principle, be mastered absolutely.

1. TEXT.—CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR," BK. I. CHAP. 1.

In the review of the text which has thus far been taken, pursue the following order of work:—

1. Pronounce aloud the Lat. text repeatedly.
2. With only the Eng. translation before the eye, pronounce the Lat., until this can be done rapidly and without hesitation.
3. With only the Eng. translation before the eye, write out the Lat.; compare the result with the printed Lat. text; note and correct mistakes.
4. Write out, under the following heads, a grammatical analysis of the material of the text thus far studied: (1) noun forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (a) nom. forms, (b) gen.

forms, (c) dat. forms, (d) accus. forms; (2) verb forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (a) act. forms, (b) pass. forms.

5. Go through the text and select those forms and phrases which, perhaps, still remain unmastered. Read again the notes given upon them in previous lessons. *Do not leave them before they have been conquered.*

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.¹

1. Pronun., Roman method A. & G. 16. H. 5, 6, 7.
2. Pronun., Eng. method . A. & G. 17. H. 9, 10, 11, 12, 13.
3. Division into syllables . A. & G. 14, a, b. H. 8, 1, 2, 3.
4. Quantity of vowels . . A. & G. 18, a, b, H. 16, notes 1, 2, 3, c. 4, foot-note 3.
5. Quantity of syllables . . A. & G. 18, d, e. H. 16, I. II. III.
6. Accent A. & G. 19, a, b. H. 17, 18.
7. Gender A. & G. 28, a, c, H. 41, and foot-note and n. note.
8. Gender of names of rivers A. & G. 29. H. 42 entire.
9. Number A. & G. 31. H. 44.
10. Enclitics A. & G. 19, e. H. 18, 2, 1).
11. Change of a or e to i . A. & G. 10, b. H. 22 and 1.
12. Assimilation A. & G. 10, f, 3. H. 344, 5, read ad.
13. Omission of t before s . A. & G. 44. H. 36, 2.
14. Position of cum with relative A. & G. 104, e. H. 187, 2.
15. Use of ā and ab H. 434, n. 2.
16. Position of verb in sentence A. & G. 343, H. 560, 561, I. II. 344, a.
17. Et, -que, atque . . . A. & G. 156, a. H. 554, 2.
18. Meaning of reliquī . . A. & G. 193. H. 440, 2, n. 1.
19. Inter A. & G. 196, f, H. 433, I. 153.
20. In, with accus. or abl. . A. & G. 152, c. H. 435, n. 1.
21. Adv. in -ē and -ter . . A. & G. 81, b, H. 304, II. 2, IV. 84, d.

¹ In taking up this "Grammar Lesson" the student should look up all the references which he cannot already give in substance. The heading of each reference shows what the student is expected to learn from it.

22. Compound verbs (**ad, con, ob**) A. & G. **170, a.** H. **344, 5.**
23. Personal endings of third person A. & G. **116.** H. **247.**
24. Agreement of verb A. & G. **204.** H. **460.**
25. Two or more subjects with sing. verb H. **463, II. 3.**
26. Stems A. & G. **20, 21.** H. **46, 1, 3.**
27. Declension A. & G. **20, 26.** H. **46.**
28. Stem of **sunt** A. & G. **119,** foot-note. H. **204,** foot-note 2.
29. **Stella, mēnsa** A. & G. **35.** H. **48.**
30. Absence of **a** in abl. plur. of **-a** nouns H. **48,** foot-note 3.
31. **Bellum, templum** A. & G. **38.** H. **51.**
32. General view of cases A. & G. **31, a, b,** H. **365, I. II. III. c, d, e, f.** IV. V. VI.
33. Agreement of adj. A. & G. **186.** H. **438.**
34. Agreement of appositive A. & G. **183, 184.** H. **363.**
35. Agreement of pron. A. & G. **198.** H. **445.**
36. Antecedent of **suī** A. & G. **196, 197.** H. **448, 449.**
37. Translation of the relative at the beginning of a sentence A. & G. **201, e.** H. **453.**
38. Use of the gen. A. & G. p. 146, H. **393, 394, 395.** N., **213.**
39. Possessive gen. A. & G. **214** and H. **396, I.** foot-note.
40. Partitive gen. A. & G. **216.** H. **397.**
41. Accus. and abl. with prep. A. & G. **31, d,** H. **432, 433.** **260.**
42. Accus. as object A. & G. **31, d.** H. **365, III.**
43. Abl. of separation A. & G. **243, a, b.** H. **413, N. 3.**
44. Abl. of respect A. & G. **253.** H. **424.**
45. Abl. of means A. & G. **248.** H. **420.**
46. Use of dat. A. & G. **224;** read H. **382, 383.** note.

3. WORD REVIEW. A.

Classified alphabetical list of all the words occurring in Chapter I. of the text of
Cæsar's "Gallic War."

1. VERBS

absunt	dictum est	obtinēre
appellantur	differunt	oriuntur
attingit	dīvidit	pertinet, pertinent
capit	est, sunt	præcēdunt
commeant	gerunt	prohibent
contendunt	important	spectat, spectant
continētur	incolunt	vergit

2. A STEMS.

<i>Nouns.</i>	<i>Adj.</i>	<i>Pron.</i>
Aquītānia	aliā	eam
Belg-æ, -ārum, -īs	dīvīsa	nostrā
causā	nostrā	qu-æ, -am, -ā, -ārum
Celtæ	tertiā	
Galli-a, -æ	ūna	
Garum-a, -ā		
Hispaniā		
linguā		
Mātrona		
prōvinciæ		
Sēquana		

3. MASC. WORDS having gen. ending -ī, accus. -u-m, abl. -ō. Nom. plur. -ī, gen. plur. -ō-rum, dat. and abl. -īs, accus. -ō-s.

<i>Nouns.</i>	<i>Adj.</i>	<i>Pron.</i>
animōs	effēminandōs	e-ōs, e-ōrum
Aquītān-ī, -īs	extrēmīs	hī, hōrum
Germānīs	fortissimī	ips-ī, -ōrum
Gall-ī, -ōs	proximī	quī
Helvēti-ī, -īs	Pŷrēnæōs	suīs
Ocean-ī, -ō	reliquōs	
Rhēn-u-m, -ī	suīs	
Rhodanō		
Sēquanīs		

4. NEUT. NOUNS, PRON., AND ADJ.

bellum	initium	quotidiānīs
dictum	īnstitūtīs	flūmen, flūmin-is, -e
ea	prœliīs	

5. WORDS having gen. sing. in -is, gen. plur. in -um, and abl. plur. in -ibus.

<i>Nouns.</i>	<i>Adj.</i>
fīnibus	montēs
flūmen, flūminis, -e	inferiōrem
hūmānitāte	omnis, omnēs, omnium
lēgibus	septentriōn-em, -ēs
mercātōrēs	orientem
	sōl-is, -em
	tres
	virtūte

6. UNCLASSIFIED NOUNS AND PRON.

cultū	occāsum	quibus	sē
-------	---------	--------	----

7. ADV.	8. PREP.	9. CONJ.
continenter	ā, ab	atque
fere	ad	aut
longissimē	cum	cum
minimē	dē	et
sæpe	in	etiam
	inter	proptereā quod
	trāns	-que
		quod
		quoque

4. WORD REVIEW. B.

Alphabetical list of words used in the exercises, but not found in the text. In nouns and adj., the nom. plur. masc. is given unless otherwise stated; in verbs, the present indicative act. 3d plur.

Alpēs, <i>fem.</i>	Helvētia, <i>nom. sing.</i>	pāgī
altissimī	Helvētīī	per, <i>prep.</i>
amīcī	īfluunt	possessiōnēs, <i>fem.</i>
Aquītānia, <i>nom. sing.</i>	legātī	quattuor, <i>indeclinable</i>
bonī	legiōnēs	<i>adj.</i>
carrī	Līngonēs	Rhodanī, <i>gen. sing.</i>
clientēs	māgnī	Rōmānī
cōpiæ, <i>fem.</i>	mīlitēs	Sēquanī
extrā, <i>prep.</i>	mittunt	superant
frūmentum, <i>nom. sing.</i>	montēs	terra, <i>nom. sing.</i>
Genāva or Genua, <i>nom. sing.</i>	nātūra, <i>nom. sing.</i>	Tigurīnī
	nōbilēs	Tolōsātēs
Germānī	numeri	Verbigēnī
Græcī	Orgetorix, <i>nom. sing.</i>	via, <i>nom. sing.</i>
Hellēnēs		

5. SENTENCE REVIEW.

1. Gaul is as a whole divided into three parts, one of which the Celtæ inhabit, another the Belgæ, the third the Aquitani.

2. The Aquitani, the Belgæ, the Celtæ inhabit the three parts of Gaul.

3. The Gauls who inhabit the third part are called in their own language Celtæ.

4. The Celtæ, who in the language of the Romans are called Gauls, differ in customs from the Aquitani and the Belgæ.

5. The Gauls and Germans differ from one another in temperament.

6. The Aquitani, the Belgæ, the Celtæ, differ from one another in language and laws.

7. The Pyrenean mountains separate Spain from Gaul.

8. The Matrona and the Seine separate the Gauls from the Belgæ.

9. The Belgæ are bravest, because they are farthest away from civilization and refinement.

10. Civilization and refinement tend to weaken the courage of the Belgæ.

11. Merchants often visit the Gauls, and bring in those (things) which tend to weaken (their) courage.

12. The Belgæ are nearest to the Germans, with whom they contend in almost daily battles.

13. The Belgæ surpass the Gauls and the Aquitani in valor.

14. The Helvetii likewise are the bravest of all the Gauls, because they wage war continually with the Germans, who live across the Rhine.

15. For this cause the Helvetii contend with the Germans, when either the Helvetii keep the Germans from Helvetian territory, or themselves wage war in the territory of the Germans.

16. One part of these, which it has been said the Gauls hold, slopes toward the north.

17. Another part, which the Belgæ inhabit, looks into the north and the rising sun.

18. The third part, which is called Aquitania, looks between the setting of the sun and the north.

19. Aquitania is bounded by the Garumna river, the Pyrenean mountains, and that part of the ocean which is next to Spain.

20. The Belgæ begin from the remotest bounds of Gaul, and extend to the lower part of the river Rhine.

21. The Celtæ begin at the Garumna river, and on-the-side-of the Helvetii reach the river Rhine.

22. The Gauls are bounded by the Garumna river, the ocean, (and) the territory of the Belgæ.

23. One part, which the Celts inhabit, takes (its) beginning from the river Rhone.

24. The Belgæ extend from the Rhine to the ocean.

25. Our province, in which it has been said the Tolosates dwell, extends to Aquitania.

LESSON XIII.

1. TEXT.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et
 Among the Helvetii by far the highest-born was and
 dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M.
 the richest Orgetorix. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus
 Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte
 Piso (being) consuls, of the royal power by a desire
 inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et
 being led a conspiracy of the nobility made and
 cīvitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis
 upon the citizens prevailed that from territory their
 cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent.
 with all forces they might go out.

2. NOTES.

1. longē, adv., *by far*. (a) What shows that it is an adv.? cf. VI. N. 11 (a) (b) (c). (b) What is its superlative? (c) What does it modify? .

2. nōbilissimus, *highest-born, most famous*: (a) nom. sing. masc.; cf. dītissimus, inductus following; (b) nom. sing. formed by adding -s to the stem nōbilissimo-, and weakening o to u; cf. X. N. 2, 13 (c); A. & G. 10 b; H. 22, 1, 2; (c) in the accus. sing. -m is added and o weakened to u; cf. Rhēnu-m for Rhēno-m; in the nom. plur. -ī is contracted from o-i, and in dat. and abl. plur. -īs is con-

tracted from **o-is**; *cf.* VIII. N. 10; (*d*) since the stems of nouns and adj. of this class end in **-o** they are called **-o** nouns and adj. They belong to the 2d decl.; *cf.* **Gallī**, **Gallōs**, **Aquītānīs**, **Rhēnum**, **Ōceanō**; (*e*) neuters in **-um** are also **-o** stems, **u** being weakened from **o**, and **-a** of the nom. and accus. plur. being for **o-a**; (*f*) **-issimus**, ending of the superlative; *cf.* **fortissimī** VI. N. 3 (*b*).

3. **fuit**, *he was*: (*a*) perfect tense of **est**, equivalent to a simple past; (*b*) *cf.* **est**, **sunt**, and note that the stem changes from **es-** to **fu-**.

4. **is**, *he*: (*a*) nom. sing. masc.; *cf.* **eōs**, **ea**, **eōrum**. (*b*) What is its antec.?

5. **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus**, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (being) consuls*, or *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*: (*a*) **M.** in a Roman proper name always stands for some case of **Marcus**, Eng. *Mark*. (*b*) In what case are all these words? (*c*) the phrase is unconnected grammatically with the rest of the sentence; (*d*) the consul was a Roman magistrate, something like an American president; the year of an event was indicated by naming the consuls of that year.

6. **rēgnī**, *of the royal power*; *cf.* *regnant*: (*a*) gen. sing. neut., declined like **bellum** XI. Obs. 3; (*b*) *cf.* gen. sing. masc. **Ōceanī** XI.

7. **inductus**, *having been led into, induced*: (*a*) participle, declined like an adj.; *cf.* **dīvisa**, **dīctum**. (*b*) What does it limit? (*c*) How does the preceding noun **cupiditāte** modify it?

8. **conjūrātiōnem**, *a conspiracy*: accus. sing. fem.; *cf.* **partem**, **sōlem** XI.

9. **nōbilitātis**, *of the nobility*: (*a*) gen. sing. fem.; *cf.* **flūminis**, **sōlis**. (*b*) Upon what does it depend?

10. **fēcit**, *he made*, pf. ind.; *cf.* **facit**, *he makes*; so **capit** X., *he takes or it takes*, **cēpit**, *he took*.

11. **cīvitātī**, *upon the citizens*: (*a*) the nom. sing is **cīvitās**, stem **cīvitāt-**; *cf.* **pars** X. N. 2; (*b*) **cīvitās** means strictly *citizenship*, then the *state* itself, sometimes the *body-politic*, *citizens*; (*c*) **-ī** is the ending of the dat. sing.; (*d*) all nouns with stems ending in a consonant belong to what is called the 3d decl.; *cf.* **hūmānitāte**, **pars**, **partem**, **sōlis**, **lēgibus**.

12. **persuāsit**, *he prevailed upon, persuaded*: (a) pf. ind.; (b) used with dat. case **cīvitātī**.

13. **ut**, *that*, conj.; introduces the verb **exīrent**.

14. **suīs**, *their*. (a) What does it limit? VI. N. 2. (b) What is its antec.?

15. **exīrent**, *they might go out*; **persuāsit ut exīrent**, *he persuaded in order that they might go out*, i. e. **exīrent** tells the object or purpose of his persuasion.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Lat. as in Eng., a noun may be introduced into a sentence without any grammatical connection with it. It is then said to be used independently or absolutely. Absolute means *loosed from* (the rest of the sentence); see Welsh's "Lessons in English Grammar," pp. 154, 155. In Lat. the abl. is frequently used absolutely.

2. **persuādēre**, *to persuade*, is followed by the dat. of the person who is persuaded.

3. The ending **-u-s** is that of the nom. sing. masc.; **-ī** that of the dat. sing. 3d decl., as well as of the gen. sing. in all **-o** stems, and of the nom. plur. in masc. **-o** stems.

4. All masc. nouns ending in **-u-s** in nom. sing. and **ī** in nom. plur. are **-o** stems. The **o** of the stem is sometimes weakened to **u**, and sometimes disappears by contraction with the real suffix¹ of the case.

5. All stems ending in a consonant are of the 3d decl.; and have in masc. and fem. nouns the following endings: sing. — gen. **-is**, dat. **-ī**, accus. **-em**, abl. **-e**; plur. — nom. and accus. **-ēs**, gen. **-um**, dat. and abl. **-ibus**.

6. Every Lat. adj. with the nom. sing. masc. ending **-us** has also complete fem. decl. like **mēnsa**, and complete neut. decl. like **bellum**.

7. The participle, though expressing action like a verb, is an adj. in decl. and agreement.

8. The Lat. pf. tense is often translated like a simple past.

¹ i. e. the ending as distinguished from the stem.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 2d or o decl.; nouns in
 -us A. & G. 38, servus; H. 51, servus, 2,
 also N. near bot- 1), 2), 3).
 tom of p. 16.
2. Adj. of 1st and 2d
 decl. A. & G. 81, bonus, H. 148, bonus,
 bona, bonum. bona, bonum.
3. Dental stems of the
 3d decl. A. & G. 54, ætās. H. 56, I.; 58, ætās,
 and virtūs.
4. Abl. absolute A. & G. 255 and a. H. 431 and 1, 4.

5. VOCABULARY.

Let the pupil give the stems of the following words, and the gen. sing. of the nouns, adj., and partic., so far as he should be expected to know them.

1. apud, prep. with accus., *among*.
2. cīvitās, fem., *citizenship, a state, the body-politic*.
3. conjūrātiōnem, accus. sing. fem. (from con and jurāre, to swear, take oath), *a swearing together, a conspiracy*.
4. cōnsulēs, masc., *consuls*; cf. N. 5 (d).
5. cupiditās, fem., *desire, cupidity*.
6. dītissimus, dītissima, dītissimum, *richest*.
7. exīre, to go out; cf. cōtinēre X. 4 (b).
8. facit, he makes or does; fēcit, he made.
9. est, he is; fuit, he was or has been.
10. inductus, inducta, inductum, *led into, induced*.
11. is, that one, he.
12. nōbilitās, nobility; cf. nōbilis, high-born.
13. ut or utī, conj., that, in order that, so that; if followed by the ind., as or when.
14. persuādet, he persuades; persuādēre, to persuade; persuāsit, he persuaded or has persuaded.
15. rēgnum, neut., royal power, kingdom.

6. EXERCISES.

Decline and describe each dental stem of the 3d decl.

1. (a) *Helvētiōrum omnium longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix.* (b) *Orgetorix, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt.* (c) *Orgetorix Helvētiīs persuāsīt ut dē fīnibus suis exīrent.* (d) *Helvētiī virtūte inductī bellum gerunt.*

2. (a) *Marcus fuit cōsul.* (b) *Cīvitās inducta hūmānitātis cupiditāte, ea quæ animōs effēminant importat.* (c) *Aquītānia spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.* (d) *Belgæ pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī.* (e) *Helvētiī montibus et flūminibus continentur.*

3. (a) *Orgetorix is by far the richest.* (b) *In the consulship of Marcus the nobility makes a conspiracy.* (c) *These (men) being influenced by a desire for war send soldiers into Aquitania.* (d) *That (man) persuades a large part of the state.*

4. (a) *The possessions of the merchants are imported.* (b) *The large state is nearest to the province.* (c) *The Romans are far distant from the Belgæ.* (d) *The river Rhine, which (quī) separates the Gauls from the Germans, rises in the Alps mountains.*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The endings of the o decl. masc. and neut. 2. Masc. and fem. endings of the 3d decl. 3. Different uses of the ending -ī. 4. All the -o stems in text thus far. 5. All the 1st and 2d decl. adj. 6. Analysis of endings -us, -um, -ī, -īs. 7. The use of the participle. 8. The absolute case. 9. The meaning of the pf. tense. 10. Changes in the stem of pres. to find the stem of pf. tense. 11. Case with *persuādēre*. 12. The decl. of *cīvitās mājna, Belgæ fortissimī, bellum reliquum* together.¹

¹ The instructor should give the pupil constant practice in declining nouns and adj. together, using very frequently nouns and adj. of different decl., *e. g. cīvitās mājna.*

LESSON XIV.

1. TEXT.

Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus præstarent,
 Very easy to be, since in valor all they stood before,

tōtius	Galliæ	imperio	potiri.	Id
of entire	Gaul	the supreme power	to obtain.	This

hōc	facilius	eīs	persuāsit,	quod
on this account	more easily	them	he persuaded,	because

undique	loci	nātūrā	Helvētīi
on all sides	of the place	by the nature	the Helvetii

continentur :
 are hemmed in :

2. NOTES.

1. **perfacile**, adj., *very easy*; **per**, intensive prefix, *very*, and **facile**, *easy*; cf. Eng. *facile*, *facility*: (a) accus. neut. sing.; the form of the nom. sing. is the same; (b) nom. sing. masc. **perfacilis**, accus. **facilem**, nom. plur. **facilēs**, gen. plur. **facilium**; cf. **omnis** I., **omnēs** IV., **omnium** VI.; (c) of the 3d decl. in masc., fem., and neut., but the masc. and fem. are alike in all cases both sing. and plur.; stem **facili-**; (d) **-i** stems are distinguished from consonant stems by the **i** before the ending **-um** of gen. plur. (cf. **omnium** and **virtutum**), and in neut. by the **i** before the ending **-a** of nom. and accus. plur., e. g. **omnia**; (e) in **-i** stems the **-i** frequently disappears in the nom. sing., generally before the accus. ending **-em**, very often in the abl., always before the nom. plur. ending **-ēs**, and often before the accus. plur. ending **-ēs**.

2. *esse, to be*: (a) pres. inf. of **est, sunt**; (b) follows a verb of saying suggested by **persuāsit** in preceding sentence; cf. **Gallōs obtinēre dictum est** X.; (c) **perfacile esse**, (*saying*) *it to be very easy*, is better translated (*saying*) *that it was very easy*; (d) the exact words of Orgetorix were **perfacile est**, *it is very easy*.

3. *cum, since*: (a) conj. followed by verb **præstārent**; (b) cf. **cum**, conj., *when* IX.; and **cum**, prep., *with*, **cum Germānīs** IX.

4. *omnibus, all*: (a) dat. plur. with **præstārent**; (b) here a noun, though usually an adj.

5. *præstārent, they stood before*: (a) **præ** in composition means *before*; (b) cf. **ex-ī-re-nt** and **præ-stā-re-nt**; in what respects are they alike?

6. *totīus, of the whole of, entire*; cf. *total*: (a) **-īus**, irregular gen. ending; (b) cf. **reliquus**, *the rest of*; **extrēmus**, *the end of*; (c) **ī** in ending is long by exception before another vowel. A. & G. 18, a; H. 16, II.; (d) limits **Galliæ**.

7. *imperīō, supreme power, supremacy*; cf. *imperial, emperor*; abl. sing. after **potīrī**, with practically the same force as the accus.

8. *potīrī, to obtain, get possession of*: (a) **-rī**, ending of pres. inf. pass.; cf. **-re** ending of pres. inf. act.; **obtīnēre** X., *to hold*; **obtīnē-rī**, *to be held*; (b) pass. in form but act. in meaning; cf. **oriuntur** XI.

9. *id, that thing, it*; cf. Eng. *i. e.* for **id est, that is**; (a) accus. sing. neut.; direct object of **persuāsit**; (b) demonstrative pron., often used as personal; cf. **is, he** XIII.; **eōrum. their** IX.; (c) antec.?

10. **hōc**, (*on account of*) *this*; cf. **hī** IV., **hōrum** VI.; abl. sing. neut.

11. **facilius**, *more easily*; adv. in comp. degree, modifying **persuāsit**; ending **-ius**.

12. **eīs**, *them*: (a) cf. **eōs**, **ea** VII., **eōrum** IX., **eam** XI., **is** XIII., **id** 9, and give the case, number, and gender of each; (b) dat. plur. masc., indir. obj. of **persuāsit**, **id** being the direct; *he persuaded it to them*, or better, *he persuaded them of it*; (c) antec.?

13. **locī**, *of the place*; cf. *local*: (a) gen. sing. masc., cf. **Rhēnī** XI.; (b) nom. sing. and stem?

14. **nātūrā**, *by the nature, character*; why abl.? X. n. 11.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Many nouns and adj. of the 3d decl. have stems ending in **-i**, which appears in gen. plur., but which often disappears in other cases.

2. The nom. sing. ending **-e** is often found in neut. of the 3d decl.

3. Many adj. of the 3d decl. have the nom. sing. masc. and fem. ending **-is**, neut. **-e**.

4. The prefix **per** in adj. means *very*, and often has the force of the superlative ending.

5. Distinguish **cum**, prep., *with*; **cum**, conj., *when*, but frequently *because*, *since*.

6. Several common adj. and pron. have **-ius** irregularly in gen. sing. The **i** is long by exception.

7. The ending **-ri** is that of the pres. inf. pass.; **-re**, of pres. inf. act.

8. The demonstrative pron. **is**, masc., **ea**, fem. (*cf.* **eam**), **id**, neut. may become a personal pron. or an adj.

9. After a verb of saying, when the words of another are adapted to the sentence in which they stand, *i. e.* indirectly quoted, the Lat. uses the inf. where the Eng. uses the ind.

10. The abl. is used after **potiri** with the force of an obj.

11. **Persuādēre** takes the accus. of the thing as dir. obj., the dat. of the person as indir. obj.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Third decl. **-i** stems, nouns

and adj. A. & G. 52, H. 62, *hostis*; 63,
turris, nūbēs, mare; 154, trīst-
mare; 84, lev- is, -e.
is, -e.

2. Use of demonstrative as

personal pron. or adj. . A. & G. 195. H. 438, 1.

3. Force of **per** in composi-

tion A. & G. 93, *d.* H. 170, 1.

4. The inf. after a verb of

saying A. & G. 335, 336. H. 522, 535, 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **cum**, conj., *when, since*.
2. **esse**, *to be*, pres. inf. ; cf. **est**, **sunt**, **fuit**.
3. **facilis** masc. and fem., **facile** neut., *easy* ; **perfacil-is**, **-e**, *very easy*.
4. **facile**, adv., *easily* ; **facilius**, comp., *more easily*.
5. **hōc**, abl. sing. masc. and neut., *this* ; cf. **hī**, **hōrum**.
6. **imperium**, neut., *supreme power*.
7. **is**, **ea**, **id**, dem. pron., *this, that* ; *he, she, it*.
8. **locus**, masc., *a place* ; **loca**, nom. plur. (as if from nom. sing. **locum**).
9. **potitur**, *he obtains* ; **potiuntur** (cf. **oriuntur**), *they obtain*, **potīrī**, *to obtain* ; takes abl.
10. **præstāre**, *to stand before, to excel*.
11. **tōtus**, **tōtīus** gen., *the whole, the whole of, entire*.
12. **undique**, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

6. EXERCISES.

Decline all **-i** stems.

1. (*a*) *Perfacile est totīus Galliæ imperiō potīrī.* (*b*) *Virtūte omnibus Helvētīi præstant.* (*c*) *Dictum est Helvētiōs tōtīus Galliæ imperiō potīrī.* (*d*) *Ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō.* (*e*) *Dicit (he says) mercātōrēs frūmentum importāre.*

2. (*a*) *Cum proximīs civitatibus bellum gerit.* (*b*) *Rēgnum in civitate suā obtinet.* (*c*) *Clientēs sunt fortissimī.* (*d*) *Prōvincia ā montibus oritur et ad flūmen pertinet.*

3. (*a*) *He persuades them of this easily on this account.* (*b*) *He persuaded his friend to go out by another way.* (*c*) *It was easy to keep the Sequani from the territory of the Helvetii.* (*d*) *The high-born Orgetorix, influenced by his desire for the rest of Gaul, obtains soldiers.*

4. (*a*) *They send ambassadors to all the states.* (*b*) *The Helvetii are hemmed in by rivers and mountains.* (*c*) *The nearest states differ from the most remote (states).* (*d*) *In the consulship of Pompeius and Crassus, the Romans obtain a great part of Gaul.*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Force of **per** in composition of adj. 2. **-i** stems. 3. 3d decl. adj. 4. Different meanings of **cum**. 5. The development of the causal force of **cum** from the temporal. 6. The ending **-ius**. 7. Difference between act. and pass. inf. in form and meaning. 8. Difference in meaning between **rēgnum** and **imperium**. 9. The pron. **is** in all genders; forms and use. 10. Four uses of **-e** final. 11. Cases with **persuādēre** and **potīrī**. 12. The indirect quotation and the way of expressing it in Lat. 13. Uses of the dat. in lessons thus far. 14. The decl. together of **amīcus tristis**, **frūmentum omne**, **pars māgna**.

LESSON XV.

1. TEXT.

ūnā	ex	parte	flūmine	Rhēnō	lātissimō	atque
one	on	side	by the river	Rhine	very broad	and
altissimō,	quī	agrum	Helvētium	ā		
very deep,	which	the country	Helvetian	from		
Germānis	dividit;	alterā	ex	parte		
the Germans	divides;	the second	on	side		
monte	Jūrā	altissimō,	quī	est	inter	
by the mountain	Jura	very high,	which	is	between	
Sēquanōs	et	Helvētiōs;	tertiā			
the Sequani	and	the Helvetii;	on the third (side)			
lacū	Lemannō	et	flūmine	Rhodanō,		
by the lake	Geneva	and	by the river	Rhone,		
quī	prōvinciam	nostram	ab	Helvētiis	dīvidit.	
which	province	our	from	the Helvetii	divides.	

2. NOTES.

1. **ex**, prep., *out of, from (within)*: (a) followed by abl.; cf. **ā**, **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, and **in** when it means *in*; (b) cf. meaning with that of **ā** or **ab**, *from a position on or by the side of*; (c) here to be translated *on*; cf. **ab Sēquanīs** X. n. 14.

2. **flūmine**, *by the river*: (a) for nom. sing. and gender see V. n. 5 (a); (b) stem, **flūmen**; for weakening of vowel, see X. n. 13 (c), and A. & G. 10, b; H. 22, l. (c) What is accus. sing.; nom. and accus. plur.? (d) used with **continentur**, in preceding lesson; (e) why abl.?

3. **altissimō**, *very deep*: (a) degree, case and why? (b) nom. sing. masc., fem., and neut.? (c) the positive degree, **alt-us**, **-a**, **-um**, means strictly *nourished, grown (great)*, and may refer to growth either up or down, hence either *high* or *deep*; cf. *exalt, adult, old, alderman*; (d) how different in form and meaning from **lātissimō**?

4. **quī**, *which*: (a) nom. sing. masc.; cf. the same form as nom. plur. masc. VIII.; (b) antec.? (c) Why is it correct to translate the masc. **quī** by the neut. *which*?

5. **agrum**, *field, territory*; cf. *agriculture, acre*: (a) accus. sing. masc.; cf. **Rhēnum** X. n. 15 (a); (b) why accus.? (c) What would you expect as nom. sing.? (d) stem?

6. **Helvētium**, *Helvetian*: (a) adj. limiting **agrum**; (b) cf. **Helvētīi**, *the Helvetii* or *Helvetians*, and note that the name of the people and the adj. meaning *belonging to* that people have the same stem, **Helvētio-**; cf. *the Americans*, and the adj. *American*. This is not always so in Lat.; cf. *the Turks, Turkish*.

7. **alterā**, adj., *the other, the second*: (a) *one of two, the other of two*, while **ali-us**, **-a**, **-ud** (cf. **aliām** II.) means *one of any number*; thus in Eng. an *alternate* is a second man appointed as a substitute, while a man may have half a dozen *aliases*; (b) abl. sing. fem., limiting **parte**; (c) note the position of the following prep. **ex**, between the adj. and its noun. Monosyllabic (one syllable) prep. very often have this position; cf. **quā dē causā** IX., **ūna ex parte** above.

8. **monte**, *by the mountain*: (a) abl. sing.; why? (b) nom. sing. **mōns**; for formation, see X. n. 2; (c) stem strictly **monti-**, gen. plur. **montium**, but **i** is dropped in all the cases of the sing., as in nom.

10. **lacū**, *by the lake*: (*a*) abl. sing. masc.; (*b*) why abl.? (*c*) cf. **cultū** VI., **ūnā**, **Rhēnō**, **parte** above. In what respect are all these abl. sing. alike?

1. The prep. **ex** means strictly *out of a position in* a thing, **ā** or **ab**, *away from a position on or by* a thing, though both are often translated simply *from*.

3. **Altus** means *high* or *deep*; **lātus**, *wide*.

4. The name of the people of a nation and the adj. meaning *belonging to* that nation are often the same in form in Lat., just as they are in Eng.

5. **Altera** means *one of two* ; **alia**, *one of any number*.

6. A monosyllabic prep. often stands between an adj. and its noun.

7. Nouns and adj. in **-ns** and **-rs** are of the 3d decl., and have **i** stems; but are often classed as consonant stems, since the **i** appears only in the gen. and (sometimes) the accus. plur.

8. All the abl. sing. thus far end in a vowel.

9. The four rules for agreement in Lat. are as follow: (*a*) A finite verb agrees in person and number with its subject. (*b*) An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits. (*c*) An adj. agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun which it limits. (*d*) A pron. agrees in gender and number with its antec.¹

1. 3d decl. neut. in -en . A.& G. 49, nōmen. H. 60, carmen.

2. 3d decl. nouns in -ns

and **-rs** A. & G. **44, 54**, 1, H. **64**, *cliēns*, *urbs*,
urbs. foot-note 1, also
 1, 1), 2), 2, 1).

¹ The importance of these simple rules cannot be over-estimated, for no Lat. sentence can be properly constructed without using at least one of them.

3. **Ā** or **ab** and **ex** . . . A. & G. 153. H. 434, I.
4. **Altera** and **alia** . . . A. & G. 203, *a*, *b*. H. 459.
5. Position of monosyllabic prep. . . . A. & G. 345, *a*. H. 565, 3.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **agrum**, accus. sing. masc., *field, territory*.
2. **ali-us, -a, -ud**, adj. or pron., *one of any number, another*.
3. **altera**, fem., **alterum**, neut., adj. or pron., *one of two, the other*.
4. **alt-us, -a, -um**, *high or deep*.
5. **ex**, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.
6. **Helvēti-us, -a, -um**, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii*.
7. **Jūra**, a mountain chain extending from the Rhone to the Rhine, (for gender see A. & G. 29; H. 42, I. 2).
8. **lacū**, abl. sing. masc., *a lake*.
9. **lāt-us, -a, -um**, *wide, broad*.
10. **Lemannus**, masc., the name of a lake, *Leman* or *Geneva*.
11. **mōns, montis** gen., masc., *a mountain*.
12. **Rhēnus**, masc., *the Rhine*.
13. **Rhodanus**, masc., *the Rhone*.

6. EXERCISES.

Find in these exercises every illustration of the rules for agreement which they contain.

1. (a) **Ūnā** ex parte **Helvētiī** continentur flūmine **Rhēnō**, alterā ex parte monte **Jūrā**, tertiā ex parte lacū **Lemanno** et flūmine **Rhodanō**. (b) Flūmen **Rhēnus** agrum **Helvētium** ā **Germānīs** dīvidit; mōns **Jūra** est inter **Sēquanōs** et **Helvētiōs**; lacū **Lemannō** nostra prōvincia ab **Helvētiīs** dīvisa est. (c) **Rhēnus** flūmen est lātissimus atque altissimus. (d) **Nātūrā** locī **Helvētiī** ā reliquīs **Gallīs** dīvisī sunt.

2. (a) **Germānōs** ab agrō **Helvētiō** flūmen **Rhēnus** dīvidit. (b) **Cōpiæ Ariovistī** ā **Rōmānīs** non longē absunt. (c) **Trium partium Gallīæ ūnam** incolunt **Belgæ**. (d) **Orgetorix Helvētiūs** persuādet, quod

undique flūminibus, montibus, lacū continentur. (e) Militēs cīvītātis cum uōbilitāte praeliis contendunt.

3. (a) The Helvetii are hemmed in by a broad and deep river. (b) The very high mount Jura is between the Sequani and the Helvetii. (c) Our province extends from the Alps to the river Rhone. (d) The Helvetii begin at the province and face north-east.

4. (a) Of all these mountains the highest is Jura. (b) Gauls and Germans differ from one another in valor. (c) To gain the supreme power of the whole of Spain is very easy. (d) The Rhine takes its beginning in the Alps mountains and flows toward the north into the ocean.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. 3d decl. nouns in **-en**, **-ns**, and **-rs**. 2. Difference between **ab** and **ex**, **altus** and **lātus**, **alia** and **altera**. 3. The relative strength of vowels. 4. Development of the meaning of **altus**. 5. Difference between Eng. and Lat. in method of determining gender. 6. Position of monosyllabic prep. 7. The form of the abl. sing. 8. Relative number of abl. and dat. in lessons thus far. 9. Examples illustrating rules for agreement in text of this lesson. 10. Decl. together of **flūmen lātum**, **mōns altus**, **mōns Jūra**, **bellum omne**.

LESSON XVI.

1. TEXT.

His	rēbus	fīēbat	ut	et	
On account of these	things	it came to pass	that	both	
minus	lātē	vagārentur	et	minus	facile
less	widely	they wandered	and	less	easily
fīnitimīs	bellum	inferre	possent,		
(upon their) neighbors	war	to bear into	they were able,		
quā	ex	parte	hominēs	bellandī	cupidī
which	in	respect	men	of warring	fond
māgnō	dolōre	adficiēbantur.			
with great	grief	were affected.			

2. NOTES.

1. **His**, *these*: (a) abl. plur. fem.; *cf.* and give cases of **hī** IV., **hōrum** VI., **hōc** XIV.; (b) the form is the same as here in the masc. and neut. plur. abl., and in all genders of the dat. plur.; *cf.* **īnstītūtīs**, abl. neut., IV., **Aquītānīs**, abl. masc., V., **cōpiīs**, abl. fem., XIII., **Germānīs**, dat. masc., VIII. (c) What is the form of the regular nom. plur. fem.; gen. plur. fem.; accus. plur. masc. and fem.? (d) here an adj. limiting **rēbus**; *cf.* **quā** IX., **eam** XI.

2. **rēbus**, *because of things*; *cf.* Eng. *rebus* (*by things*): (a) abl. plur. fem.; (b) stem **rē-**, ending **-bus**; *cf.* **omni-bus** XIV.; (c) abl. of cause, since it gives the cause of the action expressed by the following verb **fīēbat**; *cf.* **hōc** XIV., which gives the cause of **persuāsīt**.

3. **fīēbat**, *it was being done, it was coming to pass*: (a) force of pers. ending **-t**? (b) **-ba-**, tense sign of the imperfect ind.; **importa-t**,

he is importing; importā-ba-t, he was importing; (c) the word "imperfect" when used to designate this tense means that the action or state was going on (i. e. was not perfect or complete) in past time.

4. **minus**, adv., *less*; cf. Eng. *minus*, *minority*: (a) irregular comp.; (b) cf. sup. **minimē**, *least*, VII. 1.

5. **lātē**, *widely*; cf. *latitude*: (a) **lātius**, comp., *more widely*; cf. **facilius** XIV. 11; (b) sup. **lātissimē**, *most widely*; cf. **longissimē** VI. 11; (c) cf. masc. forms of adj. **lātus**, **lātior** (cf. **inferiōrem** XI.), **lātissimus**. (d) How may we form the adv. from the masc. form of the adj. in each degree? Comp. the adv. formed from **altus**.

6. **vagārentur**, *they wandered*, or, more accurately, *were wandering about*; cf. *vagrant*: (a) cf. **exīrent** XIII., **præstārent** XIV., — all have the sign **-re-**, the sign of the impf. tense, subjunctive mode; (b) stem? personal ending? (c) pass. in form, act. in meaning; cf. **oriuntur** XI., **potīrī** XIV.

7. **fīnitimīs**, *neighbors*; (a) dat. plur. masc.; (b) used with **inferre** in conjunction with accus. **bellum**; cf. **omnibus præstārent** XIV.

8. **inferre**, *to bear into, to wage upon*; cf. **differunt** IV., and *infer*: (a) **-re**, ending of pres. inf. act.; cf. **obtinēre** X.; (b) compounded of prep. **in** (*into, upon*), and **ferre** (*to bear*); cf. **præstārent** XIV. 5 (a).

9. **possent**, *they were able, could*; cf. *possible*; impf. subjv., and follows **ut**, *that*, like **vagārentur**.

10. [**quā ex parte**] *from which consideration, in this respect*: (a) note meaning of **parte**; (b) for arrangement, cf. XV. 7 (c); (c) **quā** is here an adj.; cf. **quā dē causā** IX.

11. **hominēs**, *men*; cf. *homicide*; nom. plur. masc.; cf. **mercātōrēs** VII.

12. **bellandī**, *of warring*; cf. **bellum**, *war*: (a) verbal noun, from **bellāre**, *to war*; this noun, corresponding in many of its uses to the verbal noun in **-ing**, is called the gerund; (b) gen. sing. depending upon **cupidī**.

13. **cupidī**, *desirous, fond*: (a) nom. plur. masc., limiting **hominēs**; (b) distinguish **-ī**, the ending of nom. plur., from **-ī** of gen. sing., cf. **bellandī**; **-ī** of dat. sing., cf. **cīvitātī** XIII.; **ī** of abl. sing.,

omnī, marī; and **ī** of pres. inf. pass., *cf.* **potī-rī** XIV.; (*c*) *cf.* the name of the quality, **cupīdi-tās**, and Eng. ending *-ty* in *cupīdi-ty*; (*d*) in the quality word or abstract noun, **-o** of adj. stem **cupīdo-** is weakened to **i**.

14. **dolōre**, *by sorrow*; *cf.* *dolorous*: (*a*) case, and why? (*b*) What do you know about its gender from the ending of **māgnō**? (*c*) *cf.* **mercātōr-ēs** VII., **īferiōr-em** XI.; the nom. sing. in all these cases ends in **-or**.

15. **adficiēbantur**, *they were affected* or *were being affected*:¹ (*a*) force of **-ba-**? (*b*) act. or pass.? How does the ending show?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The tense sign **-ba-** is that of impf. ind., both voices; **-re-**, that of impf. subjv., both voices.

2. Stems in **-ē** end in abl. plur. in **-bus** like stems in **-i**.

3. The imperfect tense (so called) represents the action as going on in past time.

4. The Eng. very often allows a simple past tense where the Lat. requires an imperfect.

5. Adj. having the endings **-us** masc. positive, **-ior** comp., and **-issimus** sup., generally form the corresponding adverbs by changing these endings to **-ē** positive, **-ius** comp., and **-issimē** sup.

6. The Lat. has a verbal noun corresponding in some respects to the Eng. verbal noun in *-ing*. This verbal is called the gerund, and is of the 2d decl.

7. The name of the quality is sometimes formed by adding the ending **-tās** to the stem or weakened stem of the adj.

8. Nouns in **-or** are of the 3d decl., and their stems generally end in **-ōr**.

9. The abl. is used without a prep., to express the cause of the action.

10. The dat. is used with many verbs compounded with prep.

¹ The teacher who wishes his pupils to appreciate the extreme nicety of the Lat. use of tenses, foreign as it is to our Eng. usage, must insist from the first on the exact value of the impf. tense.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 3d decl. nouns and
adj. in -or . . . A. & G. 49, cōn- H. 60, sōl, pāstor ;
sul; 86, melior, 154, trīstior, masc.
masc. and fem. and fem.
2. Comparison of adj.
and adv. . . . A. & G 81, b, 89, 92. H. 162, 306.
3. The gerund . . . A. & G. 114, a. H. 200, 11.
4. The impf. teuse . . A. & G. 115, a, 2, b. H. 468.
5. Nouns in -tās; forma-
tion and meaning . A. & G. 163, e. H. 325.
6. The abl. of cause . . A. & G. 245. H. 413, 416.
7. The dat. with com-
pounds; in, prae . A. & G. 228. H. 386 and 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **adficiēbant**, *they were doing to (somebody), they were affect-
ing*; compounded of **ad**, *to*, and **faciēbant**, *they were doing*;
adfēcit, *he affected*; cf. **fēcit** XIII. N. 10.
2. **bellāre**, *to war, wage war*.
3. **cupid-us, -a, -um**, *desirous, fond*.
4. **dolor**, masc., *pain, grief*.
5. **fiēbat**, *it was being made, it was being done, it was happen-
ing*; used as pass. of simple verb **faciēbat**, but not of its
compounds with prep. The vowel **ī** in **fiēbat** is long by ex-
ception before **ē**.
6. **fīnitim-us, -a, -um**. adj. (from **fīnēs**, *borders, boundaries*), *bor-
dering upon, neighboring*; in plur. masc. usually a noun
meaning *neighbors*.
7. **hominēs**, *men*.
8. **īferre**, *to bear into or upon, to wage upon*.
9. **lātē**, adv., *widely*.
10. **minus**, adv. in comp., *less*; **minimē**, sup., *least*.
11. **posse** (compound of **esse**, *to be*), *to be able*.
12. **rēbus**, abl. plur. fem., *things*.
13. **vagārī**. *to wander* (pass. in form, act. in meaning).

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) *Fiēbat ut Helvētīi minus lātē vagārentur.* (b) *Fiēbat ut mercātōrēs frūmentum importārent.* (c) *His rēbus fiēbat ut hominēs bellandī cupidī minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent.* (d) *Quā ex causā Helvētīi māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur.*

2. (a) *Quā dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte prācēdunt.* (b) *Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitatē obtinēbat.* (c) *His causīs Germānī proeliō contendēbant.* (d) *Initium proeliī Ariovistus facit.* (e) *Īstitutā eōrum quī in eīs fīnibus incolēbant inter sē differēbant.* (f) *Bella cum Germānīs sunt māgna.*

3. (a) On account of these things the Helvetii used to wander less widely. (b) He easily persuaded them that they were able to obtain the country of the rest of the Gauls. (c) Orgetorix goes back and forth through the kingdoms of Gaul. (d) It came to pass that, since they surpassed all in valor, they went out of their territory.

4. (a) The Germans contend with the Helvetii in daily battles. (b) That (man) is good. (c) It has been said that the Belgæ are far distant from the refinement of the Romans. (d) These men, influenced by the desire for good fields, were waging war upon the Sequani. (e) The sun is higher.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Three modes, three tenses, two tense signs, and two voices.
2. All the forms which the pupil should know of **importāre**.
3. Different kinds of abl., with an example of each kind.
4. The meaning and form of the gerund.
5. The impf. tense.
6. Difference between form of adj. and that of adv. in each degree.
7. Dat. with compound verbs.
8. Five uses of the ending **-ī**.
9. Nouns in **-tās**, and Eng. derivatives.
10. Decl. of nouns in **-or**.
11. Comparison between Eng. and Lat. use of tenses.

LESSON XVII.

1. TEXT.

Prō multitūdine autem hominum,
 In proportion-to the-great-number moreover of men,
 et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis,
 and in-proportion-to the glory of war and of bravery,
 angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur,
 narrow themselves territory to have they thought,
 quī in longitūdinem milia passuum ducenta
 which in (into) length thousands of paces two-hundred
 et quadrāgintā, in lātitudinem centum et
 and forty, in (into) width a hundred and
 octōgintā patēbant.
 eighty extended.

2. NOTES.

1. *prō*, prep. with abl., *for, in proportion to, considering*; cf. *ā* or *ab* V., in meaning *in, dē, cum* IX., *ex* XV.

2. *angustōs*, *narrow*: (a) case, number, and gender? (b) agrees with what? (c) decl. in all genders.

3. *sē*, *themselves, they*: (a) accus. plur. masc.; cf. *inter sē* IV. N. 7; (b) the subj. of *habēre*; cf. *Gallōs obtinēre* X.

4. *habēre*, *to have*; cf. *prohibent* IX. (*prō* and *habent*, *they hold in front, check*) and *habit*: (a) mode and tense? corresponding pass. form? (b) cf. *habē-re, obtinē-re, continē-tur*, with *com-*

mea-nt, specta-t, præstā-rent, and state how the two classes of verbs represented are distinguished; (c) **sē habēre arbitrābantur**, *they thought themselves to have*, or, better, *they thought that they had*; the thought in their minds was, *we have*; cf. XIV. n. 2 (b) (c).

5. **arbitrābantur**, *they were judging, they thought*; cf. *arbitrate*: (a) stem, tense sign, personal ending? (b) pass. in form, act. in meaning; such verbs are called deponent; cf. **oriuntur** XI., **potīrī** XIV., **vagārentur** XVI.

6. **quī**, *which*: (a) antec.? How do you know it? (b) subj. of what?

7. **mīlia**, noun, *thousands*; cf. *million, mile*: (a) accus. plur. neut., decl. like plur. of **facile** XIV. n. 1 (d); (b) accus. of extent of space, like Eng. objective in same use.

8. **passuum**, *of paces*; cf. *pass, pace*: (a) **-um** is the ending of the gen. plur.; (b) partitive gen., depending upon **mīlia**; cf. VI. n. 3 (c) (d); (c) stem, **passu-**; cf. **cultū** VI., **lacū** XV., **occāsu-m** XI.; (d) cf. the following words having vowel stems: **prōvincia-m**, **angustō-s**, **omni-um**, **rē-bus**; and the following having consonant stems: **cupiditāt-e**, **conjūrātiōn-em**, **flūmin-e**, **dolōr-e**, **homin-um**. All the consonant stems are of what decl.?

9. **ducenta**, adj., *two hundred*: (a) accus. plur. neut., agreeing with **mīlia**; (b) found only in plur.; **ducentī**, **ducentae**, **ducenta**, nom.

10. **quadrāgintā**, *forty*; cf. *quadragesima*, the first Sunday in Lent; **centum**, *a hundred*, cf. *cent, centennial*; **octōgintā**, *eighty*, cf. *octogenarian*. All are indecl. numeral adj. limiting **mīlia**.

11. **lātitudinem**, *width*; cf. **lātus**, *wide*, and *latitude*, also **multi-tūdin-e**, **forti-tūdin-is**, **longi-tūdin-em**. (a) What similarity of form have the three words last given? (b) **in lātitudinem** means strictly *into width*, though translated properly *in width*; cf. **ab Sēquanīs** X. n. 14.

12. **patēbant**, *they were lying open, extending*; cf. Eng. *patent*: (a) analyze and classify the form; see 4 (b); (b) cf., as to exact meaning, with **pertinent** VII. n. 11.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. All nouns and adj. may be divided into **-a**, **-o**, **-i**, **-u**, **-ē**, and consonant stems. Consonant stems are all of the 3d decl.

2. Many consonant stems of the 3d decl. end in **-tūdin-**.

3. One class of verbs is distinguished by the final **-ā** of the pres. stem, another by the final **-ē**.¹ These letters are called the characteristics of these classes of verbs.

4. Verbs which have the meaning of the act, with the form of the pass. are called deponent.

5. **ā** or **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex**, **in** meaning *in*, **prō**, and a few other less common prep., take the abl. case.

6. The principal verb of an indirect quotation, from either the speech or the thought of another, is in the inf. mode. This mode is then translated like an ind., and has an accus. for its subj.

7. Extent of space is expressed by the accus.

8. The partitive gen. depends upon superlatives, nouns of number, and other nouns denoting a part of a thing.

9. Where the Eng. uses a prep. denoting position in a place, the Lat. frequently uses a prep. denoting motion to or from a place.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1. Characteristics of decl. A. & G. 32. | H. 47. |
| 2. Prep. with the abl. . A. & G. 152, <i>b</i> , <i>c</i> . | H. 434, 435. |
| 3. Subj. of the inf. . . A. & G. 240, <i>f</i> . | H. 523, I. |
| 4. Accus. of extent . . A. & G. 240, <i>e</i> . | H. 379. |
| 5. Words used with partitive gen. . . A. & G. 216, <i>a</i> , 1, | H. 397, 1, 2, 3. |
| 2, 3. | |

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **angust-us**, **-a**, **-um**, *narrow*.
2. **arbitrārī**, dep., *to judge, think*.

¹ The vowels **ā** and **ē** are changed to **a** and **e** wherever they come before **nt** or final **-t**.

3. **autem**, conj., *but, moreover*.
4. **centum**, indecl. numeral adj., *one hundred*.
5. **ducent-i, -ae, -a**, numeral adj., *two hundred*.
6. **fortitūdinis** (derived from **fortis**, *brave*), *of bravery*.
7. **glōria**, *glory*.
8. **habēre**, *to have, hold*.
9. **lātītūdinis**, *of width*.
10. **longitūdinis**, *of length*.
11. **mīlle** (in sing. usually an indecl. adj.; in plur. a noun decl. like **mare**), *a thousand*.
12. **multitūdinis**, *of a great number, multitude*.
13. **octōgintā**, indecl. adj., *eighty*.
14. **passuum**, gen. plur., *of paces* (the Roman mile was a thousand paces, and the Roman (double) pace was a little less than five feet).
15. **patēre**, *to lie open, extend*.
16. **prō**, prep. with abl., *in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to*.
17. **quadrāgintā**, indecl. adj., *forty*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) *Prō multitūdine hominum angustōs finēs Helvētiī habēbant.* (b) *Prō glōriā atque fortitūdine Helvētiī angustōs esse suōs finēs arbitrantur.* (c) *Finēs angustōs Helvētiī habent, quī in lātītūdinem mīlia passuum centum et octōgintā patent.* (d) *Quod Helvētiī lacū et flūminibus et montibus continēbantur, fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārī possent.*

2. (a) *Māgnum hominum numerum habēbat.* (b) *Māgnam frūmentī cōpiam Hæduī mittēbant.* (c) *Reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum Rōmānī superant.* (d) *Cum reliquā Galliā Rōmānī Hæduōs superābant.* (e) *Gallum animum bonum habēre dictum est.* (f) *Eōrum finēs Sēquanī attingēbant.*

3. (a) *The territory of the Helvetii is narrow.* (b) *The Helvetian country extended two hundred and forty miles in length.* (c) *The Celtæ hold a third part of Gaul.* (d) *He was holding the supreme power of the state.*

4. (a) The mountain was sloping to the river. (b) The soldiers are warring. (c) All the clients, of whom he had a great number. (d) The Romans used-to-call (were calling) the Celtæ Gauls (accus.).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the forms of **habēre** which the pupil may now be expected to know. 2. The verb characteristics **-ā** and **-ē**. 3. The meaning of word "deponent." 4. Connection of the various meanings of **prō** with the first meaning, *in front of*. 5. Analysis of **spectāre**, **spectābat**, **spectārent**. 6. The verbs which stand at the end of their clauses in the last five lessons. 7. The five decl. 8. The list of prep. which take the abl. 9. A use of the inf. where the Eng. uses the ind. 10. How to express extent, or answer question "how far." 11. Words in the text thus far on which the partitive gen. depends. 12. Difference in use of prep. in Eng. and Lat. with respect to rest or motion. 13. Two translations for the inf. according to connection. 14. Nouns and adj. with nom. plur. ending **-i-a**. 15. Likeness in form between **quadrāgintā** and **octōgintā**.

LESSON XVIII.

1. TEXT.

Hīs rēbus adductī, et auctōritāte Orgetorigis
 By these things led, and by the advice of Orgetorix
 permōtī, cōstituērunt ea quæ ad
 deeply moved, they determined those things which to
 proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum
 departure pertained to prepare, of beasts of burden
 et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere,¹
 and of carts as much as the greatest number to buy up,
 sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut
 sowings as much as the greatest to make, in order that
 in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret.
 on the journey plenty of grain might be on hand.

2. NOTES.

1. adductī, *having been led, being led, led*: (a) pf. pass. partic.; cf. dīvisā I., dictum X., inductus XIII.; (b) agrees as an adj. with the subj. of cōstituērunt; (c) case, number, gender?

2. Orgetorigis, *of Orgetorix*: (a) stem Orgetorig-; (b) forms the nom. sing. by adding -s; cf. omni, omnis; part-, par(t)s; cīvitāt-, cīvitā(t)s; inducto-, inductus. (c) gs always appears as x; hence the nom. sing. is Orgetorix; cf. lēgibus IV., nom. sing. lēg-s, lēx.

¹ The two dots (diæresis) over the e indicate that it does not unite with the preceding o to form a diphthong.

3. *permōtī*, *deeply moved, influenced*: (a) *cf. adductī* 1; (b) *per* in composition has the force of old Eng. *thoroughly*, or, as we now say, *thoroughly*; *cf. perfacile* XIV. N. 1.

4. *cōstituērunt*, *they determined*; (a) *pf. ind. act. 3d plur.*; *cf. pf. ind. act. 3d sing. fēcit, persuāsit* XIII.; (b) *fēcērunt*, *they made*; *persuāsērunt*, *they persuaded*.

5. *ea quæ*; *cf. ea quæ* VII. N. 7, 8.

6. *proficiscendum*, *the setting out, departure*; *accus. of the gerund*; *cf. bellandī* XVI. N. 12, Obs. 6.

7. *pertinērent*, *they were pertaining, pertained*; *cf. pertinet, pertinent* XI.; (a) *mode and tense?* *cf. vagārentur* XVI. N. 6; (b) *stem?*

8. *comparāre*, *to prepare*; used after *cōstituērunt*, *they determined to prepare*; *cf. inferre possent* XVI.

9. *quam*, *adv. how, as*; with the *sup. degree* it is best translated *possible*; thus, *quam maximum numerum*, *the greatest possible number*.

10. *maximum*, *greatest*; *cf. Eng. maximum*; *irregular sup. of māgnus*.

11. *coēmere*, *to buy up*: (a) completes the meaning of *cōstituērunt*, like *comparāre* 8 and *facere* following; (b) *cf. comparā-re, habē-re, coēme-re*, and *potī-rī*, and note that the stems end respectively in *-ā*, *-ē*, *-e*, and *-ī*. These verbs represent four different classes of verbs as to inflection. (c) In *-e* verbs, in the *pres. ind.*, *-e* is varied to *i* in *3d sing.* and to *u* in *3d plur.*; *cf. dīvidit* V., *gerunt* VIII.; (d) the *pers. ending -t, -nt, -tur, -ntur*, the *tense signs -bā-* and *-rē-*, and the *inf. ending -re*, are the same for all verbs; *cf. adficiē-ba-ntur, arbitrā-ba-ntur, patē-ba-nt, appella-ntur, contine-ntur, præstā-re-nt, pertinē-re-nt*, and the above *inf.*

12. *itinere*, *the journey*; *cf. itinerant*: (a) *abl. sing. neut.*; (b) with *in* meaning *in* or *on*. When does *in* take the *accus.*? (c) *stem itiner-*, *abl. ending -e*; *-ere* is not in this instance an *inf. ending*.

13. *suppeteret*, *it might be on hand*: (a) *mode, tense, number, and person?* (b) its subject is *cōpia*; (c) denotes *state or condition* rather than an act; (d) the clause *ut . . . suppeteret* gives the purpose of the Helvetii in making their plantings of grain as large as possible; so *ut . . . exīrent* XIII. gives the purpose of *persuāsit*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The following stems form the nom. sing. by adding **-s**: very many masc. in **-o**, most masc. and fem. in **-i**, **-d**, **-t**, **-c**, **-g**, and others to be learned later.

2. In stems in **-c** or **-g**, the **s** unites with **c** or **g** to form **x**, which is a double consonant equal to **cs** or **gs**.

3. The pf. pass. partic. is declined like adj. of the 1st and 2d decl.

4. The ending **-ērunt** is that of the pf. ind. act. 3d plur.

5. Verbs are divided into four systems of inflection, or four conjugations, distinguished from one another by the final or characteristic vowel of the pres. stem. The pres. stem may always be found by dropping **-re** of the pres. inf.

6. The characteristic of the 1st conj. is **ā**, of the 2d **ē**, of the 3d **e**, and of the 4th **i**.

7. All conj. are alike in the ending of the pres. inf. act., in the endings of the 3d pers. both act. and pass., and in the tense signs of the impf. ind. and of the impf. subjv.

8. The stem characteristic of the 3d conj. is changed to **i** in the pres. ind. 3d sing., to **u** in the pres. ind. 3d plur.

9. **Quam** with the sup. denotes the highest degree possible.

10. **Ut**, *that, so that*, is used with the subjv. to denote purpose.

11. The inf. is used (without a subj.) with many verbs which imply another action to complete their meaning. This is called the complementary inf.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 3d decl. stems in **-c** and **-g** A. & G. **44, 46**, **rēx** H. **59**, and 1, 1),
and **dux**. 3); **3**, II. N. 2.

2. The characteristics of the
four conj. . . . A. & G. **122** and *a*. H. **201**.

3. **Quam** with sup. degree A. & G. **93**, *b*. H. **170**, 2.

4. Subjunctive of purpose
with **ut** A. & G. **317**. H. **497** and II. . .

5. Complementary inf. . . A. & G. 271. H. 533.
 6. The nature and use of
 the partic. . . . A. & G. 25, *e*; 289, H. 200, IV. and
 186. foot-note; 438, 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **addūcere**, *to lead to, to draw to, to induce.*
2. **auctōritās**, fem., *advice, authority, influence.*
3. **carrus**, **carrī** gen., *a cart.*
4. **coēmere** (**con** and **emere**), *to purchase together, to buy up.*
5. **comparāre** (**con**, here intensive, and **parāre**), *to prepare with zeal, to make ready.*
6. **cōstituere**, *to set together, arrange, determine.*
7. **itinere**, abl. sing., *journey, route, march.*
8. **jūmentum**, neut., *a yoke animal, beast of burden.*
9. **maxim-us**, -a, -um, *greatest*, irregular sup. of **māgn-us**, -a, -um.
10. **permovēre**, *to move thoroughly or deeply, to influence strongly*;
permōt-us, -a, -um, pf. pass. partic., *having been moved, being moved, moved deeply.*
11. **proficiscendum**, accus. sing., gerund of **proficiscī**, *to set out*
 (**pro** and **facere**, *to make forward, to make headway*), *a setting out, departure.*
12. **quam**, adv., *how, as*, with sup. denotes the highest possible degree.
13. **sēmentis**, **sēmentis** gen., sing. fem., *a sowing, planting.*
14. **suppetere** (**sub** and **petere**), *to be on hand, in store.*

6. EXERCISES.

In the following exercises, wherever a noun is qualified by an adjective, decl. both together completely.

1. (a) *Helvētīi hīs rēbus permōtī cōstituērunt dē fīnibus suis exīre.* (b) *Helvētīi cōstituērunt jūmenta et carrōs coēmere, sēmentēs māgnās facere, cōpiam frūmentī comparāre.* (c) *Hominēs bellandī*

cupidī cum finitimīs bellum gerēbant. (*d*) Ea quæ ad bellandum pertinērent comparābant.

2. (*a*) Quam maximus numerus carrōrum comparātur. (*b*) Dicitur est Sēquanōs ad Helvētiōs jūmenta bona mittere. (*c*) Quod Helvētīi fortissimī fuērunt, proeliīs cum reliquīs Gallīs contendere cōstituērunt. (*d*) Orgetorix eīs persuāsit ut quam maximōs carrōs importārent, ut cum cōpiā frūmentī exīrent.

3. (*a*) The Helvetian state is nearest to Mount Jura. (*b*) It came to pass, because of the influence of Orgetorix, that the Helvetii possessed a very great supply of grain. (*c*) It was very easy, since they surpassed all in courage, to wage wars upon their neighbors. (*d*) The Gauls, whom they have determined to overcome, are not-at-all (least) hemmed in by the character of the country.

4. (*a*) The highest mountains are nearest the province. (*b*) The very wide river divides the Gauls from the Germans. (*c*) The greatest wars were being waged in Gaul. (*d*) He contends with all the forces of the Romans.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The equivalent of **x**. 2. The nom. sing. ending **-s**. 3. Force of **per** in composition. 4. The endings **-i-t**, **-ēru-nt**. 5. Characteristic vowels **-ā**, **-ē**, **-e**, **-ī** in verbs. 6. Pres. ind. of 3d conjug. 7. **-t**, **-nt**, **-tur**, **-ntur**, **-bā**, **-rē**, **-re**. 8. Difference between partic. and other adj. 9. The pf. pass. partic. 10. Meaning of complementary. 11. Difference between Eng. and Lat. ways of expressing purpose.

LESSON XIX.

1. TEXT.

(Cōstituērunt) cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās bien-
nium sibi satis esse dūxērunt, in tertium annum pro-
fectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās
Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitatēs sus-
cēpit.

To the Teacher. The literal translation will no longer be given in connection with the lesson. The pupil henceforth should be taught to translate the text for himself. But let the teacher see to it that the text is mastered in the order of the original, and not by finding first predicate, then subject, etc. A plan by which this object may be attained is suggested in Appendix A, to which teachers are referred. The notes of this lesson and of those which follow are adapted to the plan there suggested. (See p. 279, Appendix A.)

2. NOTES.

1. **pācem**, *peace*; *cf. pacify, pacific*: (a) stem **pāc-**; (b) nom. formed by adding -s to stem; **pāc-s** = **pāx**; *cf. Orgetorix* XVIII. N. 2.

2. **amīcitiam**, *friendship*; *cf. amicable*: a quality word or abstract noun formed by the addition of -tia to the weakened stem of **amīcus**, as **cupiditās** is formed by adding -tās to the weakened stem of **cupidus**.

3. **eās**, *these*; accus. plur. fem.; *cf. eōs*, accus. plur. masc., VII., and **eam**, accus. sing. fem., IX.

4. **rēs**, *things*; accus. plur. fem.; *cf. rēbus* XVI.

5. **cōficiendās**, *to be accomplished, completed*:¹ (a) a partic.

¹ The writer is aware that the translation of the gerundive here given may be fairly questioned, but thinks it better to give an explanation to the beginner which will be modified later than to give no explanation at all, — the alternative often adopted in books for beginners.

limiting **rēs** ; (b) pass., cf. **adductī** XVIII. ; (c) **ad eās rēs cōficiendās**, though meaning literally *to or for these things to be accomplished*, may be translated *to accomplish these things* ; cf. **ad effēminandōs animōs** VII. ; (d) this partic. is declined like an adj. of the 1st and 2d decl. ; (e) it ends in the nom. sing. in **-ndus, -nda, -ndum**.

6. **sibi**, *for them* ; irreg. dat. plur., cf. **sē**, accus. plur., XVII.

7. **satis**, *enough, sufficient* ; here an indecl. adj. limiting **biennium**.

8. **dūxērunt**, *they led, they drew, they thought* ; cf. Eng. expressions *to draw an inference, a train of thought* : (a) pf. ind. act. 3d plur. ; cf. **cōstituērunt** XVIII. ; (b) for **biennium satis esse dūxērunt**, cf. XIV. n. 2, Obs. 9 ; XVII. Obs. 6.

9. **in tertium annum**, *for the third year* ; **ad** and **in** with accus. often have the meaning *for*, especially in expressions of time.

10. **lēge** : (a) abl. sing., meaning *law* ; (b) used without a prep. ; (c) four ablatives used without a prep. have already been met : **lēgibus** IV., respect ; **fīnibus** IX., separation ; **rēbus** XVI., cause ; **Garumnā** X., means ; (d) with **cōfirmant**, the last word in the sentence, the abl. of means seems the most appropriate for **lēge**.

11. **dēligitur**, *he is chosen* ; pres. ind. pass. 3d sing. ; cf. **dīvidit** V., **continētur** X.

12. **suscēpit**, *he undertook, took upon* : (a) compounded of **subs** for **sub**, *under, from under* (as one places his arms in lifting), and **capere**, *to take* ; cf. **capit** X. ; (b) pf. ind. act. 3d sing. ; cf. **fēcit** XIII. ; (c) takes dir. obj. **lēgātiōnem**, and indir. **sibi** ; the latter, because compounded with **sub** ; cf. **omnibus præstārent** XIV. ; (d) **sibi** here means *himself*, though earlier in this same lesson it means *themselves* or *them*. The reason is this : The pronoun of which **sibi** is a case, always refers to some subj. in the sentence, generally to the subj. of the clause in which it stands ; hence it gets its number, gender, and person from the subj. which is its antecedent ; the former **sibi** referring to the subj. of **cōfirmant**, a plur. verb, was plur. ; this **sibi**, referring to **is**, the subj. of the sing. verb **suscēpit**, is sing.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Endings of names of qualities ; -tās, -tia.
2. There is in Lat. a pass. partic. referring to the future. It ends in -ndus, -nda, -ndum in the nom. sing., and is of the 1st and 2d decl. This partic. is called the gerundive.
3. The dat. is used as the indir. obj. of many verbs compounded with **præ**, **sub**, and some other prep.
4. **Sē**, **sibi** always refer to some subj. in the sentence, generally to that of the clause in which they stand. They have the same forms in the sing. and the plur. The corresponding adj. pron. **suus**, **sua**, **suum** also refers to the subj. These are called reflexive (*bending back*) pron.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The gerundive ; form
and meaning . . . A. & G. 113, *d*. H. 248, 543.
2. Dat. with compound
verbs A. & G. 228. H. 386.
3. The reflexives ; form
and use A. & G. 98, *c*, 196, 197. H. 184, 448, 449.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **amīcitia**, *friendship* ; *cf.* **amīcus**, *friend*.
2. **annus**, **annī** gen., *a year*.
3. **biennium** (**bis** and **annus**), *the space of two years*.
4. **cōnficere** (**con** and **facere**), *to accomplish, complete*.
5. **cōnfirmāre**, *to strengthen, establish, encourage, affirm*.
6. **dēligere**, *to choose from, select*.
7. **dūcere**, *to lead, draw, consider*.
8. **lēgātiōnem**, accus. sing. fem., *embassy* ; *cf.* **lēgātus**, *ambassador*.
9. **pāx**, fem., **pācis**, gen., *peace*.
10. **profectiōnem**, accus. sing. fem., *a setting out, departure* ; *cf.* **proficiscendum** XVIII.
11. **satis**, adv. or adj., *sufficiently, enough*.

12. **suī**, gen. sing. or plur., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*.
13. **su-us, -a, -um**, possessive adj. pron., *his, hers, its, their*.
14. **suscipere** (**sub** and **capere**), *to take from under, to take up or upon, to undertake*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Cum Hæduīs reliquīsque civitatibus Helvētīū pācem cōfir-
mant. (b) Ad eas res cōficiendās Helvētīi Orgetorigem, quī apud eōs
longē nōbilissimus fuit, dēligunt. (c) Ea quæ ad effēminandōs animōs
pertinent important. (d) Ea quæ ad proficiscendum pertinent impor-
tantur. (e) Hominēs cupidōs bellandī māgnus dolor adficiēbat.

2. (a) Dūcunt, dūxērunt, dūcēbant. (b) Eīs persuāsit ut omnēs
cōpiās dūcerent. (c) Ad omnēs rēs comparandās quattuor annōs
Helvētīis satis esse dūcit. (d) Virtūte suīs finitimīs præstābant.

3. (a) They establish friendship with the state nearest the Rhine.
(b) These men took upon themselves an embassy. (c) They estab-
lished (were establishing) peace with their neighbors, so that they might
have friends on their march. (d) A part of Gaul is separated from
the Helvetii by the river Rhone.

4. (a) Orgetorix led his own clients to the war. (b) The Helvetii,
because they thought their boundaries were narrow, determined to
possess very broad fields. (c) Orgetorix, influenced by the desire for
kingly power, was making ready his departure.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The nom. sing. endings **-ndus, -nda, -ndum**. 2. Force of **sub**
and **con** in compound verbs. 3. Two uses of the dat. 4. Two pass.
partic. 5. Peculiarities of the reflexive substantive. 6. Of the reflex-
ive adj. 7. Four uses of the abl. without a prep. 8. Reason for dis-
cussing the second **sibi** of text in connection with **suscēpit** instead of
separately; see N. 12. 9. How the word **is**, standing where it does,
helps us about the meaning of the next word, **sibi**. 10. Vowel
changes when words are compounded.

LESSON XX.

1. TEXT.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantalœdis filiō, Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat, et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat.

2. NOTES.

1. **cūjus**, of whom, whose: (a) **j** = *y* in *year*; (b) gen. sing. masc. of the rel. pron. **quī**; in like manner the gen. sing. of **is** XIX. is **ējus**, and of **hī** IV. is **hūjus**; (c) **i** between two vowels, or **i** at the beginning of a word, before **a**, **e**, **o**, or **u**, becomes a consonant, and is conventionally written **j**;¹ the ending in this case is really the same as in **tōtius** XIV; (d) antec.?

2. **pater**, father; cf. *paternal*; nom. sing.

3. **obtinuerat**, he had held: (a) analysis: **obtinu-** pf. stem (the basis of all tenses of act. voice which denote perfect or complete action); cf. pres. stem **obtinē**, in **obtinē-re** X.; **-erā-**, tense sign of pluperfect ind. act.; cf. Eng. *had*; **-t**, pers. ending 3d sing.; (b) when this verb is reached in order, the pupil will see that **pater** must be its subj. and **rēgnum** its obj., and that the accus., **multōs annōs**, limits the verb like an adverb, telling how long he had held the kingdom. Such an accus. is called an accus. of duration of time, cf. **mīlia** XVII. N. 7 (b).

4. **appellātus erat**, he had been called: (a) pluperfect ind. pass., 3d sing.; (b) cf. the plpf. ind. act., 3d sing., and note that both forms end in **erat**, but that the pass. consists of two words: **erat**, the impf. ind. of **est**, **fuit**, **esse**, and **appellātus**, the pf. pass. partic. of

¹ The teacher should consult on this point Roby's Lat. Grammar, Book I., 137-139, or Harper's Lat. Dictionary under **j**.

appellāre. (c) On reaching this verb the pupil will see that the meaning of **ā senātū** is *by the senate*, and not *from the senate* as previous uses of **ā** would lead him to translate it; **senātū** is an abl. of agent; see Gram. Less. How does it differ from the abl. of means? (d) **amicus** (the preceding word) is nom., like the subject **pater**, refers to the same person as **pater**, and is part of the predicate: *cf.* **quī Gallī appellantur** III.

5. occupāret, *that he might seize*, or, better, *to seize*; (a) impf. subjv. act. 3d sing., 1st or **ā** conjug.; *cf.* impf. subjv. act. 3d sing., 3d or **e** conjug., in **suppeteret** XVIII., and read XVIII. N. 11 with Obs. 5, 6, 7; (b) the clause **ut . . . occupāret** is in the accus., obj. of **persuādet**, just as **id** is accus., obj. of **persuāsit**, in XIV. (c) How does it determine the case of **rēgnum** (after **ut**) and the meaning of **suā**?

6. quod, *which*: (a) rel. pron., accus. sing. neut.; (b) distinguish from **quod**, conj., *because*, IX.; (c) antec.?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

In this and succeeding lessons only those subjects will be treated under the "Observations" which are not covered by the "Grammar Lesson."

1. Initial **i** before **a**, **e**, **o**, **u**, or **i** between two vowels, becomes a consonant, is usually written **j**, and is pronounced like **y** in *year*.

2. The pf. stem, upon which as a base all tenses of completed action are formed, may be found as a rule in the 2d conjug., and often in the 1st and 3d, by changing the final vowel of the pres. stem to **u**.

3. The plpf. ind. act. has the tense sign **-erā-** in all conjug., and the plpf. ind. pass. is made up of two words, viz. the pf. pass. partic. and the impf. ind. of the verb **esse**.

4. Two new forms of **quī**: **cūjus**, the gen. sing. all genders, and **quod** the nom. and accus. sing. neut.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The accus. of duration

of time A. & G. 240, e. H. 379.

2. The abl. of agent . . . A. & G. 246.

H. 415, I.

3. The predicate noun or
 adj. A. & G. **183, 184,** H. **362, 363.**
185.
4. The obj. clause of pur-
 pose A. & G. **331** and *a.* H. **498** and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ante**, adv. and prep., *before*.
2. **Catamantalœdēs**, **Catamantalœdis** gen., a Gallic name.
3. **filius**, *son*.
4. **mult-us**, **-a -um**, *much*; plur. *many*.
5. **occupāre**, *to seize, to take possession of*.
6. **pater** *father*.
7. **populus**, *people*.
8. **senātū**, abl. sing. masc., *a body of old men, a senate*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Hæduī ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcī appellantur. (*b*) Pater Casticī regnum multōs annōs obtinēbat. (*c*) In suō itinere Sēquanō nōbilī persuāsīt. (*d*) Multa rēgna quæ ab hominibus nōbilissimīs occupāta erant in Galliā erant.

2. (*a*) Cæsar dūxit Orgetorigem Casticō persuādēre. (*b*) Casticus auctōritāte Orgetorigis adductus rēgnum occupāre cōstituit. (*c*) Hī hominēs quī suis finibus Germānōs prohibuerant fortissimī fuērunt. (*d*) Ab Orgetorige Casticus inductus erat ut rēgnum occupāret.

3. (*a*) It came to pass that the kingly power was seized by Casticus. (*b*) Orgetorix had had many friends. (*c*) The friends of Orgetorix were many. (*d*) Orgetorix persuaded his friends to seize the kingly power in their states. (*e*) The country of the Sequani is bounded by the great Rhone river.

4. (*a*) They determined to wage war upon the nearest states. (*b*) Rivers rise in the mountains and flow into the ocean. (*c*) Peace and friendship are established by the Helvetii. (*d*) Orgetorix had the largest possible number of friends, so that through them he might seize the royal power of Gaul.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The use of the pf. stem. 2. The difference between the plpf. act. and plpf. pass. 3. Likeness and difference of pred. noun and appositive. 4. Likeness between accus. of time and accus. of space. 5. Difference between abl. of agent and abl. of means. 6. The use of a clause as a noun in Eng. and Lat. 7. Difference between the inf. *to go* in the sentences *he was able to go* and *he made ready to go*.

LESSON XXI.

1. TEXT.

Itemque Dumnorigī Hæduō, frātrī Divitiacī, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in māttrimōnium dat.

2. NOTES.

1. **frātrī**, *the brother*: (a) dat. sing. from nom. **frāter**; cf. **pater** XX.; (b) stem **frātr-**; the **e** of the nom. is developed in the effort to pronounce this stem; (c) why dat.?

2. **eō tempore**, *at that time*; the time at which an action occurs is expressed by the abl. without a prep.

3. **acceptus**, a pf. pass. partic., but having here the meaning *acceptable* rather than *accepted*; (a) cf. **dīvīsa** I., **dictum** X., **inductus** XIII., **permōtī** XVIII., **appellātus** XX., and note that the nom. sing. ends in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, added to a stem ending in **-t** or sometimes **-s**. This is called the supine stem of the verb; (b) the preceding word **plēbī** is a dat. completing the meaning of **acceptus**; cf. VIII. N. 2 (c); (c) What is the nom. sing. of **plēbī**? cf. XVIII. Obs. 1.

4. *idem, the same (thing)*; accus. neut. sing., obj. of deponent verb *cōnārētur*.

5. *eī, to him*: (a) dat. sing. masc. of *is* XIX.; so *cui*¹ from *quī*; (b) indir. obj. of *dat*; (c) antec.?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Collect from the text all the forms which have been used of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, and note: (a) that these forms are generally of the 1st and 2d decl.; (b) that the following have the endings of the 3d decl.: *is*, *eī*, *cui*, *quibus*, and *quem* accus. sing. masc. (not yet used); (c) the following have peculiar endings: *quī* as nom. sing. masc., *quæ* as nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut., *id*, *quod*, *ējus*, *cūjus*.

2. As these pron. are difficult and yet the most frequently used in the language, the following points must be thoroughly mastered: (a) in both, the gen. sing., the dat. sing., and the dat. and abl. plur. have but one form for all genders; (b) *quæ*, nom. sing. fem., is the same in form as the nom. plur. fem. and the nom. and accus. plur. neut.; (c) *quī*, nom. sing. masc., is the same in form as nom. plur. masc.; (d) *quam*, accus. sing. fem., is the same in form as the adv. *quam*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and

quī, *quæ*, *quod* . . . A. & G. 101, 103. H. 186, IV., 187.

2. The supine stem . . . A. & G. 125.

H. 256 and 1.

3. Abl. of time . . . A. & G. 256.

H. 429.

4. Dat. with adj. . . . A. & G. 234.

H. 391.

5. VOCABULARY.

The pupil should be prepared with Eng. words related to those in Vocabularies.

1. *āc*, another form for *atque*, cf. VI. N. 8; it is used only before consonants.

2. *accept-us*, *-a*, *-um*, pf. pass. partic. (from *accipere*), *accepted*, *acceptable*.

¹ To be pronounced as a monosyllable.

3. *cōnārī*, dep., *to try*.
4. *dare*,¹ *to give*.
5. *Dumnorix*, -*igis*,² a man's name.
6. *filia*, *daughter*.
7. *frāter*, -*tris*, *brother*.
8. *Hæduus*, a *Hæduan*, one of the *Hædui*.
9. *idem*, nom. and accus. sing. neut., *the same (thing)*.
10. *item*, adv., *likewise, also*.
11. *mātrimōnium*, *marriage*.
12. *maximē*, *very greatly, most, especially*; cf. *maxim-us*, -*a*, -*um*.
13. *plēbs*, -*bis*, *plebeians, common people*.
14. *prīncipātum*, accus. sing. masc., *leadership*.
15. *tempore*, abl. sing. neut., *time*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Divitiacus et Dumnorix frātrēs fuērunt. (*b*) Orgetorix Helvētius Dumnorigī Hæduō persuāsīt. (*c*) Hōc tempore Divitiacus in cīvitāte prīncipātum obtinuit. (*d*) Id hōc facilius persuāsīt quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi continentur.

2. (*a*) Patrī persuāsīt ut amīcē nōbili filiam in mātrimōnium daret. (*b*) Imperiō Galliæ tertiō annō pōtīrī cōstituerant et trēs annōs cās rēs comparābant. (*c*) Dumnorix cūjus frāter erat Divitiacus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus prīncipātum in suā cīvitāte esse satis sibi minimē arbitrābātur.

3. (*a*) He persuaded them to try the same thing. (*b*) The father of Casticus held the leadership many years in the territory of the Sequani. (*c*) Dumnorix had led in marriage out of that state the daughter of Orgetorix. (*d*) At that time Casticus was a friend of the Helvetii.

4. (*a*) The Sequani send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Hæduan. (*b*) The men with whom Orgetorix had made a conspiracy were desirous of warring. (*c*) Those men who were seizing the kingly power in Gaul took the leadership upon themselves. (*d*) Dumnorix was called friend by Orgetorix.

¹ The -*a* of the pres. stem of *dare* is short by exception.

² The final letters of the gen.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The formation and meaning of the pf. pass. partic.? 2. Likeness in decl. of **is** and **quī**. 3. Number of times each is used in text thus far. 4. Stems of the nouns in this lesson. 5. Datives in this lesson. 6. Difference between accus. and abl. of time. 7. Uses of abl. without a prep. 8. Three stems of Lat. verb.

LESSON XXII.

1. TEXT.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliæ plūrimū Helvētī possent.

2. NOTES.

1. **factū**, *in doing* or *to do*; a verbal noun used as an abl. of respect or specification with **perfacile**; it is called a supine, and the supine stem, which is the base of the pf. pass. partic. and other forms, is found by cutting off the final vowel.

2. **probat**, *he proves*: (a) a verb of saying, using that term in its widest sense, hence followed by the inf. **esse** in indir. discourse; (b) the preceding **illīs** is a dat. used with it; *he proves to them*; cf. **eī dat**, *he gives to him*, XXI.

3. **perficere**, *to accomplish*: (a) from **per** and **facere**; cf. X. N. 13 (a) (c); (b) the simple subj. of **esse**; the neut. **perfacile** is a pred. adj. agreeing with it; (c) cf. **bellandī** XVI. N. 12; **factū** 1.

4. **ipse**, *himself*: (a) the intensive pronoun; (b) nom. sing. masc., limiting and thus rendering emphatic the subj. of the following verb; (c) declined like **is**, **ea**, **id**, with exception of form **ipsum**, nom. and accus. sing. neut.; **illīs**, above, has nom. sing. masc. **ill-e** like **ips-e**, and in the other cases, the endings of **is**, **ea**, **id**.

5. **obtentūrus**, *about to possess*: (a) future act. partic.; (b) formed on the supine stem by the addition of **-ūrus**; *cf.* pf. pass. partic. XXI. n. 3 (a), and pres. stem in **obtinē-re** X., pf. stem in **obtinu-erat** XX.; (c) nom. sing. masc., agreeing with the subj. of following verb.

6. **esset**, *he was*: (a) impf. subjv. 3d sing. (b) What is the stem? (c) What is impf. ind. 3d sing.?

7. **possent**, *were powerful*: (a) impf. subjv. 3d plur.; *cf.* XVI. n. 9; (b) following **quīn**, just as in XVI. it follows **ut**; (c) modified by the adv. **plūrimum**, *most*, upon which **tōtīus Galliæ** depends; translate, *the Helvetii were most powerful of all Gaul*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The endings **-ūrus**, **-ūra**, **-ūrum** are added to the supine stem to form the future active partic.; **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, to the same stem to form the pf. pass. partic.

2. Verbs having **a** as the vowel of the first syllable often weaken this **a** to **i** when compounded with prep.

3. Verbs of giving and saying take a dat. of the person to whom the thing is given or said.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of **ille** and **ipse** . . . A. & G. 101. H. 186, III. V.
2. The supine, gerund and inf.;
form and use A. & G. 112, *d*; H. 200, I. II. III.,
114, *a*, *b*. 538, 547.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **cōnātum**, in form a pf. pass. partic. of the verb **cōnārī**, *a thing attempted*,¹ *an attempt*, *an undertaking*.
2. **dubi-us**, **-a**, **-um**, *doubtful*.
3. **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *that*, used of what is remote in contrast to what is near.
4. **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, intensive or emphatic pron., *self*.

¹ The pf. partic. in dep. verbs is sometimes pass. in sense.

5. **nōn**, adv., *not*.
6. **perficere**, *to accomplish, finish*.
7. **plūrim-us, -a, -um**, irreg sup. of **multus** (the corresponding adv. has the form of the nom. sing. neut. positive and sup.), *very much, most*.
8. **probāre**, *to test, prove, approve*.
9. **quīn**, conj., *that, but that, that not*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Perfacile factū est tōtius Galliæ imperiō potiri. (b) Perfacile factū erat cōnāta perficere. (c) Orgetorix Casticō et Dumnorigi probat perfacile esse ea facere. (d) Ipse suæ civitātis imperium obtenturus est. (e) Non dubium fuit, quīn Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs superāre possent, cum virtūte omnibus præstarent.

2. (a) Non erat dubium, quīn Belgæ ab hūmānitāte prōvinciæ longissimē abessent. (b) Dictum est Orgetorigem in suā civitāte imperium obtenturum esse. (c) Quā dē causā Helvētīi ipsi bellum gerere cōstituērunt. (d) Hīs rēbus inducti conjūratiōnem nobilitātis facturī sunt.

3. (a) He is about to hold the supreme power in the Helvetian state. (b) There was no doubt that Orgetorix was most powerful among the Helvetii. (c) Orgetorix persuaded Casticus and Dumnorix that they could accomplish their undertakings. (d) Dumnorix, whose brother was a friend of the Roman people, was trying the same thing.

4. (a) Those men at that time were acceptable to the common people. (b) In order to influence him, Orgetorix was proving that the attempt was easy. (c) He determined to persuade the nobility in the largest possible states. (d) To seize the whole of Gaul is not a very easy thing to do.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference between fut. act. and pf. pass. partic. in meaning and form.
2. Between **ipse** and **ille**.
3. Different words introducing subjv. thus far.
4. Three verbal nouns.
5. The verbal adj.
6. The three stems of 2d conjug.
7. Different forms of **esse** thus far.
8. When and why vowels are weakened.

LESSON XXIII.

1. TEXT.

Sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et jūsjūrandum dant, et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc firmissimōs populōs, tōtius Galliæ sēsē potirī posse spērant.

2. NOTES.

1. **sē**. Taking this word alone, what cases are possible for it, and what uses of those cases, *i. e.* the possibilities for this word, reading in order?

2. **exercitū**; **cōpiīs**, just before, may from its form be either dat. or abl., but the close connection with **exercitū**, indicated by **-que**, shows that it is probably the same case, *i. e.* abl. What possibilities for **cōpiīs** and **exercitū**?

3. **cōnfirmat**, *he makes strong* (by words) *i. e.* *affirms*: (a) **esse** is to be supplied, as often. (b) What does **cōnfirmat** show about **sē**, **suīs**, and **suō**? (c) What is the only word in the sentence with which **conciliātūrum** can possibly agree?

4. **Hāc**, *this*: (a) abl. sing. fem.; *cf.* **hōc**, abl. sing. neut., XIV.; (b) the pronoun of which **hāc** is a form points to what is near.

5. **occupātō**, *having been seized*: (a) *cf.* **cōnā-t-a** XXII., **con-cilā-t-ū-rum**, and note that the supine stem of the 1st conjug. is found by adding **-t** to the pres. stem; (b) forms with **rēgnō** the abl. absolute construction; see XIII. n. 5 (b) (c), Obs. 1.

6. **potentissimōs**, *most powerful*: (a) positive **potēns**, of which the gen. sing. is **potentis**; *cf.* X. n. 2. (b) the comp. and sup. endings are added to gen. sing. less **-is**; (c) What is the comp.? *cf.* XVI. n. 5 (c).

7. **potirī**, *to get possession of*: (a) followed by the gen. **Galliæ**; *cf.* its more common use with the abl., XIV.; (b) complementary inf. with **posse**; *cf.* **inferre possent** XVI., and XVIII. Obs. 11.

8. **posse**, *are able, can*: (a) compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **esse**, *to be*; the last syllable of **potis** and first of **esse** are dropped, and **t** is assimilated, thus **pot(is es)se**, **potse**, **posse**; *cf.* **possent** (**potis essent**) XVI., **potēns** (**potis** and **ēns**, partic., *being*) 6; (b) inf. after **spērant**, a verb of thinking; (c) its subj. is **sēsē**, another form for **sē**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb *to be* is often omitted in Lat. as in Eng.
2. The supine stem of the 1st conjug. may usually be found by adding **-t** to the pres. stem.
3. Adj. having the nom. sing. masc. endings **-us** and **-is** form the comp. and sup. by substituting **-ior** and **-issimus** for these endings, but those having nom. sing. masc. ending **-ns** form the comp. and sup. by adding **-ior** and **-issimus** to the gen. sing. less the ending **-is**.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Composition of **posse**, and form in pres. ind. 3d sing. and plur. and in pres. partic. A. & G. 120, b. H. 290, II. and N. 1, 2.
2. The abl. and gen. with **potīrī** A. & G. 249 and H. 421, I.; 410, a. V. 3.
3. Abl. absolute, noun and partic.; how translated? ¹ A. & G. 255 and H. 431 and 1, 2. N.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **conciliāre**, *to bring together, to win over*.
2. **exercitū**, abl. sing. masc., *an exercised and disciplined body, an army*.
3. **fīdem**, accus. sing. fem., *faith, a promise, a promise of protection, protection*.

¹ Study very carefully examples under this rule in grammars.

4. **firm-us, -a, -um**, *firm, strong*.
5. **jūs-jūrandum** (really two words, **jūs** and **jūrandum**), *an oath*.
6. **ōrātiōne**, abl. sing. fem., *a speech, oration*.
7. **populus**, *a people*.
8. **potēns**, *being able, powerful*.
9. **spērāre**, *to hope, expect*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Sibi eōrum rēgna conciliat. (b) Rēgna, quæ Gallī multī obtinuerant, ab Orgetorige occupantur. (c) Potentissimī populī exercitū māgnō rēgnīs tōtius Gallīæ potiri possunt. (d) Sē omnia rēgna occupātūrōs esse arbitrantur. (e) Hīs persuāsit ut Helvētiī et Sē quānī et Hæduī populī potentissimī firmissimīque essent.

2. (a) Imperiō conciliātō, in aliās partēs finium milītēs mittēbantur. (b) Eā legātiōne, quam ille suscepit, trēs Gallī nōbilēs conciliābantur. (c) Orgetorix conjūrātiōnem fecit, ut ipse quam maximum numerum rēgnōrum occupāret. (d) Ad amicitiam cōfirmandam inter sē fidem et jūsjūrandum dabant.

3. (a) Influenced by these speeches, the men give a promise to one another. (b) He was winning the kingdom for them with his army. (c) By his speech that (man) influences the nobility. (d) The nobility having (first) been influenced, he persuaded the common people to wage war with their neighbors.

4. (a) Because they were wandering widely, they thought they had very narrow boundaries. (b) Orgetorix, by whose speech the Sequanian and Hæduan were influenced, was very rich. (c) Having given a pledge (a promise having been given), he proves that it is very easy to get possession of all Gaul.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference in meaning between **illī** and **hī**. 2. Different meanings of **cōfirmāre**. 3. Different ways of translating the abl. absolute. 4. Two cases with **dare**. 5. Constructions after **persuādēre**. 6. After **potiri**. 7. After **posse**. 8. All forms of **posse** which pupil should now know. 9. To what the endings of comp. and sup. are added.

LESSON XXIV.

1. TEXT.

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum pœnam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causæ dictiōnis, Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obærātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem cōdūxit.

2. NOTES.

1. **rēs**, *thing, fact, conspiracy*; (a) nom. sing. fem., formed by the addition of **-s** to the stem **rē-**; *cf.* **rē-bus** XVIII., **rē-s** XIX., and XVIII. Obs. 1. (b) Note the position of *ea*, and *cf.* **hīs rēbus** XVIII., **eās rēs** XIX., **eō itinere** XX., **hāc ōrātiōne** XXIII. What is the position of the demonstrative adj. in all these cases? Is this always the position of the adj.? see Text.

2. **coēgērunt**; see Vocabulary for appropriate meaning: (a) pf. ind. act. 3d plur.; *cf.* **cōstituērunt** XVIII.; (b) **mōribus**, the first word in the sentence, is best considered an abl. of cause; *cf.* XVI. n. 2 (b); (c) here followed by the accus. (**Orgetorigem**) and inf. (**dīcere**), though usually verbs of urging take **ut** with the subjv.; *cf.* **occupāret** XX. n. 5 (b).

3 **oportēbat**, *it was necessary*; (a) this verb is used only in 3d sing. and cannot have the name of a person as its subj., *i. e.* it is impersonal; (b) its subj. is the clause **damnātum pœnam sequī**, **pœnam** being the subj. of **sequī**; *cf.* XX. n. 5 (b), XXII. n. 3 (b); (c) **damnātum**, with **Orgetorigem** understood, is the obj. of **sequī**. Why could not **damnātum** agree with **pœnam**? (d) **ut ignī cremārētur** is a noun in apposition with **pœnam**; in what case then? (e) **sequī** is, in form, a pres. inf. pass. of the 3d conjug.; *cf.* **potīrī**, 4th conjug., XXIII.

4. **coēgit**: (a) note that in the clause of which this is the principal verb the words are arranged in groups, thus: **diē-cōstitūtā-causae-dictiōnis**, **omnem-suam-familiam**, **ad-hominum-mīlia-decem**; (b) for **diē**, cf. **tempore XXI.**; the nom. sing. is **diēs**, cf. **rēs 1**; (c) **cōstitūtā** here limits **diē** as a simple attributive adj., *on the appointed day*; (d) **dictiōnis** is a gen. depending on **diē**, while **causae** depends on **dictiōnis**; stem? cf. **profectiōnem**, **lēgatiōnem XIX.**, **ōratiōne XXIII.**; (e) for **hominum mīlia**, cf. **mīlia passuum XVII.** What kind of a gen. is **passuum**? see VI. N. 3 (d).

5. **condūxit**: (a) pf. ind. act. 3d sing. 3d conjug.; (b) pres. inf. act. **condūcere** (cf. **dīcere** above), pres. stem **dūcē-**; (c) pf. stem may be found by cutting off **-it** in pf. ind. act. 3d sing. (thus, **condūx-it**), or by adding **-s** to the pres. stem less characteristic **e**, thus, **dūcs = dūx**; cf. **XVIII. N. 2**, **Obs. 2**; (d) the supine stem may be found by cutting off the ending of the pf. pass. partic. or supine (thus, **induct-us XIII.**), or by adding **-t** to the pres. stem less **e**; (e) cf. **face-re XVIII.**, **fēc-it XIII.**, **fact-ū XXII.**, and note that the pf. stem is, in this word, formed in a different way.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Every form of the verb must have as its base some one of the three stems, — pres., pf., or supine.

2. In any conjug., the pres. stem may be found by cutting off **-re** of the pres. inf. act, the pf. stem by cutting off **-it** of the pf. ind. act. 3d sing., and the supine stem by cutting off **-us** of the nom. sing. masc. in pf. pass. partic.

3. The stems of the 3d conjug. must in many cases be memorized. It is well, however, to remember that the pf. and supine stems may often be found by one of two methods: (a) by adding to the pres. stem less **e**, **-s** for the pf. stem and **-t** for the supine stem, or (b) by adding **-t** as before for the supine stem and by changing the first vowel of the pres. stem, and dropping the characteristic vowel, for the pf. stem; ¹ with the last method, cf. Eng. *fall, fell, fallen*.

¹ It is not asserted here that the pf. stem is formed from the pres. stem. The statement simply suggests to the beginner an easy and practical method of finding

4. In the 3d conjug. the pres. inf. pass. ends in *-ī*, before which *-e* of the pres. stem is lost.

5. In the Lat. as in the Eng. sentence, words are arranged in groups, and should be closely connected in thought. When read aloud, the words in the same group should be pronounced together, almost like one compound word, thus, *diē-cōnstitūtā-causæ-dictiōnis*, *on-the-day-appointed-for-pleading-the-case*.

6. The demonstrative adj. precedes its noun; other adj. very often follow their nouns.¹

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Impersonal verbs . A. & G. 145, 146, *d.* H. 298.

2. Substantive clauses A. & G. 329, 29, *c.* H. 540, II. III., 42, *x.*

5. VOCABULARY.

1. *cōgere* (compounded of *con*, *together*, and *agere*, *to drive*, *lead*), *coēgit* pf. ind. act., *coāctus*² pf. pass. partic., *to drive together*, *to compel*.

2. *condūcere*, *condūxit* pf. ind. act., *conductus* pf. pass. partic., *to bring together*, *to hire*.

3. *cremāre*, *to burn*.

4. *damnāre*, *to condemn*.

5. *decem*, indec. numeral, *ten*.

6. *dictiōnis* (from *dīcere*), *a saying*, *pleading*.

7. *diēs* (stem *diē-*), masc., sometimes fem., *day*, *time*.

8. *ēnūntiāre*, *to say out or openly*, *make known*.

9. *eōdem*, adv., *to the same place*.

the pf. stem when the pres. stem is known. The introduction of the verb stem, on which no form of the verb is directly based, would be confusing and unnecessary at this point.

¹ Some may expect the statement here that the adj. commonly follows its noun. In view of the fact, however, that in the first four chapters of Caesar the attributive adj. is used forty-one times before its noun and only nineteen times after, the statement would be out of place here.

² For the change of *coāgtus* to *coāctus*, see A. & G. 11, *f*, 1; II. 33, 1.

10. **familia**, *a body of slaves, household, retinue.*
11. **indiciū**, *information.*
12. **jūdicium**, *a judgment, a trial, a court of justice.*
13. **mōribus**, abl. plur. masc., *customs, manners, character.*
14. **obærātus**, **obærātī** gen., *one bound to service for debt, a debtor.*
15. **oportet**, impers. verb, *it is necessary, it behooves.*
16. **pœna**, *punishment, penalty.*
17. **sequī**, pres. inf. of dep. verb, *to follow*; pf. partic. **secūtus**, *having followed.*
18. **vinculum** or **vinclum**, *that which binds, hence, a rope, chain, fetter.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) *Enūntiant Orgetorigem conjūrātiōnem facere.* (b) *Ex vinclis eum causam dicere oportet.* (c) *Omnis ejus familia ad jūdicium conducēbātur.* (d) *Mōribus Helvētiōrum damnātōs ignī cremārī oportēbat.* (e) *Orgetorix, quod nōbilissimus erat et dītissimus, māgnū clientium numerum habēbat.*

2. (a) *Arbitrātur sē hominum quam maximum numerum conductūrum esse.* (b) *Fīebat ut illō annō frāter Divitiacī principātum obtinēret.* (c) *Fīnēs sunt in multās partēs dīvisī.* (d) *Dumnorix Hæduus cui Orgetorix filiā in mātirimōnium dat, rēgnū occupāre nōn potest.*

3. (a) *There was no doubt that Orgetorix could bring together ten thousand men.* (b) *A great part of the clients and debtors of Orgetorix were many miles distant from court.* (c) *At the appointed time the forces of these men try the same thing.* (d) *They fix the day for the pleading of the case.*

4. (a) *They hope that they can obtain the power of their states by means of their army.* (b) *He himself, when that fact was made known (that thing having been announced), was about to bring together ten thousand soldiers.* (c) *Considering (in proportion to) his high birth, Orgetorix thinks that his power (**potentia**) is not great.* (d) *The Gauls whom he persuaded to make a conspiracy were very high-born.*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two meanings of **cōgere**. 2. The pf. stem in 2d and 3d conj. 3. The supine stem in 1st and 3d conj. 4. The ending **-t**, two uses. 5. Impers. verbs. 6. Clauses as nouns in Eng. and in Lat. 7. The expressions for *ten thousand men*, *ten thousand paces*. 8. Proper pauses in reading a Lat. sentence.

LESSON XXV.

1. TEXT.

Per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspitio, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

2. NOTES.

1. **nē . . . diceret**, *that he might not plead*: (*a*) subjv. of purpose, expressing purpose of **ēripuit**; (*b*) **nē** introduces a clause of negative purpose; *cf.* positive purpose XVIII. n. 13 (*d*); (*c*) tense and analysis of form?

2. **jūs**, *the law*: (*a*) gen. **jūris**; so **tempore** XXI. is from nom. sing. **tempus**, and **mōribus** XXIV. is from nom. sing. **mōs**; (*b*) neut. gender, like **tempore**; (*c*) in all of these words **s** of the stem is changed to **r** when it stands between two vowels; *cf.* **erat** for **es-at**.

3. **magistrātūs**, *the magistrates*: (*a*) nom. plur. masc. of a **-u** stem, for full form **magistrātu ēs**; *cf.* **cultū** for **cultu-e** VI.; (*b*) the **ū** is long here because it is a contract of **u** and **ē**; in the nom. sing., which is formed by adding **-s** to the stem, the **u** is short.

4. **mortuus est**, *he died or is dead*: (a) in form a pf. ind. pass.; (b) formed by the union of the pf. pass. partic. and the pres. ind. of the verb **esse**; cf. **appellātus erat** XX. n. 4 (b). (c) Why is it here translated like an act.?

5. **suspītio**, *suspicion*: (a) nom. sing. fem.; (b) stem **suspītiōn-**; cf. **septentriōnēs** X., **conjūrātiōnem** XIII., **ōrātiōnē** XXIII., **dictiōnis** XXIV.; (c) cf. **fortitūdinis**, **longitūdinem**, **lātitudinem** XVII., **multitūdinem**, above, which weaken the ending **-ōn** of stem to **-in** before an additional syllable, but form nom. in **-o**, thus, **multitūdo**. What likeness of form have the four words just mentioned? (d) What seems to be the force of the nom. sing. ending **-tio**? what of the ending **-tūdo**?

6. **arbitrantur**: (a) ind. mode, introduced by **ut**, which here means *as*. (b) What mode follows **ut** when it means *that, so that, or in order that*?

7. **mortem**: (a) nom. sing. **mors**; cf. **pars** X. n. 2, **oriēns**, **mōns**; (b) all the above words are, strictly speaking, **-i** stems, but drop the **-i** as a rule in the sing., and become practically dental stems.

8. **cōnscīverit**: (a) pf. subjv. act., of the 4th conjug. in form; (b) introduced by **quīn**; cf. **nōn esse dubium quīn . . . possent** XXII., and note that in both cases **quīn** is preceded by a negative.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The so called 4th decl. is composed of **-u** stems, which have in general the suffixes of the 3d decl., but in several cases contract these suffixes with **-u** of the stem.¹

2. All mute stems (see Gram. Less.), and masc. and fem. **-i** stems, **-u** stems and **-e** stems, and almost all masc. stems of the 2d decl., form the nom. sing. by adding **-s** to the stem.

3. In nouns, the nom. ending **-tio** names the action; the endings **-tās** and **-tūdo**, the quality.

4. The conj. **ut** when followed by the ind. means *as* or *when*; followed by the subjv., *that, so that, in order that*.

¹ See Roby, 390.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The mutes A. & G. 3. H. 3, II. 5.
2. Change of **s** to **r** . . . A. & G. 11, *a*. H. 31, 1.
3. Quantity of contracts . A. & G. 18, *c*. H. 23 and 2; 576, I.
4. The 4th decl. . . . A. & G. 68, **manus** H. 116, **fructus** and
and **lacus**, and foot-note 4.
both notes in con-
nection.
5. The 3d decl.; masc. in
-os, and neut. with
gen. in -ūris and -oris A. & G. 48, *d*; 49 H. 61, **flōs**, **jūs**, and
corpus, and 50. **corpus**.
6. The 3d decl.; sum-
mary of -i stems . A. & G. 51; 53, *a, b*, H. 65, 1, 2, 3.
54, 1.
7. The 3d decl.; nouns
with nom. in -o . A. & G. 48, *a, b*; H. 60, **leo**, **virgo**,
leo and **virgo**. and I. 1), 2), 3), 4.
8. Negative purpose . . . A. & G. 317. H. 497, II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **arma**, nom. plur. neut., *armor, arms*.
2. **cōnscīscere**, **cōnscīvit** pf. ind. act., **cōnscītus** pf. pass. partic.,
to decree, determine.
3. **ēripere**, **ēripuit** pf. ind. act., **ēreptus**, pf. pass. partic., *to snatch
away*.
4. **exsequī**, *to follow out, follow up, enforce*.
5. **incitāre**, *to urge on, incite*.
6. **jūs**, neut., **jūris** gen., *right, law, justice*; cf. **jūdicium** XXIV.
7. **magistrātus**, **magistrātūs** gen., *a civil office, a civil officer,
magistrate*.
8. **morī**, rarely **morīrī**, **mortuus** pf. partic., *to die*.
9. **mors**, fem., *death*.
10. **nē**, conj., *that . . . not, not to, lest*; after words of fearing, *that*.
11. **neque** or **nēc**, adv. and conj., *and not*; **neque . . . neque**,
neither . . . nor.

12. **ob**, prep. with accus., *on account of*; in composition, *in the way of, against*.
 13. **suspītio** or **suspīcio**, fem., **suspītiōnis** gen., *suspicion*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Magistrātūs conjūratiōne incitātī jūs cīvitātis exsequī cōnātī sunt. (b) Nōn dubium est quīn Orgetorix multitudīnem hominum coēgerit. (c) Orgetorix sibi mortem cōnsēvit, nē cīvitās jūs suum exsequerētur. (d) Dictum est cīvitātem incitātam ob cōnāta nōbilitātis multitudīnem hominum cōgere. (e) Helvētīī arbitrātī sunt Orgetorigem incitātum ob eam rem sibi mortem cōnsēscere.

2. (a) Orgetorix, quem esse nōbilem dictum est, mortuus est. (b) Is, quod plēbī maximē acceptus erat, maximam conjūratiōnem fēcit. (c) Eōrum exercitus omnibus exercitibus prāstābat. (d) Persuādet Gallō cūjus pater ā senātū amīcus appellātus est.

3. (a) A multitude of men from the fields was being collected by the magistrates. (b) The Helvetii think that suspicion is not wanting. (c) On account of the death of Orgetorix, the nobility did not try to seize the supreme power of Gaul. (d) Brave men, aroused by the attempt of the nobility, are about to enforce the law by arms.

4. (a) That state extended a hundred miles in length. (b) Orgetorix determined to bring together the largest possible number of men. (c) The magistrates persuaded the common people that it was fitting for Orgetorix to plead his cause. (d) It is not very easy to compel the richest man of the state to plead his cause.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The sign of the pf. subjv. 2. The formation of the pf. ind. pass.; the plpf. ind. pass. 3. Comparison of the declension of **magistrātus** and **ignis**. 4. Liquid stems. 5. Difference in case of the ending **-o** and in quantity of the ending **-o**¹ in the 2d and 3d decl. 6. Two meanings of **ut**. 7. Peculiarity of decl. in monosyllables with nom. sing. ending **-s** preceded by a consonant. 8. Eng. derivative endings with the same meanings as **-tio**, **-tās**, **-tūdo**.

¹ It has been thought best to mark as long only those vowels which are known to be long invariably. Final **o** in the 3d decl. is usually long.

LESSON XXVI.

REVIEW of LESSONS XIII. to XXV. inclusive.

The student who thoroughly masters the first twenty-six lessons of this book may congratulate himself upon having learned the most difficult things about the forms of the language. There is nothing else in the forms of the language so hard as the 3d decl., the 3d conjug., and the decl. of pron., and nothing more necessary in using the language than a thorough knowledge of these three things. Remember that you will pay dearly for any neglect in learning the 3d decl., the 3d conjug., and the decl. of pron. Read the note at the head of Lesson XII.

1. TEXT.—CESAR'S "GALLIC WAR," BK. I., CHAP 2, 3, 4.

1, 2, 3. Follow implicitly the directions given in XII. under "Text," 1, 2, and 3.

4. Write out a grammatical analysis of the material of the text of Chap. 2, 3, and 4, under the following heads: (1) noun forms and adj. forms; classifying separately in both sing. and plur. (*a*) nom. forms, (*b*) gen. forms, (*c*) dat. forms, (*d*) accus. forms, (*e*) abl. forms; (2) verb forms, classifying according to the verb diagram in "Word Review" below, and separating by hyphens the stems, tense signs, and pers. endings.

5. The same as in XII.

6. Classify by genders the 3d decl. nouns given under the "Word Review," and, using the last two letters of the nom. sing., make a list of the masc., fem., and neut. endings of the 3d decl. which have been used thus far.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Characteristics of decl. . A. & G. 32. H. 47.

2. The 2d or o decl.; nouns

in -us A. & G. 38, ser- H. 51, servus, also
vus, also N. 2, 1), 2), 3).
near bottom of
p. 16.

3. Adj. of 1st and 2d decl. . A. & G. **81**, bon- H. **143**, bon-us,
us, -a, -um. -a, -um.
4. The mutes A. & G. **3**. H. **3**, II. **5**.
5. Change of **s** to **r** . . . A. & G. **11**, a. H. **31**, I.
6. Quantity of contracts . . A. & G. **18**, c. H. **23** and **2**; **576**,
I.
7. The 3d decl.; mute stems¹ A. & G. **44-47** H. **55-59** inclusive.
inclusive.
8. The 3d decl.; liquid stems
and stems in **-s** . . . A. & G. **48-50** H. **60**, **61**, **154**,
inclusive, **86**, trīsti-or, -us.
meli-or, -us.
9. The 3d decl.; **-i** stems . A. & G. **51-55** H. **62-65** inclusive,
inclusive, **81**. **154**, trīst-is, -e.
10. The 3d decl.; rules for
gender A. & G. **65**, a, H. **99**, **100**, 1, 3,
b, c. **105**, **107**, 1, **110**,
1, **111**, **115**, 2.
11. The 4th decl. . . . A. & G. **68**, ma- H. **116**, frūctus
nus and lacus, and foot-note 4.
and both n. in
connection.
12. Decl. of **is**, **ille**, **ipse**, and
quī A. & G. **101**, **103**. H. **186**, III. IV.
V., **187**.
13. The reflexive; form and
use A. & G. **98**, c, H. **184**, **448**, **449**.
196, **197**.
14. The use of the demonstra-
tive as pers. pron. or
adj. . . . A. & G. **195**. H. **438**, 1.
15. Comparison of adj. and
adv. . . . A. & G. **81**, b, H. **162**, **306**.
89, **92**.

¹ In this and the two following references, the pupil should learn the paradigms and enough of the fine print beneath them to enable him to give the stem of each noun or adj., and the method of forming the nom. from the stem.

16. Force of **per** in composition A. & G. 93, *d.* H. 170, 1.
17. **Ā** or **ab** and **ex** A. & G. 153. H. 434, I.
18. **Altera** and **alia** A. & G. 203, *a,* H. 459.
b.
19. Position of monosyllabic
prep. A. & G. 345, *a.* H. 565, 3.
20. Nouns in **-tās**; formation
and meaning A. & G. 163, *e.* H. 325.
21. The characteristics of the
four conjug. A. & G. 122 and H. 201.
a.
22. The impf. tense A. & G. 115, *a,* H. 468.
2, b.
23. The nature and use of
partic. A. & G. 25, *e,* H. 200, IV. and
289, 186. foot-note; 438
and 1.
24. The gerundive; form and
meaning A. & G. 113, *d.* H. 248, 543.
25. The gerund, supine, and
inf.; form and use A. & G. 112, *d,* H. 200, I. II. III.,
114, *a, b.* 538, 547.
26. The supine stem A. & G. 125. H. 256 and 1.
27. Composition of **posse**,
and form in pres. ind.
3d sing. and plur., and
in pres. partic. A. & G. 120, *b.* H. 290, II. and N.
1, 2.
28. Impersonal verbs A. & G. 145, H. 298.
146, *d.*
29. The pred. noun or adj. A. & G. 183, H. 362, 363.
184, 185.
30. **Quam** with sup. degree A. & G. 93, *b.* H. 170, 2.
31. Words used with partitive
gen. A. & G. 216, *a,*
1, 2, 3, 4. H. 397, 1, 2, 3, 4.

32. The dat. with compound
verbs A. & G. **228.** H. **386** and **1.**
33. The dat. with adj. A. & G. **234.** H. **391.**
34. Subj. of the inf. A. & G. **240, f.** H. **523, I.**
35. Accus. of time and space A. & G. **256,** H. **379.**
257.
36. Prep. with the abl. A. & G. **152, b,** H. **434, 435.**
c.
37. The abl. of cause A. & G. **245.** H. **413, 416.**
38. The abl. of agent A. & G. **246.** H. **415, I.**
39. The abl. and gen. with
potīrī A. & G. **249** and H. **421, I., 410, V.**
a. **3.**
40. The abl. of time A. & G. **256.** H. **429.**
41. The abl. absolute A. & G. **255** and H. **431,** and **1, 2,**
a; also N. **4.**
42. The complementary inf. . A. & G. **271.** H. **533.**
43. The inf. after verbs of
saying and thinking . A. & G., Read **N.** H. **535, I., 1, 2, 3,**
on p. **247, 522.**
248; 335, read
remark; **336.**
44. Substantive clauses . . . A. & G. **329, 29,** H. **540, II. III.,**
c. **42, N.**
45. Purpose clauses, positive,
negative, and object . A. & G. **317,** H. **497** and **II.,**
331 and *a.* **498** and **II.**

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Chap. **1, 2, 3,** of
Caesar's "Gallic War."

1. VERBS.

The form given is the pres. inf. act. (pass. in form, of course, in dep. verbs).

accipere	adficere	bellāre	cōgere
addūcere	arbitrārī	coēmere	comparāre

cōnārī	dare	incitāre	persuādēre
cōnciliāre	dēligere	indūcere	posse
condūcere	dūcere	īnferre	potīrī
cōnficere	ēnūntiāre	morī	præstāre
cōnfirmāre	ēripere	occupāre	probāre
cōnsciscere	exīre	oportēre	proficiscī
cōnstituere	exsequī	patēre	sequī
cremāre	facere	perficere	spērāre
damnāre	habēre	permovēre	suscipere

2. NOUNS HAVING -A STEMS.

amīcitia	familia	fīlia	glōria	Jūra	pœna
----------	---------	-------	--------	------	------

3. -O STEMS.

Nouns.

agrum, <i>accus. sing.</i>	fīlius	locus
<i>masc.</i>	Hæduus	mātrimōnium
annus	imperium	obærātus
arma, <i>nom. plur.</i>	indiciū	populus
<i>neut.</i>	jūdicium	Rhēnus
biennium	jūnentum	Rhodanus
cōnātum	Lemannus	vinculum (vinclum)

Adj. (having also fem. stems in -a).

alius	dītissimus, <i>sup.</i>	Helvētius
alterī, <i>nom. plur.</i>	dubius	lātus
<i>masc.</i>	ducentī, <i>nom. plur.</i>	maximus
altus	<i>masc.</i>	multus (plūrimus)
angustus	finitimus	tōtus
cupidus	firmus	

4. THIRD DECL.

Nouns.

auctōritās, <i>fem.</i>	cīvitās, <i>fem.</i>
Catamantalœdes, <i>masc. by meaning</i> ¹	conjūrātio, <i>fem.</i>
	cōnsul, <i>masc. by meaning</i>

¹ Remember that names of males are masc., and names of females fem., without regard to endings.

cupiditās, <i>fem.</i>	mille, <i>neut.</i>
dictio, <i>fem.</i>	mōns, <i>masc. by exception</i>
dolor, <i>masc.</i>	mors, <i>fem.</i>
Dumnorix, <i>masc. by meaning</i>	mōs, <i>masc.</i>
fortitūdo, <i>fem.</i>	multitūdo, <i>fem.</i>
frāter, <i>masc. by meaning</i>	nōbilitās, <i>fem.</i>
homo, hominis <i>gen., sing., masc.</i>	ōrātio, <i>fem.</i>
by meaning	Orgetorix, <i>masc. by meaning</i>
itinere, <i>abl. sing., neut. by exception</i>	pater, <i>masc. by meaning</i>
tion	pāx, <i>fem.</i>
jūs, jūris <i>gen., sing. neut.</i>	plēbs, <i>fem.</i>
jūsjurandum, <i>neut.</i>	profectio, <i>fem.</i>
lātītūdo, <i>fem.</i>	suspītio, <i>fem.</i>
lēgātio, <i>fem.</i>	tempus, temporis <i>gen., sing. neut.</i>
longitūdo, <i>fem.</i>	

Adj.

facil-is, -e

potēns, *masc., fem., and neut.*

5. -U STEMS.

exercitus lacus magistrātus passus principātus senātus

6. -E STEMS.

diēs

fidēs

rēs

7. INDECL. NUMERAL ADJ.

centum

decem

octōgintā

quadrāgintā

8. PRON.

idem, *nom. sing. neut.*ille, *nom. sing. masc.*

9. PREP.

ante

apud

ex (ē)

ob

prō

10. ADV.

eōdem

item

maximē

nōn

satis

facile

lātē

minus, *comp.* quam

undique

11. CONJ.

āc (*for atque*)

autem

nē

neque

quān

ut

Diagram showing by examples in the 3d sing.¹ every regular form of the Lat. verb learned thus far.

1ST CONJUGATION.		2D CONJUGATION.		3D CONJUGATION.		4TH CONJUGATION.	
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
INDICATIVE MODE.							
<i>Pres.</i>	cremā-t	cremā-tur	habē-tur	ducī-t	ducī-tur	faci-ē-ba-t ²	potī-tur
<i>Impf.</i>	cremā-ba-t	cremā-bā-tur	habē-ba-t	ducē-ba-t	duce-bā-tur	ori-ē-ba-tur	
<i>Pf.</i>	cremāt-us est	habu-i-t		dux-i-t	duct-us est		
<i>Pfpf.</i>	cremāt-us erat	habu-erā-t		dux-erā-t	duct-us erat		
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.							
<i>Impf.</i>	cremā-re-t	cremā-rē-tur	habē-re-t	habē-rē-tur	ducē-re-t	ducē-re-tur	cōseiv-eri-t
<i>Pf.</i>							
INFINITIVE MODE.							
<i>Pres.</i>	cremā-re	cremā-rī	habē-re	habē-rī	ducē-re	duc-ī	ori-rī
<i>Fut.</i>	cremāt-ūrus esse				duct-ūrus esse		
PARTICIPLES.							
<i>Pres.</i>	cremāt-ūrus ³				duct-ūrus		ori-ē-us
<i>Fut.</i>						duct-us	
<i>Pf.</i>	cremāt-us	crema-ndus					ori-e-ndus
<i>Gerund.</i>							
GERUNDS, — gen. sing.							
	crema-ndī				ducē-ndī		
SUPINES, — abl. sing.							
	cremat-u				duct-ū		

¹ How does the 3d plur. differ as a rule from the 3d sing., and what exceptions to this rule?

² **facere** has some forms of the 3d and some of the 4th conjugation. The **e** in this form connects the pres. stem and the tens: sign.

³ The pupil should remember that all the partic. in **-us** are declined like adj. having this ending in the nom. sing. masc.

4. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write the gen. sing. and gen. plur. of all the 3d decl. nouns in the "Word Review." (b) Give the gender and write the gen. sing. and gen. plur. of the following nom. sing.: **ars, avis, ovile, egestās, mūnītio, similitūdo, māter.** (c) Write the nom. sing. of the following stems, and explain its formation in each case: **nec-, palūd-, pont-, prætōr-, ortu-, fulmin-, turpitūdīn-, aciē-.**

2. (On Chap. 2.) (a) The Helvetii, influenced by Orgetorix, determined to go out of their own territory into the territory of their neighbors. (b) Orgetorix easily persuaded the Helvetii, since he was the highest-born and richest among them. (c) The province which the Romans possessed was next to Helvetia. (d) For this reason the Helvetii were wandering very widely, and were often able to wage war upon the rest of the Gauls. (e) Mount Jura, by which the Sequani were separated from the Helvetii, is very high. (f) High-born (men) are obtaining that part of Gaul which is hemmed in by the mountains. (g) The Helvetii do not think that Orgetorix will make (is about to make) a conspiracy.

3. (On Chap. 3.) (a) Orgetorix, having influenced the common people (the common people having been influenced), tried to persuade those who held the power in the neighboring states. (b) The Helvetii made their plantings as large as possible so that they might have a supply of grain. (c) The men whose fathers had held the kingly power thought that it was easy to seize it for themselves. (d) These (men) were not able to seize the kingly power which had often been seized in Gaul. (e) Orgetorix gives a promise to Dumnorix and hopes that he himself will accomplish his attempts. (f) The Helvetii prepare all those things which pertain to accomplishing their undertakings. (g) Peace and friendship were established by the Helvetii, in order that they might have friends on their march. (h) They think that by seizing the kingly power (the kingly power having been seized) they can be more powerful.

4. (On Chap. 4.) (a) The man who was condemned pleaded his own cause. (b) All the debtors to whom Orgetorix gives arms are trying to rescue him. (c) Through many men the magistrates were following up Orgetorix, that he might not wage war upon the state.

LESSON XXVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 5**,¹ through **subeunda essent**.

2. NOTES.²

1. **nihilō** : the abl. sing. in connection with the comp. **minus** indicates how much less, and may be literally translated, *less by nothing*, freely translated, *nevertheless*.

2. **exeant** : (a) pres. subjv. act. of verb **exīre** ; cf. impf. subjv. act. **exīrent** XIII. ; (b) denotes purpose ; (c) the clause **ut . . exeant** is in apposition with **id** ; cf. XXIV. n. 3 (d).

3. **præterquam** : (a) a compound word made up of **præter**, *further*, and **quam**, *than* ; (b) **id** and **erat** are understood after it, and the full sense is : *they burned all the grain further than (that was) which*, etc.

4. **sēcum** : (a) **cum** appended as in **quibuscum** ; cf. VIII. n. 4 (b) ; (b) meaning of **sē** ? why ?

5. **portātūrī** : (a) exact literal meaning ? (b) ending and stem ? (c) With what does it agree ?

6. **reditōnis** : (a) the nom. is **reditio**, which names the action of the verb **redīre**, *to go back* ; cf. **dictio** XXIV. ; (b) **domum** follows it in sense and denotes the direction of the return ; without a prep. just as in Eng. translation.

7. **sublātā** : (a) pf. pass. partic. of irreg. verb **tollere** ; (b) forms what construction with **spē** ? cf. **rēgnō occupātō** XXIII.

8. **subeunda** : (a) from verb **subīre** ; (b) cf., for form and use, XIX. n. 5.

¹ **B. G. I. 5** = **Bellum Gallicum**, Book I., Chapter 5.

² Many difficulties not provided for in the Notes are fully met in the Vocabularies, which must, of course, be consulted in translating the Text.

9. **essent**: (a) for form, cf. **esset** XXII. N. 6; (b) why subjv.? (c) **parātiōrēs** is a pred. adj. after it; what case, then, and why? cf. XX. N. 4 (d); (d) compare **parātiōrēs**, and decline it in all genders.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The abl. of degree of difference A. & G. 250. H. 423 and N. 1.

4. VOCABULARY.

In this and subsequent vocabularies the pf. ind. act. and pf. pass. partic. of all 3d conj. and of all irreg. verbs, will be given. The ending of the gen. sing. will also be given when the form of the nom. leaves the gen. in doubt. It is to be understood that all nouns in **-us** are of the 2d decl. unless it is otherwise stated; 4th decl. nouns are comparatively few in Caesar. Only the nom. masc. of adj. will be given.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ædificium , <i>a building.</i> | 10. periculum , <i>that which tests, a peril.</i> |
| 2. combūrere , combūssit , combūstus , <i>to burn up, to consume.</i> | 11. portāre , <i>to carry.</i> |
| 3. domus , -ūs , (has some forms of the 2d decl.), fem., <i>a house, a home.</i> | 12. post , prep. with accus., <i>after, behind.</i> |
| 4. duodecim (compounded of duo , <i>two</i> , and decem), indecl., <i>twelve.</i> | 13. præterquam , adv., <i>further than, beyond, besides.</i> |
| 5. incendere , incendit , incēnsus , <i>to set fire to; cf. meaning of combūrere.</i> | 14. privātus , <i>belonging to an individual, private.</i> |
| 6. jam , adv., <i>at this time</i> (as contrasted with the past or future), <i>already, at last.</i> | 15. quadringentī , adj., <i>four hundred; cf. quadrāgintā</i> , indecl., <i>forty.</i> |
| 7. nihilum , <i>nothing; nihil</i> , the indecl. form, is more common. | 16. reditio , <i>a going back, return.</i> |
| 8. oppidum , <i>a stronghold, a town.</i> | 17. spēs , stem spē- , <i>hope.</i> |
| 9. parātus (pf. pass. partic. of parāre), <i>prepared, ready.</i> | 18. subīre , subiit , subitus , irreg., <i>to go under or near, to undergo.</i> |
| | 19. tollere , sustulit , sublātus , irreg., <i>to lift up, to remove, to destroy.</i> |
| | 20. ubi , <i>when, where.</i> |
| | 21. vīcus , <i>a group of houses, a village, a street.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Omnia oppida ab Helvētiīs incendēbantur. (b) Ubi jam parātī fuērunt, carrīs, quōs coēmerant, multum frūmentum portant. (c) Orgetorix nōn arbitrātus est Helvētiōs post suam mortem exīre cōnātūrōs esse. (d) Helvētīū, ædificiīs combūstīs, aliōs domōs occupāre cōnantur. (e) Oppida eōrum numerō duodecim īgnī cremāta erant.

2. (a) All the grain was not carried with them. (b) (There) were four hundred villages in Helvetia. (c) The common people were very ready to undergo all dangers. (d) The beasts of burden which they had bought were dragging the carts.

3. (a) Orgetorix was ready to make a conspiracy. (b) When Orgetorix had died, the Helvetii were, nevertheless, able to go out of their territory. (c) They burned all their buildings, so that the hope of returning home might be taken away. (d) Two years were sufficient for preparing all these things.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Lat. for *nevertheless*. 2. The Lat. meaning *ready for*. 3. The best Eng. equivalent for the abl. absolute in this lesson. 4. The lit. translation of the gerundive in this lesson. 5. Verbs used thus far which take a complementary inf. 6. Two words meaning *when*. 7. Compounds of **sequī**, **facere**, **īre**, **ferre**, **dūcere**, and **capere** used thus far — form and meaning. 8. Difference between Lat. for *forty* and *four hundred*. 9. The difference between future act. and pf. pass. partic. 10. The comparison of the adjective.

LESSON XXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 5**, **trium mēnsium** to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **jubent**: (a) used with the accus. **quemque**, and inf. **efferre**, *they order each one to bear out*; (b) **domō**, *from home*; used exceptionally without a prep.; the place from which regularly requires the prep.; cf. **ex agrīs** XXV., **ē finibus** XXVII.

2. **cōnsiliō**: abl. sing. with **ūsī**, pf. partic. of **ūtī**, which takes the abl.; cf. XIV. Obs. 10.

3. **exūstīs**; note that this partic. means *having been burned up*, while **ūsī**, above, means *having used*; both end in **-us** in nom. sing. How do you explain the difference of voice? Why does not **exūstīs** agree with the subj., as **ūsī** does?

4. **utī . . . proficiscantur**, *to set out*: (a) pres. subjv.; the **-e** of the pres. stem is changed to **a**; (b) the subjv. of purpose may often be best translated by the inf., which frequently denotes purpose in Eng.

5. **Boiōs**; nom. plur.? What other names of tribes are used in this lesson? How do you recognize them as names of peoples?

6. **oppūgnārant**: (a) contracted form of **oppūgnāv-erant**; (b) plpf. ind. act. of 1st conjug.; cf. **habuerat**, 2d conjug., XX., **incoluerant**, 3d conjug., above. What is the tense sign in each case? (c) formed on the pf. stem **oppūgnāv-**.

7. **adsciscunt**: (a) What is the obj. of this verb? (b) **receptōs** agrees with **Boiōs**, from which it seems to be widely separated; if, however, the clauses **quī . . . oppūgnārant** be read according to the direction in XXIV. Obs. 4, and as a parenthetical statement, it will be seen that the partic. is closely connected with its noun; (c) **receptōs**, though a partic., is well translated as an independent verb, thus, *they receive and attach to themselves*; so **utī . . . ūsī . . . exūstīs . . . proficiscantur**, *to adopt, to burn up, and to set out*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. efferre , extulit , ēlātus , <i>to bear out.</i> | 11. quemque , accus. sing. masc., <i>each one, every one.</i> |
| 5. exūrere , -ūssit , -ūstus , <i>to burn up.</i> | 12. recipere , -cēpit , -ceptus , <i>to take back, to receive; sē recipere, to betake one's self, to retreat.</i> |
| 6. jubēre , jūssit , jūssus , <i>to order.</i> | 13. socius , <i>an ally.</i> |
| 7. mēnsis , -is , masc. by exception, <i>a month.</i> | 14. trānsīre , trānsiit , trānsitus , <i>to go across.</i> |
| 8. molere , moluit , molitus , <i>to grind.</i> | 15. ūnā , adv., <i>together.</i> |
| 9. Nōricus , <i>of the Norici, Noric.</i> | 16. ūtī , ūsus , <i>to use; takes abl.</i> |
| 10. oppūgnāre , <i>to fight against, to storm.</i> | |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Boiī ab Helvētīis receptī sunt. (b) Helvētīi, omnibus rēbus parātīs, proficiuntur. (c) Boiī quī in Galliam ā Germāniā vagātī erant amīcī appellābantur. (d) Persuāsērunt fīnitimīs ut, vīcīs incēnsīs, dē fīnibus exīrent.

2. (a) The Helvetii are about to carry with them meal (sufficient) for three months. (b) The Tulingi attempt the same (thing). (c) They collected all their men, so as to be able to wage war upon their neighbors. (d) They are about to use the carts which they have prepared. (e) They order all the soldiers to obtain their own provisions.

3. (a) Those who used to dwell (were dwelling) across the Rhine are dwelling in Gaul. (b) Noreia had been stormed by the Boiī. (c) The Boiī, after wandering in many places and storming one large town, are at length the allies of the Helvetii. (d) The Helvetii prove that it is fitting for the Latobrigi to adopt the same plan.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference in form and meaning of **ūtī** and **utī**. 2. The best translation for **mēnsium**. 3. Whether **jubent** has two objects or one. 4. The comparative frequency of the use of the partic. in Eng. and Lat. 5. Why the word for *home* omits the prep. 6. The names of peoples with nom. ending **-ī** in text so far; with nom. ending **-æ**. 7. The names of countries and towns ending in **-a**.

LESSON XXIX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 6**, through **vadō trānsītur**.

2. NOTES.

1. **erant**, *there were*; the Eng. expletive *there*, used to take the place of a subj. placed elsewhere, has no corresponding word in Lat.

2. **duo**; limits **itinerā**, *ways*; peculiar in form; see Gram. Less.

3. **possent**: (a) for form, see XXII. N. 7 (a). (b) Why is **itineribus** abl.? (c) May the translation of any Lat. word in this clause be properly omitted in Eng.?

4. **ūnum**; neut. sing. limiting the Lat. word for *way*, to be supplied in thought.

5. **quā**; here an adv. meaning *where*, not a rel. pron.

6. **ut . . . possent**, *so that they could*: (a) the clause expresses the result (not purpose) of **mōns impendēbat**, *the mountain was overhanging*; (b) the subj. is **perpaucī**, usually an adj., but here a noun; cf. XIV. N. 4 (b).

7. **alterum**; for meaning, see XV. N. 7 (a).

8. **facilius**: (a) neut. comp. of adj.; see Gram. Less. What else might it be, so far as form is concerned? cf. **facilius** XIV. N. 11; (b) for construction of preceding **multō**, cf. **nihilō** XXVII. N. 1.

9. **nōnnullīs locīs**, *in several places*; the prep. exceptionally omitted in Lat.; see Gram. Less.

10. **trānsītur**: (a) many compounds of **īre**, *to go*, are used in the pass.; though the Eng. would not admit *it is gone across*, we may say *it is crossed*; (b) note that this whole lesson may be well translated in almost the exact order of the original.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1. Decl. of duo A. & G. 94, b. | H. 175. |
| 2. Neut. of the comp. of adj. A. & G. 89, 86. | H. 162, 154. |
| 3. Rel. agreeing with re-
peated antec. . . . A. & G. 200, a. | H. 445, 8. |
| 4. Adj. used substantively . A. & G. 188. | H. 441 and 1. |
| 5. Prep. omitted with locō
and locīs A. & G. 258, f. | H. 425, II. 2. |
| 6. Subjv. of result A. & G. 319. | H. 500, II. |

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. difficilis , <i>difficult.</i> | 6. nōnnullus , <i>not none, some.</i> |
| 2. duo, duæ, duo , irreg., <i>two.</i> | 7. nūper , <i>recently.</i> |
| 3. expedire, -pedivit, -peditus ,
4th conjug., <i>to set free from</i>
(something); the pf. pass.
partic. is commonly used like
an adj. in all respects and
means <i>unencumbered, without</i>
<i>baggage, open.</i> | 8. omnīnō , adv., <i>altogether, in all.</i> |
| | 9. pācāre , <i>to pacify, to subdue.</i> |
| 4. fuere, flūxit fluxus , <i>to flow.</i> | 10. perpaucus , <i>very little; in plur.</i>
<i>very few.</i> |
| 5. impendēre , no pf. act., nor pf.
partic., intrans., <i>to overhang.</i> | 11. quā , <i>where.</i> |
| | 12. singul-ī, -æ, -a , <i>one to each, one</i>
<i>at a time.</i> |
| | 13. vadum , <i>a ford, a shallow.</i> |
| | 14. vix , adv., <i>with effort, with diffi-</i>
<i>culty, scarcely.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Flūmen quod sē trānsitūrōs esse spērābant, erat Rhodanus. (b) Nostra prōvincia Rhodanō flūmine ab Helvētiīs continētur. (c) Quam maximus numerus carrōrum itinere angustō inter flūmen et montem dūcēbātur. (d) Allobrogēs, quibuscum Rōmānī nūper contenderant, proximī Sēquanīs fuērunt.

2. (a) Jura was the mountain which was overhanging. (b) The Helvetii could go out from home by two ways. (c) They thought that yonder (**ille**) mountain was much higher. (d) Having dragged their carts to the river, they try to cross by the ford.

3. (a) The Helvetii were much braver than (**quam**) the Allobroges. (b) At that time it happened that the Allobroges were being subdued by the Romans. (c) Two states were very near, so that (only) the river, which was not deep, divided them. (d) Many were kept out by few in that place.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The particulars in which the decl. of **duo** is peculiar. 2. Difference in meaning between **paucī** and **pauca**, used as nouns in plur. cases. 3. Two possible meanings for **quā**, for **facilius**. 4. Difference in thought between a purpose and a result. 5. In what cases the neut. of the comp. differs from the masc. 6. The development of the last meaning of **vix** in Vocab. from the first. 7. Similarity in meaning of **per-** and **-issimus** in **perpaucī** and **altissimus**.

LESSON XXX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 6**, **extrēmum oppidum** to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **extrēmum** : stands first in the sentence for the sake of emphasis; it is the location of Geneva which the writer wants to tell us.

2. **bonō animō**, abl., *with good mind, of good disposition, well-disposed*; the phrase limits the subj. of **vidērentur** like a descriptive adj.

3. **paterentur**, *to permit*: (a) subjv. of purpose after **persuāsūrōs** and **coāctūrōs**. (b) Is the verb **cōgere** used with any other construction? XXIV. n. 2 (d); (c) antec. of the preceding **suōs** and **eōs**?

4. **dīcunt**, *they appoint*; cf. the meaning of **dīcere** in phrase **causam dīcere** XXIV. How do you translate the preceding abl. absolute?

5. *quā diē*¹ *convenient*, *that on this (appointed) day they may come together*: (a) *quā* = *ut eā*; (b) a purpose clause; they appoint a day that all may come together at one time, that they may not straggle along at different times; (c) the sign of pres. subjv. -*ā*-, here in 4th conjug.: cf. XXVIII. n. 4.

6. *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.* = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs*, a peculiar expression for *diēs quintus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*, *the fifth day before the April Calends*: (a) *Aprīlēs* is an adj.; (b) *Kalendæ* is the Lat. for the first day of the month; (c) the reckoning is backward from the first day of the month, instead of forward as with us; (d) in reckoning the time between two dates, both extremes are counted, thus: April 1, March 31, 30, 29, 28; the fifth day before the April Calends is, therefore, March 28, not March 27, as our way of reckoning would make it.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The descriptive abl., or abl. of quality, is accompanied by an adj. or possessive gen.

2. *Dīcere* may mean *to say* or *to plead* or *to appoint*. The meaning of a Lat. word varies with the context (*i. e.* the words in connection with it) just as that of an Eng. word varies. No Lat. sentence can be even tolerably translated without attention to this fact.

3. The Romans reckoned the days of the month backward instead of forward, and in reckoning the time between two dates counted both the day from which and the day to which.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of *vīs* A. & G. 61. H. 66.
2. The effect of position at
the beginning of a sen-
tence A. & G. 344, 1. H. 561, 1.
3. The abl. of quality . . A. & G. 251. H. 419, II.
4. Purpose clauses intro-
duced by a relative . A. & G. 317. H. 497, I.²

¹ Note that *diē* is here fem. and see Harpers' Lat. Diet., *diēs*, I. B, 1 and (β).

² Study examples.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Aprīlis, -is**, masc. (probably from **aperīre**, *to open*), *the month of April*; also very frequently an adj.
2. **Aulus**, a Roman first or individual name; generally represented in Lat. authors by the initial **A**.
3. **convenīre, -vēnit, -ventus**, *to come together, to meet*.
4. **existimāre (ex and aestimāre)**, *to estimate, think*.
5. **īre, īvit, itum**¹, *to go*.
6. **Kalendæ, ārum**, *the Calends, the first day of a month*.
7. **Lūcius**, a Roman first name, usually represented by **L**.
8. **nōndum**, *not yet*.
9. **patī, passus**, *to endure, permit*.
10. **pōns**, masc. by exception, *a bridge*.
11. **quīntus**, *fifth*.
12. **rīpa**, *the bank of a river*.
13. **vel, or; vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*.
14. **vidēre, vidit, vīsus**, *to see; in pass., often, to seem*.
15. **vīs, vīs** gen., *force, violence*; in plur., **vīrēs**, *strength*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs vir māgnā auctōritāte erat. (b) Duōrum itinerum unum perfacile, alterum multō difficilīus erat. (c) Allobrogēs nōn amīcī Rōmānīs sunt. (d) Persuādent omnī plēbī ut ūnā diē ad rīpam flūminis conveniat.

2. (a) The town Geneva is very near Lake Geneva. (b) They came together on the thirtieth of March. (c) The Helvetii thought the Allobroges would allow them to go through their territory. (d) When the day had been appointed, they collected all their soldiers.

3. (a) They determined to compel the Allobroges to allow (subjv.) these wagons to cross the fields. (b) Geneva, which is very near the Helvetii, is very far distant from the towns of the Belgæ. (c) After trying (partic.) to take away the hope of return, they sent men to persuade their neighbors.

¹ The neut. of the partic. will be given when the masc. is not used.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. A new use of the abl. 2. How it differs from the abl. of means 3. From the abl. of respect. 4. Different ways of translating the abl. absolute. 5. The leading thought in each sentence of the Text. 6. The nom. plur. of **vīs**; of **locus**. 7. Two striking differences between Roman and Eng. methods of reckoning time. 8. Why an important word should be placed at the beginning of a sentence. 9. Examples in Eng. of variation in the meaning of a word because of a different context. 10. Analysis, when they introduce purpose clauses, of the following relatives: **quī**, sing., **quī**, plur., **quō**, **quam**, **cūjus**.

LESSON XXXI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G.** I. 7, through **jubet rescindī**.

2. NOTES.

1. **Cæsarī**: (*a*) dat. case; (*b*) other uses of the ending **-ī**? XVI. n. 13 (*b*); (*c*) note the emphatic position; to Cæsar, a new actor on the scene, our attention is now directed; cf. XXX. n. 1.

2. **nūntiātum esset**: (*a*) a new compound tense, the plpf. subjv. pass.; it is made up in all conjug. of the pf. pass. partic. and the impf. subjv. of verb **esse**; cf. XXII. n. 6 and plpf. ind. pass., XX. n. 4 (*a*) (*b*); (*b*) const.¹ of **Cæsarī**? XXII. Obs. 3.

3. **iter facere**, to make a journey, to march (when used of an army); **iter** (**īre**, to go) is the accus. sing. neut., shortened form of stem **itiner-**; cf. **itiner-e**, **itiner-a**, **itiner-ibus**.

4. **eōs . . . cōnārī**; the clause is in apposition with **id** preceding.

5. **quam maximīs potest itineribus**, a peculiar shortened expression for **tam magnīs itineribus quam potest maximīs itineribus**, by so great journeys as he is able (to hasten) by means of the

¹ Construction, *i. e.* relation to other words in the sentence.

greatest journeys, i. e., by the longest possible stages ; cf. quam maximum numerum XVIII. (where possunt is omitted) and the Eng. expression by easy stages.

6. *ad Genuam, to the vicinity of Geneva*, not into the city ; *ab urbe*, just before, means *from the vicinity of Rome*, not *out of Rome*. What would *out of Rome* be in Lat. ?

7. *tōtī* ; peculiar dat. of *tōtus*, the same for all genders ; *cf. tōtīus, ipsīus, illīus, ējus, cūjus* and XX. N. 1 ; also *ipsī, illī, eī, cui*.

8. *imperat*, takes dat. of the person, *prōvinciæ* ; *cf. persuādēre*.

9. *erat . . . legio* : (a) *cf. order of words with that in erant . . . itinera XXIX.* ; in each case the subj. is made emphatic by being taken out of its regular position at the beginning of its clause and placed at the end ; (b) gen. sing. and plur. of *legio* ?

10. *jubet* ; note in this lesson the rapid succession of pres. ind., impressing us with the energy and rapidity of Cæsar's movements. It was Cæsar who said " I came, I saw, I conquered."

11. *rescind-ī* ; *cf. the ending -ī in this verb and in proficisc-ī with -rī in cōnā-rī*. Where is each of these forms found ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The p'pf. subjv. pass. is formed in all conjug. by combining the pf. partic. pass. with the impf. subjv. of *esse*.

2. The 3d decl. noun *iter* is neut. by exception, and its stem is *itiner-*.

3. The use of *quam* with the sup., where it may be translated *possible*, involves the omission of *tam, so*, of the positive of the adj., and sometimes of the verb *posse*.

4. The ending *-ī* occurs as a dat. sing. ending in *tōtus*, and several other 1st and 2d decl. adj., as well as in all the demonstrative pron.

5. *Imperāre*, like *persuādēre*, is followed by the dat. of the person.

6. The pres. inf. pass. of the 3d conjug. ends in *-ī*, while that of other conjug. ends in *rī*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Meaning of **ad** with
names of towns . . A. & G. 258, *f.*, II. 433, I., 380,
Rem.; 259, *f.* II., I.
2. The effect of placing the
subj. at the end of a
sentence¹. . . . A. & G. 344 and H. 561, II.
a.
3. The force of the pres.
ind. in narrative . . A. & G. 276, *d.* II. 467, III.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cæsar, Cæsaris , full name
Cāius Jūlius Cæsar , a
great Roman, — writer, gen-
eral, statesman. | 5. pervenīre , <i>to come through, to
arrive.</i> |
| 2. imperāre , ² <i>to command</i> ; prō-
vinciæ militēs imperāre ,
<i>to give orders to the province
for soldiers.</i> | 6. rescindere, -scidit, -scissus ,
<i>to break down.</i> |
| 3. mātūrāre , <i>to hasten.</i> | 7. ulterior , adj., positive wanting,
<i>farther.</i> |
| 4. nūntiāre , <i>to announce.</i> | 8. urbs , <i>a city</i> ; to a Roman, often
<i>the city of Rome</i> , just as "the
city" means <i>Boston</i> to one liv-
ing in the suburbs of that city. |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Cæsari nūntiant Helvētiōs faciōre itinere exīre cōnatūrōs esse. (b) Cæsar, ut prōvinciā Helvētiōs prohiberet, quam maximās cōpiās cōgere mātūrabat. (c) Erat omnīnō pōns ūnus quō ad Genuam iter facere poterant. (d) Cæsar, factīs itineribus māgnīs, Gallīs quī prōvinciam incolēbant militēs multōs imperāvit. (e) Cum quam maximæ cōpiæ coactæ essent, in prōvinciam maturāvit.

¹ On emphatic position in the Eng. sentence, consult Welsh's "Lessons in Eng. Grammar," Chap. XXIX., Sec. 2 and 6.

² The pupil must not forget that all verbs with inf. in **-āre** form pf. regularly in **-āvit**, and partic. in **-āt-us, -a, -um**.

2. (a) He sets out from Rome, makes his way through the farther province, and comes to the vicinity of Geneva. (b) After the bridge had been broken down (abl. absolute) by Cæsar, the Helvetii could cross the Rhone by a ford. (c) Cæsar, who was at that time in the city, hastened to the Rhone, which was many miles away.

3. (a) Cæsar tries to keep out the Helvetii by breaking down the bridge, and levies soldiers upon the province. (b) Many who lived in our province were well-disposed toward Cæsar. (c) The Helvetii hope to be able to seize the bridge, so that by this bridge they may cross into the province.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Lat. for *to set out, to march, to come, to go, to go back and forth, to arrive at*.
2. A word with two more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. sing.
3. Three translations of **ad**, with illustrations from text of Cæsar.
4. Difference in construction or thought between **quemque efferre jubent** and **pontem jubet rescindī**.
5. Comparison of the Eng. expression *to arrive at* and the Lat. **pervenire ad**.¹
6. Similarity in formation of plpf. ind. pass. and plpf. subjv. pass.
7. The effect of arrangement in the sentences, "What a piece of work is man," "Blessed are the peace-makers."
8. The expanded form of **quam maximum numerum coëmunt**.

¹ See Webster's Unabridged Dict. *arrive* and *at*.

LESSON XXXII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 7**, **Ubi dē** through **facere liceat**.

2. NOTES.

1. **adventū**; the nom. is formed by uniting the root¹ of **advenīre**, and the ending **-tus**, which denotes the name of the action; *cf.* **redictio**, **dic-tio**; decl. of **adventū**?

2. **certiōrēs factī sunt**; *they are having been made more certain, they were made more certain, they were informed*: (a) **factī sunt** is the pf. ind. pass. of **facere**; *cf.* XXV. N. 4 (a); (b) **factī** and **certiōrēs** are both pred. adj. agreeing with the subj. of **sunt**; *cf.* XX. N. 4 (d); (c) in **dē adventū**, modifying this phrase, **dē** means *of* in sense of *concerning*.

3. **quī dīcerent**, *to say*; *cf.* XXX. N. 5. To what is **quī** equivalent here?

4. **sibi esse in animō**, *it is to them in mind, they have (it) in mind, they intend*; (a) antec. of **sibi**? (b) the dat. with **esse** has the force of a nom. indicating the person who has or possesses a thing, as in above translation *they have (it) in mind*.

5. **aliud**, neut. accus. sing., limiting **iter**; for ending **-d**, *cf.* **i-d**, **quo-d**, **illu-d**.

6. **propterea quod . . . habērent**; *cf.* **propterea quod . . . absunt** VI., **quod . . . contendunt** IX., **quod . . . continentur** XIV., **propterea quod . . . fuit** XXIX., with **propterea quod . . . obtentūrus esset** XXII., **quod . . . vidērentur** XXX. and the present instance; note that in the first four instances the verb after **quod** is ind. and the clauses stand in ordinary narrative, *i. e.* in direct discourse, while in the last three the verb is subjv. and the clauses stand after verbs of saying or thinking, *i. e.* in indirect discourse; note, too, that all these **quod** clauses are subordinate.

¹ The root is the basis of derivation for groups of words, while the stem is the basis of inflection for one word.

7. **nullum**: (*a*) translate the sentence of which this is the last word in the exact order of the original, and *cf.* Eng. sentence, "Silver and gold have I none;" (*b*) has **-ius** in gen. sing., **-ī** in dat., like **tōtus**, **ūnus**, **altera** and preceding **aliud** and **ullō**.

8. **rogāre**; **sē** is to be supplied as its subj.

9. **ut . . . liceat**: (*a*) an obj. clause of purpose; *cf.* XX. n. 5 (*b*), Gram. Less.; (*b*) **liceat** is an impersonal verb; *cf.* XXIV. n. 3 (*a*) (*b*); (*c*) subj. of **liceat**? (*d*) antec. of **ējus** and **sibi**? (*e*) the translation of what the Helvetii actually said, beginning with **rogāre**, is, "We ask that it be permitted to us to do this with your consent."

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The endings **-tio** and **-tus** name the action. The name of the action in **-tus** is of the 4th decl.

2. An expression freely translated *to inform*, but meaning lit. *to make more certain*, is found in Cæsar. It is formed by combining **facere** and **certior**, an adj. in the comp. agreeing with the name of the person who is informed.

3. The prep. *of*, when used in the sense of *concerning*, is represented in Lat. by **dē** with the abl. and not by the gen.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Adj. forming gen. sing.

in **-ius**, dat. in **-ī** . . . A. & G. 83 and H. 151 and 1.
a, b.

2. The dat. of the possessor A. & G. 231. H. 387.

3. The subordinate clauses of

indir. discourse . . . A. & G. 336, last H. 524.
clause.

4. Change of order for em-

phasis A. & G. 344 and e. H. 560, 561, III.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. adventus , -ūs, <i>a coming to, approach.</i> | 5. nullus , adj. (nē , <i>not</i> , and ullus , <i>any</i>), <i>not any, no, none.</i> |
| 2. certus , <i>sure, certain</i> ; hominem certiōrem facere , <i>to inform a man.</i> | 6. prīnceps , prīncipis , adj. or noun, <i>chief.</i> |
| 3. licet , <i>it is permitted</i> ; eī licet , <i>it is permitted to him, he may.</i> | 7. rogāre , <i>to ask.</i> |
| 4. maleficium (male , adv., <i>badly</i> , and facere), <i>wrong-doing, an evil deed.</i> | 8. sine , prep. with abl., <i>without.</i> |
| | 9. ullus , adj., <i>any.</i> |
| | 10. voluntās (volent- , shortened stem of pres. partic. of velle , <i>to wish</i> , and -tās), <i>willingness, will, desire.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Ubi Helvētiōs certiōrēs dē Cæsaris adventū fēcērunt, hī lēgatiōnem mittunt. (b) Nammēcius et Verudoctius prīncipēs nōbilissimī suæ civitātis fuērunt. (c) Lēgātōs, quī ad Cæsarem īrent, mīsērunt. (d) Eīs est in animō vī cōgere Sēquanōs ut itinere difficiliōre eōs exīre patiantur.

2. (a) They determined to go, they tried to go, they could go, they hastened to go. (b) They ordered them to go, they compelled them to go, they allowed them to go. (c) They persuaded them to go, they asked them to go. (d) They tried to persuade Cæsar not to keep them out of the province.

3. (a) Cæsar, being informed of the plans of the Helvetii, hastened into his province. (b) They intend, because they have no other way, to march through the province without wrong-doing. (c) They ask permission to do this with Cæsar's good pleasure. (d) After getting everything ready, they may go.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Lat. for *to march, to intend, to inform, he may.* 2. **Ullus, nullus, nōnnullus.** 3. Two ways of translating *of* into Lat. 4. Two ways of translating *for*. 5. Two ways of translating *have*. 6. Two very common uses of the subjv. 7. When, as a rule, to translate *to* by the complementary inf. 8. When by the subjv. 9. Some exceptions to 8.

LESSON XXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 7, Cæsar, quod to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **tenēbat**; cf. XXXII. N. 6.

2. **missum**: (a) **esse** understood, as with the preceding **occisum** and **pulsum**; cf. XXIII. Obs. 1; (b) the pf. pass. partic. with **esse** forms the pf. inf. pass.; cf. **missus est**; (c) inf. in indir. discourse, **memoriā tenēbat** being equivalent to a verb of thinking; cf. XVII. Obs. 6; (d) What is the pres. inf. pass.?

3. **putābat**: (a) note that in this sentence the subj. stands first, the pred. last. How many clauses in this chapter have exactly this order? (b) **esse** is understood with **concēdendum**, a gerundive in the neut.; the clause is translated, literally, *he did not think it was to be allowed*, a little more freely, *it ought to be allowed*.

4. **inimīcō animō**; cf. XXX. N. 2.

5. **faciundī**: (a) gerundive form for **faciendī**; see Gram. Less.; (b) limiting **itineris**, which depends on **facultāte**; literally, *the opportunity of a journey to be made*, more freely, *the opportunity of making a journey*; cf. XIX. N. 5 (c).

6. **imperāverat**; for form, see XXVIII. N. 6.

7. **dum . . . convenirent**: (a) impf. subjv. of 4th conjug.; cf. pres. subjv. same conjug., **convenient** XXX., and that of the 3d conjug., **profiscantur** XXVIII.; (b) *until they should come together*, but just as accurately, *for them to come together*. In what respect, then, is this clause like **ut . . . posset** just before?

8. **dēliberandum**; gerund; cf. XVIII. N. 6.

9. **quid**, indefinite pron., *anything*; cf. **quemque** XXVIII.; note its position immediately after **sī**.

10. **ad Id. Apr.** = **ad Idūs Aprīlēs**, *on the April Ides*; the *Ides* in April came on the 13th; cf. XXX. N. 6. What is the usual way of expressing the time at which? XXI. N. 2, XXIV. N. 4 (b).

11. **reverterentur**, *let them return*; what Cæsar said to the legates was, "I will take time to think about it; if you want anything, return on the Ides of April."

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. inf. pass. of all conjug. is compounded of the pf. pass. partic. and the pres. inf. **esse**; the pf. ind. pass. is compounded of the same partic. and the pres. ind. of **esse**.

2. The substantive form of the indefinite pron. **quis** differs from the relative pron. only in the nom. masc. sing. **quis** and the nom. and accus. neut. **quid**.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The decl. of the indefinite **quis**, **quæ**, **quid**. A. & G. 104. H. 190, 188.
2. The endings **-undus** and **-undī**. H. 239.
3. **Dum** clauses of purpose. A. & G. 328. H. 519, II. 2.
4. The gerundive meaning *ought* or *must*. . . . A. & G. 113, d. H. 234.
5. The unemphatic order of the Lat. sentence. . . A. & G. 343 and n. H. 559, 560.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **concēdere**, **-cēssit**, **-cēssus**, *to yield*.
2. **dēlibērāre** (from **dē** and **lībrāre**, *to weigh*) *to weigh well, ponder*.
3. **dum**, conj., *while, until*.
4. **facultās**, *opportunity*.
5. **Id-ūs**, **-uum**, fem. by exception, *the Ides*, the 13th of the month, except in March, May, July, and Oct., when they came on the 15th.
6. **inimīcus** (in negative and **amicus**), *unfriendly*.
7. **injūria**, *injustice, wrong*.
8. **intercēdere**, **-cēssit**, **-cēssūrus**, *to go between, to intervene*.
9. **jugum**, *that which joins, a yoke*; conquered armies, in token of submission, were often compelled to pass under a yoke consisting of a spear set on two uprights; *cf. Eng. subjugate*.
10. **memoria**, *memory*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 11. occidere , -cīdit, -cīsus (ob and cādere , to cut), to cut down, to kill. | 17. sī , conj., if. |
| 12. pellere , pepulit , pulsus , to drive. | 18. spātium , extent, either of space or time. |
| 13. putāre , to think. | 19. sub , prep. with accus. or abl., under. |
| 14. quis , quæ , quid , indefinite pron., any one, anything. | 20. sūmere , sūmpsit , sūptus , to take up, to assume. |
| 15. respondere , -spondit, -spōnsus, to answer. | 21. tamen , adv., yet, nevertheless. |
| 16. revertī , reversus , dep., to return; in the pf. tenses, the stem of the pf. act. form revertit was used by Cæsar. | 22. temperāre , to govern one's self, to refrain. |
| | 23. tenēre , tenuit , tentus , to hold. |
| | 24. velle , voluit , irreg., to wish. |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Ea facultās quam Helvētiī rogāvērunt nōn concēdenda est. (b) Rōmānō exercitū ab Helvētiīs jam pulsō, Cæsar cōs ire per prōvinciam non patebātur. (c) Cæsar diem ad dēliberandum, ut quam maximus numerus mīlitum sibi esset, sūmpsit.

2. (a) Men of unfriendly disposition are not likely (about to) refrain from wrong. (b) For several years the Romans had an army in the province. (c) It is not permitted to the Helvetii to go through the province, because in the consulship of Lucius Cassius they did harm.

3. (a) The province must not be seized. (b) Cæsar does not intend to allow the Helvetii to cross the Rhone. (c) The good son may see the soldiers of whom he has been informed.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the verbs you know meaning *to think*. 2. A conj. which in some sentences suggests both time and purpose. 3. The difference between gerund and gerundive. 4. All the compound tenses learned thus far. 5. Change of personal pron. in Eng. in passing from dir. to indir. discourse. 6. Difference in form and meaning between **quī** and **quis**, **quod** and **quid**. 7. Possible meanings for the form **quæ**. 8. **Mittere**, **mittī**, **missus est**, **missus esse**. 9. Pres. and impf. subjv. in 3d and 4th conjug.

LESSON XXXIV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 8**, through **prohibere possit**.

2. NOTES.

1. **mīlia passuum**; *cf.* XVII. N. 7, 8 (a) (b).

2. **pedum**: (a) gen. plur.; stem and nom. sing.? XVIII. Obs. 1; A. & G. 44, H. 36, 2; (b) limited by **sēdecim** and depends on **mūrum**, describing it like an adj.; similar to what abl. use?

3. **perducit**: (a) the long sentence ending here is not difficult if translated in order, since the words are arranged in natural groups; *cf.* XXIV. N. 4 (a), Obs. 4; (b) the verb is modified by **legiōne** and **mīlitibus**, ablatives of means,¹ by the phrases **ā lacū** and **ad montem**, by **mīlia**, and by **mūrum** and **fossam**, direct obj.; which of these four groups of modifiers stands nearest the verb? why?

4. **opere**: (a) **opus**, nom. sing. neut.; *cf.* **tempus**, -oris; (b) why abl.?

5. **possit**: (a) pres. subj.; *cf.* **possent**, impf. subj., XXIX.; (b) **quō**, the introductory word of this clause, = **ut eō**, *that by this (means)*. What degree of comparison immediately follows **quō** in the word **facilius**?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The first ten cardinal

numbers A. & G. 94. H. 174.

2. 3d decl. neut. in -us,

-eris A. & G. 48, d. H. 61, opus.

¹ Although names of persons, they are ablatives of means rather than of agent, because the persons are not regarded here as voluntary agents but as the instruments which Cæsar used.

3. The gen. of quality
(especially measure) . A. & G. **215** and H. **396**, V. and N. **1**.
4. The subjv. of purpose *b*.
after **quō** . . . A. & G. **317**, *b*. H. **497**, II. **2**.
5. The order of the modifiers of the verb . . A. & G. **343**. H. **560**, **567** and **3**.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. altitūdo , <i>height, depth; cf. altus.</i> | 10. opus , - eris , <i>a work, a piece of work.</i> |
| 2. castellum , <i>a small fort, a castle.</i> | 11. perducere , - dūxit , - ductus , <i>to lead through.</i> |
| 3. commūnīre , <i>to fortify strongly.</i> | 12. pēs , pedis , <i>a foot of man or beast, and also a measure of length.</i> |
| 4. dispōnere , - posuit , - positus , <i>to place apart, here and there.</i> | 13. præsidium , <i>a sitting before, a guard.</i> |
| 5. fossa , <i>that which has been dug, a ditch.</i> | 14. sēdecim (sex and decem), indecl. numeral, <i>six and ten, sixteen.</i> |
| 6. intereā , adv., <i>meanwhile.</i> | |
| 7. invītus , <i>unwilling.</i> | |
| 8. mūrus , <i>a wall.</i> | |
| 9. novem , indecl. numeral, <i>nine.</i> | |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Eīs rēbus quās sēcum habēbant firmissimī milītēs Rōmānī octo castella commūnīvērunt. (b) Lacū Lemannō Helvētīī continēbantur. (c) Cæsar, nē in prōvinciā ullum malefīcium facerent, mūrum fossamque perdūxit. (d) Sī vī trānsīre cōnātī erant, mūrō fossāque prohibēbantur.

2. (a) All the legions which were coming together had not yet arrived at the Rhone. (b) The soldiers who were already with Cæsar were bringing the ditch along to the mountain for several days. (c) At that time the boundaries of Italy (**Italia**) were far distant from the Rhone. (d) Mount Jura was overhanging, so that a very narrow way intervened between the mountain and the river.

3. (a) Cæsar thought it was not fitting for the Helvetii to go through our province, the men of which were not yet well disposed. (b) Cæsar, when they asked his permission, did not inform the Helvetii

that they must not march through our province. (c) Cæsar intends to finish these works, that the Helvetii may not be able to accomplish their undertaking.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Instances from the text of an abl. absolute formed with a noun and a noun, a noun and an adj., a noun and a partic. 2. A peculiarity of construction in **militibus perdūcit**, and explanation. 3. Best Eng. expression for **mūrus pedum sēdecim**. 4. Difference in Eng. between *may* and *can* and their Lat. representatives. 5. Decl. and indecl. cardinals to ten. 6. The adj. case of the noun. 7. The adv. case. 8. One use of the latter with the force of an adj. 9. The pres. subjv. of **esse** in this lesson and the forms of **esse** thus far met with. 10. The position of the direct obj.

LESSON XXXV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. l. 8, Ubi ea** to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **dare**: the translation of Cæsar's words, when speaking to the legates, is: "I cannot, consistently with the custom and precedent (because of the custom and precedent) of the Roman people, give to any one the right of way through the province."

2. **cōnentur**; in form a pres. subjv. pass. of the 1st conjug.; cf. **proficiscantur** XXVIII., **conveniant** XXX.

3. **prohibitūrum**: (a) **prohibit-**, a supine stem of 2d conjug.; pres. stem, **prohibē-**; pf. stem, **prohibu-**; (b) supply **esse**, the subjv. of which is **sē** in the preceding clause; (c) Cæsar's words when speaking to the legates: "I shall prevent."

4. **Helvētiī . . . dēstitērunt** : (a) *cf.*, for order and translation of this sentence, XXXIII. n. 3 (a), XXXIV. n. 3 ; (b) find in it two abl. of separation, six abl. of means ; (c) note how the successive adj. **dējectī, aliī, cōnātī, repulsī**, keep the subj. **Helvētiī** in mind.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The sign of the pres. subjv. is **-ē-** in the 1st conjug., and **-ā-** in the 3d and 4th. In the 1st and 3d this sign takes the place of the final vowel of the pres. stem, in the 4th it is added to that stem.

2. The supine stem of the 2d conjug. may be found by weakening the final vowel of the pres. stem to **-i** and adding **-t**.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. complūrēs, complūra neut., <i>very many.</i> | 10. mūnītio , <i>a fortifying, a fortification.</i> |
| 2. cōnātus, -ūs (cōnārī), <i>an attempt ; cf. cōnātum</i> and XXXII. n. 1, Obs. 1. | 11. nāvis , ¹ <i>a ship, a boat.</i> |
| 3. concursum, -ūs (con and currere , <i>to run</i>), <i>a running together.</i> | 12. negāre , <i>to say . . . not, to deny.</i> |
| 4. dējicere, -jēcīt, -jectus , <i>to cast down.</i> | 13. noctū , adv., <i>by night.</i> |
| 5. dēsistere, dēstitit, dēstitūrus , <i>to stand off, to desist.</i> | 14. nōnnunquam , <i>not never, sometimes ; cf. nōnnullus.</i> |
| 6. exemplum , <i>an example.</i> | 15. ostendere, -tendit, -tentus , (<i>obs</i> for <i>ob</i> , and tendere <i>to stretch</i>) <i>to stretch in the way of, to shew.</i> |
| 7. interdiū , adv., <i>by day.</i> | 16. perrumpere, -rūpit, -ruptus , <i>to break through.</i> |
| 8. jungere, junxit, junctus , <i>to join.</i> | 17. ratis <i>a raft.</i> |
| 9. minimus (<i>irreg. sup. of parvus</i>), <i>least, very small.</i> | 18. repellere, -pultit, -pulsus , <i>to drive back.</i> |
| | 19. tēlum , <i>a weapon.</i> |
| | 20. venīre, vēnit, ventum , <i>to come.</i> |

¹ It will be understood that nouns in **-is** have the gen. like the nom. unless otherwise stated. Nouns in **-is** with gen. in **-idis**, are mostly Greek, and but few of them are found in Cæsar.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Nāvēs quibus flūmen transīre cōnātī sunt, parvæ fuērunt. (b) His omnibus cōnātīs repulsīs, difficiliōre itinere inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum īre cōstituērunt. (c) Cum perrumpere cōnārentur, telīs ā militibus Rōmānīs repulsī sunt. (d) Rīpam flūminis mūrō sēdecim pedum commūnīvit.

2. (a) The Helvetii went into the territory of their neighbors, that they might roam about more widely. (b) The Helvetii were not able to break down the works of the Romans. (c) Cæsar says that he will not allow the Helvetii by using (having used) force to hold the bank of the river.

3. (a) Cæsar intends to keep the Helvetii out of the province. (b) If Cæsar is unwilling, they think they will break through the wall which he has made. (c) The Helvetii were trying to drive back the Romans from the wall. (d) In order to cross the river, they use very many boats which they have seized.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The number of facts stated in the last sentence of the Text. 2. Difference in form between pres. ind. and pres. subjv. of 1st, 3d, and 4th conjug. 3. Comparative frequency thus far of the different conjug. 4. Difference in form and meaning between **venit** and **vēnit**. 5. The Lat. for *they returned, they return*. 6. Two meanings of **quā**. 7. Exact difference in meaning of **cōnātum** and **cōnātus, -ūs**. 8. Decline both.

LESSON XXXVI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 9**, through **obstrictās volēbat**.

2. NOTES.

1. **Relinquēbātur . . . via**; for order, *cf.* **Erant . . . duo XXIX.** and **erat . . . ūna XXXI.**

2. **possent**: (*a*) impf. subjv. after **cum**, which is not the prep. as one might at first suppose from position of **sponte**; when this verb is reached, **sponte** proves to be an abl. of means, which is used without a prep.; (*b*) note that **hīs** is drawn out of its position within the **cum** clause and becomes the first word in the sentence, because it is the word of the sentence most closely connected with the preceding.¹ What is its antec. in preceding sentence?

3. **eō dēprecātōre**: (*a*) **eō** is here a substantive, not an adj.; (*b*) const. of **eō dēprecātōre**? XIII. N. 5 (*b*) (*c*), Obs. 1; XXIII. N. 5 (*b*) and **Sēquanīs invītīs**, above. What parts of speech are combined to form this const.?

4. **plūrimum poterat**; *cf.* XXII. N. 7 (*c*).

5. **studēbat**; used with **rēbus** the dat. of the thing *desired*; *cf.* and contrast **imperāre, persuādēre**.

6. **beneficiō**; *cf.* nom. sing. **beneficium** with **maleficium, mātrīmōnium, imperium, indicium, iūdicium**. In what respect are they alike in form and in meaning?

7. **volēbat, he was wishing**: (*a*) irreg. verb **velle, to wish**; (*b*) expanded form for **quam plūrimās**? XXXI. N. 5.

¹ The teacher will find a full discussion of the order of words and clauses in the Lat. sentence, abundantly illustrated by examples, in Pott's "Hints toward Lat. Prose Composition" (Macmillan). The point here noted is treated on pp. 91 and 92. On the whole subject, Thacher's *Madvig*, pp. 425-440 may also be consulted.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The endings **-tio**, **-tus**, **-ium** name the action.
2. The verbs **persuādēre**, **imperāre**, **studēre** take the dat.
3. Either a noun and a noun, a noun and a pron., a noun and a partic., or a noun and an ordinary adj. may be combined to form the abl. absolute const.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Position of word closely connected with preceding or following sentence . . . A. & G. 344, b. H. 569, III. 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. angustiæ , -ārum (angustus),
<i>narrowness, straits, a narrow pass.</i> | 7. novus , <i>new</i> ; novæ rēs , <i>new things, revolution.</i> |
| 2. beneficium (bene , <i>well</i> , and facere) <i>well-doing, a favor.</i> | 8. obstringere , -strinxit , -strictus , <i>to bind.</i> |
| 3. dēprecātor (dēprecārī , <i>to beg off, to intercede</i>) <i>an intercessor, mediator.</i> | 9. propter , prep. with accus., <i>on account of.</i> |
| 4. grātia , <i>favor</i> either shown or received, hence, either <i>kindness</i> or <i>popularity.</i> | 10. relinquere , -līquit , -lictus , <i>to leave.</i> |
| 5. impetrāre , <i>to obtain one's request.</i> | 11. spontis , sponte , <i>wanting in other cases, in abl., with suā, it means of one's own accord, by one's self.</i> |
| 6. largitio , <i>lavish giving, bribery, liberality.</i> | 12. studēre , studuit , partic. <i>wanting, to be eager for, to desire.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) **Helvētīi** **Dumnorige dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrant.**
 (b) **Sēquanī ā Dumnorige inductī eōs per suōs finēs ire patiuntur.**
 (c) **Alterā viā Helvētīi, quod aliam viam habent nullam, exire volunt.** (d) **Suā sponte Sēquanīs persuādēre nōn possunt ut sibi eōrum voluntate iter facere inter montem et flūmen liceat.**

2. (a) If their neighbors are not willing, the Helvetii intend to compel them. (b) They say it is necessary to go through the territory of the Sequani, because Cæsar did not allow them to go through the province. (c) That (woman), whom Dumnorix had married, was the daughter of Orgetorix.

3. (a) They sent an embassy to persuade the Sequani. (b) Dumnorix, the Hæduan chief, was of an unfriendly mind toward the Romans, because he desired revolution. (c) Dumnorix asks that the Helvetii may cross the territory of the Sequani. (d) Orgetorix, who is (now) dead, and Dumnorix were two very powerful chiefs.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Lat. for *to marry* (said of the man), *to give in marriage*, *revolution*, *to favor revolution*, *to be very powerful*, *as many as possible*. 2. *He can, he could, he may, he might*. 3. Difference between **imperāre** and **impetrāre**. 4. Two nouns plur. in form which may be sing. in sense. 5. List of verbs used thus far which are followed by the inf. without a subj. 6. **Esse** and **posse** in pres., impf., pf., plpf. ind. 3d sing., and in pres. and impf. subjv. 7. Decline together **is dēprecātor, ea cīvitās**. 8. Difference between the dat. with **studēre** and that with **persuādēre**.

LESSON XXXVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 9**, *Itaque rem* through in **Prōvinciā** in **10**.

2. NOTES.

1. **patiantur**: (a) pres. subjv. in an obj. clause of purpose; cf. **XX. n. 5**; (b) a 4th conjug. form; cf. **paterentur**, impf. subjv. 3d conjug.; also **persuādēre** but **persuāsit, facere** but **adficiēbantur, conscīscere** but **conscīverit, convenient** but **convēnerant**; (c) cf. **proficiscantur**, pres. subjv. 3d conjug., **XXVIII**.

2. **utī . . dent**: (*a*) **utī** is the conj., not the inf.; (*b*) the clause is the obj. of **perficit**; (*c*) **obsidēs** is the obj. of **dent**; (*d*) mode and tense of **dent**?

3. **Sēquanī**; the subj. of **dent** drawn forward from preceding clause.

4. **prohibeant**: (*a*) pres. subjv. 2d conjug.; for form, *cf.* **dent**, **patiantur**, **proficiscantur** and XXXV. Obs. 1; (*b*) case of **itinere**, preceding.

5. **Tolōsātium**; gen. plur.; *cf.* same case in **Santonum**, just before. What difference in stem ending is indicated by these forms? What is the nom. plur. in each case?

6. **cīvitās**; the state of the Tolosates is here referred to.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some verbs have forms of different conjug. The most common of those already used are **facere**, **capere**, **patī**, **jubēre**, **suādēre**, **venīre** and their compounds. Such verbs are said to belong to the conjug. indicated by the pres. inf.

2. The sign of the pres. subjv. in the 1st conjug. is **-ē-**, in the 2d, 3d, and 4th it is **-ā-**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **itaque**, and so, therefore.

2. **obses**, **obsidis**, a *hostage*; hostages were human beings given by one person or nation to another, in order to guarantee the

fulfillment of an agreement; if the agreement was broken, the hostages might be killed.

3. **renūntiāre**, to bring back word, to report.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) **Helvētīi**, **obsidibus datīs**, **sēse obstrinxērunt** ut sine **injūriā** **fīnēs Sēquanōrum trānsīrent**. (*b*) **Nōn perfacile factū est ā maleficiō maximam multitudinem cupidam bellandī prohibēre**. (*c*) **Cīvitās** quam **Cāesar nōn longē ā Tolōsātibus abesse dīxit ā prōvinciā qua-**

drāgiuntā passuum milia abest. (*d*) Dumnorigis grātiā Helvētīi impetrant ut itinere quod sit difficilior proficiscantur.

2. (*a*) He took this commission upon himself, and had (**perficere**) the two states exchange (impf. subjv.) hostages. (*b*) Influenced by the desire to roam about, the Helvetii give hostages to the Sequani, in order that they may cross their territory. (*c*) On account of the narrowness of the way, it was necessary to draw the carts one at a time.

3. (*a*) The mountain was overhanging, so that a very few could stop them. (*b*) They used to give (were giving) their sons and daughters as hostages (appositive). (*c*) Cæsar is informed that the Helvetii are about to make a journey to the vicinity of Tolosa, a state of the province.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Decl. of *itinere*, **Santonum**; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*. 2. The best Eng. for **obsidēs utī inter sē dent perficit**. 3. For *quæ cīvitās*. 4. Different kinds of purpose clauses in this lesson. 5. The object, in general, of giving hostages. 6. The correctness of Cæsar's statement about the distance of the Santones from the Tolosates.

LESSON XXXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 10**, **Id sī** through **ire contendit**.

2. NOTES.

1. *id*; for position, *cf.* **hīs XXXVI. n. 2 (b)**.
2. *fieret*: (*a*) for voice, see **fīēbat XVI.**, Vocab.; (*b*) mode and tense?
3. *cum*; for position, *cf.* **XV. n. 7 (c)**.
4. *futūrum*: (*a*) with *esse*, to be supplied, forms the fut. inf. act. of *esse*; *cf.* **conciliāt-ūrum (esse) XXIII.**; (*b*) for *fu-*, *cf.* **fu-it XIII.**

5. **maximē frūmentāriīs**, *most fruitful, very fruitful*; a sup. degree formed by prefixing the adv. **maximē**, *most greatly, most*, to the adj., instead of by adding **-issimus**.

6. **ut . . . habēret**: (a) clause of result; cf. XXIX. n. 6 (a); (b) a substantive clause, subj. of **futūrum (esse)**; cf. **ut . . . vagārentur** XVI., which is a result clause and subj. of **fiēbat**; (c) subj. is **prōvincia**, suggested by the gen. **prōvinciæ** in preceding clause; (d) for case of **locīs**, cf. XXI. n. 3 (b); (e) **patentibus** is here an ordinary adj. limiting **locīs**, though in form a pres. partic.; nom. **patēns**, *lying open*, from **patēre**; cf. **oriēns**, **potēns**.

7. **præfēcit**: followed by dir. obj. **lēgātum**, and indir. **mūnitiōnī**; cf. XIX. n. 12 (c).

8. **trēs**; agreement?

9. **contendit**: (a) On reaching the end of the sentence with this word, how may we decide whether **quā** in the preceding clause is a pron. or an adv.? (b) for the effect of rapid succession of pres. tenses in this sentence, cf. XXXI. n. 10.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The fut. act. partic. combined with **esse** forms the fut. inf. act.
2. The ending of the pres. act. partic. is **-ns**.
3. The stems of **esse** are **es-** pres., **fu-** pf., **fut-** supine.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison by adv. . . . A. & G. 89, d. H. 170.
2. Substantive clauses of result . A. & G. 332, a. H. 501, and I. 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. bellicōsus (bellum), <i>warlike</i> . | 4. ēducere , -dūxit , -ductus , <i>to lead out</i> . |
| 2. circum , prep. with accus., <i>around, about</i> . | 5. frūmentārius (frūmentum), <i>belonging to grain, fruitful</i> . |
| 3. cōscribere , -scripsit , -scriptus , <i>to write together, enroll, enlist</i> . | 6. hibernus (hiems , <i>winter</i>), <i>belonging to winter</i> ; hiberna , |

-ōrum (with word for *quarters, camp, understood*), *winter quarters*.

7. **hiemāre**, to pass the winter, to winter.

8. **ibi**, there; cf. **ubi**, where, when.

9. **intelligere** or **-ligere**, **-lēxit**, **lēctus** (*inter, between, and*

legere, to choose), to understand, to know.

10 **præficere**, **-fēcit**, **-fectus**, to put before, to set over, to put in command.

11. **quīnque**, five.

12. **Titus**, a Roman first name, usually represented by initial **T**.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Trēs legiōnēs quās circum Aquilēiam habēbat ex hibernīs ēductæ sunt. (b) Novæ legiōnēs in eā parte Italiæ quæ proxima Galliæ est cōscribendæ sunt. (c) Legiōnēs Rōmānæ, cum Cæsar in Galliā esset, numerō quattuor hominum milia erant. (d) Futūrum est cum periculō ut prōvincia hominēs inimicō animō fīnitimōs patentibus agrīs habeat.

2. (a) Cæsar, having led three legions out of winter quarters, determines to enroll new legions. (b) It happened that three legions were already in winter quarters near Aquileia.¹ (c) The soldiers of the legions which were about to wage war were very brave. (d) Cæsar did not allow the Gauls to seize the territory of the Roman people.

3. (a) The senate had put Cæsar in command of the army. (b) Cæsar knows that those places where the Tolosates dwell are very fruitful. (c) For several days he was hastening into Italy by forced marches.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Lat. for *arms, weapons, lieutenant, winter quarters, forced marches, fortification*. 2. *To march, to enroll, to levy upon, to put in command of*. 3. Decl. of **is**, **ea**, **id**. 4. Gender and decl. of **mūnītio**. 5. Connection between derivation of **intelligere** and its meaning *to understand*. 6. The formation of pres. and fut. partic. in all conjug. 7. The tenses in which **esse** is used as an auxiliary. 8. Three ways of saying *very*. 9. Substantive clauses in text thus far.

¹ Pronounced in Eng. Ǻq-wě-lé-yah.

LESSON XXXIX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 10**, **Ibi Centrônēs** through **agrōs populābantur** in **11**.

2. NOTES.

1. **superiōribus** ; for form of nom., *cf.* XVI. n. 5 (c).
2. **complūribus hīs praeliīs pulsīs** : (a) for form of **pulsīs**, see **pulsum XXXIII.** ; (b) **pulsīs** agrees with **hīs**, with which it forms an abl. absolute ; (c) **praeliīs** is an abl. of means, limited by **complūribus**.
3. **diē** ; why abl. ? XXI. n. 2.
4. **septimō**, *seventh* ; tells which one, or the order, in a series, hence called an ordinal ; *cf.* the corresponding cardinal **septem**, and the ordinals, **prīmī**, *first*, below, **tertiam**, *third*, III. ; note that the ordinals are of the 1st and 2d decl.
5. **eōrum** : (a) *antec.* ? (b) Why is not **suōs** used here ?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The first ten ordinals . . . A. & G. 94. H. 174, 179.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. citerior , adj. in comp. (positive not found), <i>nearer, hither</i> ; citerior Gallia , <i>Gaul this side the Alps, i. e. the Roman or eastern side</i> ; ulterior Gallia , <i>Gaul beyond the Alps</i> . | 4. populārī , <i>to lay waste</i> . |
| 2. inde , <i>from that place, thence</i> ; <i>cf. ibi, there</i> . | 5. prīmus , <i>first</i> . |
| 3. Ōcelum , a town in Cisalpine Gaul. | 6. septimus , <i>seventh</i> . |
| | 7. superus , superior comp., suprēmus or summus sup., <i>high, higher, highest</i> ; superior , when used of time, means <i>former</i> . |
| | 8. trādūcere or trānsdūcere , -dūxit , -ductus , <i>to lead across</i> ; <i>cf. trānsīre</i> . |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) *Militēs quōs Cæsar cōscripserat ceteriōre ex prōvinciā conveniēbant.* (b) *Caturigēs itinere nostrās legiōnēs prohibēre cōnātī erant.* (c) *Cæsar, multis occīsīs, inde reliquōs pepulit.* (d) *Cæsar, quod Helvētiōs frūmentārios Hæduōrum agrōs populārī intellegēbat, ut eōs prohibēret, māgnis itineribus trāns Alpēs contendit.*

2. (a) The last town which is in the hither province is called *Ocellum*.¹ (b) It was necessary for the Helvetii to lay waste the fields, in order that they might have a supply of grain. (c) The Helvetii had at length marched across the territory of the Sequani,¹ and were roaming about in the fields of the Hædui.

3. (a) For many years the Hædui had been friends of the Romans. (b) When these had been routed by Cæsar, he led his army across the Alps. (c) The result was (it came to pass) that the Gauls who dwelt in the mountains could not drive back the Romans.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adj. irreg. in comparison found thus far. 2. The complete decl. of **superiōribus**. 3. Two nom. possible for the form **Ōcelō**. 4. The three stems of **dūcit**, **pulsīs**, **pervenit**. 5. The Lat. for *there*, *thence*, *where*. 6. The difference in meaning between ordinals and cardinals. 7. The 3d sing. and plur. ind. and subjv. act. and pass. of all the tenses you know of **occupātis**, **prohibēre**, **pulsīs**.

¹ In Eng. *Ō-cē-lūm* not *Ō-cē-lūm*, *Sé-kwă-nī* not *Sé-kwă-nī*; the tendency in Eng. being to shorten the vowel of the first syllable in words of three syllables accented on the first. H. 11, 3 and 1).

LESSON XL.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 11**, **Hæduī**, **cum** through **nōn dēbuerint**.

The passage of indir. discourse in this lesson is changed to its direct Lat. form just below on the left of the page. On the right the indir. form is given for comparison with the direct. The words changed in passing from the original to the quoted form are in full-faced type.

The exact words of the Hæduan Ambassadors :

Ita — — omnī tempore dē populō
Rōmāno **meritī sumus**, ut pæne
in cōspectū exercitūs **Rōmānī**
agrī vastārī, liberī **nostrī** in ser-
vitutē abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī
nōn dēbuerint.

The words of the Ambassadors as
quoted :

Ita **sē** omnī tempore dē populō
Rōmānō **meritōs esse**, ut pæne
in cōspectū exercitūs **nostrī**
agrī vastārī, liberī **eōrum** in ser-
vitutē abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī
nōn dēbuerint.

2. NOTES.

1. **sua**, *their own things, possessions* ; cf. XXIX. n. 6 (b).

2. **rogātum**, *to ask* ; (a) supine in **-um**, denotes purpose after **mittunt** ; cf. **factū** XXI. n. 1 ; (b) it is evident at this point that the preceding **cum**, which is followed by the subjv. **possent**, denotes cause as well as time ; they sent for aid because they could not defend themselves, not simply at the time when they could not defend themselves. In XXXI. and XXXVI. also, **cum** with the subjv. expresses both time and cause. The Eng. *when* in many sentences is both temporal and causal. In XIV., the force of **cum** with the subjv. seems to be almost wholly causal.

3. **omnī** : (a) **-ī** is the ending of abl. sing., as it is in all adj. in **-is, -e** ; (b) **omnī tempore**, *at all times*.

4. **meritōs esse** : (a) for mode and tense, see XXXIII. n. 2 (b), Obs. 1 ; (b) for stem **merit-**, see XXXV. n. 3 (a), Obs. 2 ; (c) cf. with

the words of direct discourse, **meritī sumus** (dep. verb), *we have deserved*; **sumus**, *we are*, is for **es-u-mus** (cf. **es-u-nt**); the ending **-mus** means *we* just as **-nt** means *they*; (*d*) **sē**, the subj. of **meritōs esse**, is expressed as a separate word, while the subj. of **meritī sumus** is not so expressed, as it is indicated in the ending **-mus**.

5. **nostrī**: (*a*) gen. sing. limiting **exercitūs**; (*b*) Cæsar, a Roman, writing for Roman readers, uses the word **nostrī**, *our*; to the Hædian ambassadors the army was not *our army* but the *Roman army*, hence **Rōmānī**.

6. **eōrum**: (*a*) depends on **līberī**; (*b*) to the Hædui, *our children* not *their children*, hence **nostrī** in the direct form.

7. **dēbuerint**: (*a*) pf. subjv. of the 2d conjug., stem **dēbu-**; cf. **habu-erat** XX.; tense sign **-eri-**, as in all conjug., cf. **cōnscīverit** XXV.; (*b*) a subjv. of result; cf. XXIX. n. 6 (*a*); (*c*) when this verb is translated *ought*, the pres. inf., after it, is best represented in Eng. by the pf. inf.; thus, *our children ought not to have been led away*.

3. OBSERVATIONS

1. The ending is **-ī** in the abl. sing. of adj. in **-is**, **-e**.
2. The pers. ending **-mus** is that of the 1st pers. plur.
3. The sign of the pf. subjv. act. in all conjug. is **-eri-**.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The use of the supine in **-um** . A. & G. 302. H. 546.
2. **Cum** causal A. & G. 326. H. 517.
3. The subj. of the inf. in indir.
discourse regularly expressed A. & G. 336, *a*. H. 530, n. 3).
4. Personal pronouns as subj. often
omitted A. & G. 194, *a*. H. 446.
5. Translation of pres. inf. after
past tense of **dēbēre** . . . A. & G. 238, *a*, H. 537, 1.
and Rem.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. abdūcere , -dūxit, -ductus, <i>to lead away.</i> | 6. expūgnāre (<i>to fight out</i>) <i>to take by storm.</i> |
| 2. auxilium , <i>help, aid.</i> | 7. ita , adv., <i>so.</i> |
| 3. cōspectus , -ūs (cōspicere , <i>to see</i>) <i>sight.</i> | 8. liberī (the sing., meaning <i>child</i> , not found), <i>children.</i> |
| 4. dēbere , dēbuit, dēbitus (dē and habēre , <i>to have or keep from some one</i>) <i>to owe, to be bound</i> ; dēbet , <i>he ought.</i> | 9. merērī , meritus , <i>to merit, deserve, earn.</i> |
| 5. dēfendere , -fendit, -fēnsus, <i>to ward off, to defend.</i> | 10. pæne , <i>almost.</i> |
| | 11. servitūs , -ūtis, (servus , <i>a slave</i>) <i>servitude.</i> |
| | 12. vastāre (vastus , <i>empty</i>) <i>to make empty, to lay waste.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Agrī Hæduōrum erant fīnibus Sēquanōrum proximī. (b) Hæduī, lēgātīs missīs, auxilium rogāvērunt. (c) Ob eās causās nostrīs agrīs prohibērī non dēbēmus.

2. (a) Almost in sight of a brave army, our children are being carried away into slavery. (b) When the Helvetii were marching through fruitful fields, they did not refrain from wrong. (c) Since Cæsar was not very far distant, the Hædui sent ambassadors to him.

3. (a) The Helvetii ought to have crossed the territory near their route (**iter**) without wrong-doing. (b) The Hædui have deserved so well (have so deserved) at the hands of (from) the Roman people, that Cæsar ought to have sent an army into their fields. (c) By the aid of Cæsar they defend all their property and the towns which have been taken.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. A new pers. ending. 2. A new tense sign. 3. The abl. sing. of adj. in **-is**. 4. The two supines and their uses. 5. The mode used with **cum** causal. 6. How the idea of cause is developed from the idea of time. 7. Where the subj. is, in the sentence **est**. 8. Difference between **dīcit sē rogāre** and **dīcit eum rogāre**. 9. Two ways of saying *all things* in Lat. 10. The conjug. and exact meaning of the Eng. verb *ought*.

LESSON XLI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 11, eōdem tempore to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. eōdem, *the same*; the abl. sing. neut. of **īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, composed of **is**, **ea**, **id** and the undeclined termination **-dem**; cf. **idem** XXI. N. 4.

2. **Ambarri**, the name of a people; in apposition with **Hædui**, *the Hædui Ambarri*.

3. **Cæsarem certiōrem faciunt**; for pass. form of the expression, cf. XXXII. N. 2.

4. **dēpopulātis**; though a dep. verb, pass. in sense as well as in form in this instance.

5. **sē . . . prohibēre**; **certiōrem faciunt** is equivalent to a verb of saying, and is therefore followed by an inf. with subj. accus.

6. **reliqui**: partitive gen. of **reliquum**, which is here a neut. noun meaning *the rest*; it depends upon **nihil**.

7. **statuit**: (*a*) may from its form be either pres. or pf. ind.; it is probably the pf. in this case; (*b*) for the preceding **expectandum**, cf. XXXIII. N. 3; (*c*) **sibi** is a dat. of the agent, used with the gerundive with the force of the abl. of agent.

8. **pervenirent**: (*a*) impf. subjv. of the 4th conjug.; (*b*) for explanation of mode, cf. XXXIII. N. 7 (*b*) (*c*).

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The decl. of **īdem**, **eadem**,

idem A. & G. 101.

H. 186, VI.;
p. 73, foot-
note 6.

2. The pass. meaning of the pf.
partic. in dep. verbs . . . A. & G. **135, b.** H. **231, 2.**
3. The dat. of the agent . . . A. & G. **232.** H. **388,** and
2; also foot-
note 3.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. cōnsanguineus , adj. or noun
(con and sanguis , <i>blood</i>),
<i>akin by blood.</i> | bad); in plur. <i>goods, possessions.</i> |
| 2. cōnsūmere , - sūmpsit , - sūmp-
tus (con , intensive, <i>wholly</i> ,
and sūmere , <i>to take</i>), <i>to con-</i>
<i>sume, destroy.</i> | 7. fuga , <i>flight.</i> |
| 3. dēmōstrāre , <i>to show.</i> | 8. necēssārius , <i>necessary</i> ; as
noun, <i>a close friend or near</i>
<i>relative.</i> |
| 4. dēpopulārī , <i>to lay waste.</i> | 9. præter , prep. with accus., <i>along</i>
<i>by, beyond, except.</i> |
| 5. exspectāre , <i>to wait for, to ex-</i>
<i>pect.</i> | 10. solum , <i>the soil, the ground.</i> |
| 6. fortūna , <i>fortune</i> (either good or | 11. statuere , statuit , statūtus , <i>to</i>
<i>cause to stand, to establish,</i>
<i>to decide.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Quibus rēbus dēmōstrātīs, Cæsar in agrōs Hæduōrum contendere cōstituit. (b) Multa mīlia jūmentōrum ab Helvētiīs jam cōnsūmpta erant. (c) Hæ rēs Cæsari, principi Rōmānō, cum Hæduī Rōmānīs amīcī sint, nōn concēdendæ sunt. (d) Cæsar, cum certior factus esset māgnam multitudinem Helvētiōrum, oppidīs expūgnātis, liberōs sociōrum abducere, permōtus est.

2. (a) The Helvetii did very great wrong, because they were unfriendly to their neighbors. (b) Cæsar informs the Hædui that he will not allow the Helvetii to seize their towns. (c) We cannot defend our children from violence.

3. (a) The Allobroges are leaving the villages which they possess across the Rhone. (b) The multitude is not easily kept out of the towns, and nothing has been left but the soil. (c) Cæsar says that he ought to drive out these men if he can.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference between **idem** and **idem** in form and meaning. 2. Analysis of **pervenirent**. 3. The Lat. for *he informed Cæsar, Cæsar was informed*. 4. Two cases which express agency. 5. The lit. meaning of the gerundive, and how the idea of necessity comes from this meaning. 6. Three ways of expressing necessity in Lat. 7. The dir. disc. in Eng. for the indir. disc. of this lesson. 8. The two parts of speech possible for the form **facile**. 9. The comparison of **certior**. 10. The nom. sing. of **possessiōnēs**.

LESSON XLII.

REVIEW of LESSONS XXVII. to XLI. inclusive.

1. TEXT. — CÆSAR, B. G. I, 5 TO 11 INCLUSIVE.

1. 2. 3. Follow implicitly the directions given in XII., under "Text," 1, 2, and 3.

4. Make a study of the material of the text under the following heads: (*a*) pronouns; write the case, number, gender, and antec. of every pronoun; (*b*) 3d decl. forms; classify all 3d decl. nouns and adj. according to the ending of the stem; (*c*) verbs; classify all verb forms under their proper conjug., voice, mode, tense, number and person; then compare your result with the "Verb Diagram" of XXVI., and see what new verb forms have been discovered since the last Review.

5. Same as in XII.¹

¹ In the review of the text, it will be well to assign to the class, for Lat. writing, Eng. sentences based upon each Chapter of the Review. These may be selected from the Exercises already given, or, better, may be new exercises prepared by the teacher. Many of the sentences in Daniell's "Short Sentences for Practice in Writing Latin" (Iverson, Blakeman & Co.) or Welch and Duffield's "Helvetian war" (Macmillan) may be used. The teacher should take care, however, that these practice sentences contain only those forms and constructions which the pupil has met in the text of Cæsar.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 3d decl. neut. in **-us**, gen. **-eris** A. & G. **48**, *d.* H. **61**, *opus*.
2. Decl. of **vīs** A. & G. **61**. H. **66**.
3. Adj. which form gen. sing. in
-īus, dat. in **-ī** A. & G. **83** and H. **151** and 1.
a, b.
4. Decl. of **duo** A. & G. **94**, *b.* H. **175**.
5. The first ten cardinals and
ordinals A. & G. **94**. H. **174**, **179**.
6. Neut. of the comp. of adj. . . A. & G. **89**, **86**. H. **162**, **154**.
7. Comparison by adv. A. & G. **89**, *d.* H. **170**.
8. The decl. of **īdem** A. & G. **101**. H. **186**, VI.;
p. 73, foot-
note 6.
9. The decl. of the indefinite **quis** A. & G. **104**. H. **190**, **188**.
10. Loss of **-v** from pf. stem . . A. & G. **128**, *a.* H. **235**.
11. The endings **-undus** and **-undī** H. **239**.
12. The pass. meaning of pf. partic.
in dep. verbs A. & G. **135**, *b.* H. **231**, 2.
13. The pf. act. partic., and how to
supply its place A. & G. **113**, *c.* H. **231**, 1;
N.; 290, d. **550**, *N. 4.*
14. The gerundive, meaning *ought*
or *must* A. & G. **113**, *d.* H. **234**.
15. Place from which A. & G. **259**, *f.* H. **412**, I.
16. **Domum** and **domō** A. & G. **258**. H. **412**, II. 1;
380, I. II.
2, 1).
17. Prep. omitted with **locō** and
locīs A. & G. **258**, *f.* H. **425**, II. 2.
18. Rel. agreeing with repeated
antece. A. & G. **200**, *a.* H. **445**, 8.
19. Adj. used substantively . . . A. & G. **188**. H. **441** and 1.
20. Meaning of **ad** with names of
towns A. & G. **258**, *f.* H. **433**, I.;
Rem.; **259**, *f.* **380**, II. 1.

21. Pers. pron. as subj. often
omitted A. & G. 194, *a*. H. 446.
22. The subj. of the inf. in indir.
discourse regularly expressed A. & G. 336, *a*. H. 530, N. 3).
23. The gen. of quality (especially
measure) A. & G. 215 H. 396, V.
and *b*. and N. 1.
24. The dat. of the possessor . . A. & G. 231. H. 387.
25. The dat. of the agent . . . A. & G. 232. H. 388 and 2;
also foot-
note 3.
26. The abl. of measure of difference A. & G. 250. H. 423 and N. 1.
27. The abl. with special verbs . A. & G. 249. H. 421, I.
28. The abl. of quality A. & G. 251. H. 419, II.
29. The partic. translated like an
independent verb A. & G. 292, H. 549, 5.
Rem.
30. Construction with *jubēre* . . A. & G. 330, 2; H. 534, and
331, *a*. foot-note 1.
31. The force of the pres. ind. in
narrative A. & G. 276, *d*. H. 467, III.
32. The use of the supine in *-um* . A. & G. 302. H. 546.
33. Translation of pres. inf. after
past tense of *dēbēre* . . . A. & G. 288, *a*, H. 537, 1.
and Rem.
34. Subjv. of result A. & G. 319. H. 500, II.
35. The substantive clause of result A. & G. 332, *a*. H. 501, I. 1.
36. The purpose clause introduced
by a rel. A. & G. 317. H. 497, I.
37. The subjv. of purpose after *quō* A. & G. 317, *b*. H. 497, II. 2.
38. *Dum* clauses of purpose . . A. & G. 328. H. 519, II. 2.
39. *Cum* causal A. & G. 326. H. 517.
40. The subordinate clauses of in-
dir. discourse A. & G. 336, last H. 524.
clause.
41. The unemphatic order of the
Lat. sentence A. & G. 343 and H. 559, 560.
N.

42. Change of order for emphasis . A. & G. **344** and H. **560, 561,**
e. **III.**
43. The effect of position at the
beginning of sentence . . A. & G. **344**, I. H. **561**, I.
44. The effect of placing the subj.
at the end of sentence . . A. & G. **344** and H. **561**, II.
a.
45. The order of the modifiers of
the verb A. & G. **343.** H. **560, 567**
and 3.
46. Position of word closely con-
nected with preceding or
following sentence . . . A. & G. **344**, *b.*

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Cæsar, **B. G. I.**
5-11.

1. VERBS.

1st Conjug. (-ā verbs).

These verbs, unless it is otherwise stated, have pf. stem in **-v**, the supine in **-t**; thus, **parā-re, parāv-it, parāt-us.**

dēlibērāre	impetrāre	populārī
dēmōnstrāre	mātūrāre	portāre
dēpopulārī	negāre	putāre
exīstimāre	nūntiāre	renūntiāre
expūgnāre	oppūgnāre	rogāre
exspectāre	pācāre	temperāre
hiemāre	parāre	vastāre
imperāre		

2d Conjug. (-ē verbs).

Jubēre, respondēre, and **vidēre** have pf. and supine stems like those of 3d conjug.

dēbēre	licet	studēre
impendēre	merērī	tenēre
jubēre	respondēre	vidēre

3d Conjug. (-e verbs).

Write the pf. and supine stems of these verbs.

abdūcere	dējicere	intellegere	patī	repellere
adscīscere	dēsistere	intercēdere	pellere	rescindere
combūrere	dispōnere	jungere	perdūcere	revertī
concēdere	ēdūcere	molere	perrumpere	statuere
cōnscrībere	exūrere	obstringere	præficere	sūmere
cōnsūmere	fluere	occidere	recipere	trādūcere
dēfendere	incendere	ostendere	relinquere	ūtī

*4th Conjug. (-ī verbs).***Venīre** and its compounds have pf. and supine stems like those of 3d conjug.

commūnīre	convenīre	expedīre	pervenīre	venīre
-----------	-----------	----------	-----------	--------

Irregular verbs.

efferre	īre	subīre	tollere	trānsīre	velle
---------	-----	--------	---------	----------	-------

2. NOUNS HAVING **-A** STEMS.

angustiæ, <i>plur.</i>	fuga	Kalendæ, <i>plur.</i>
fortūna	grātia	memoria
fossa	injūria	rīpa

3. **-O** STEMS.*Nouns.*

ædificium	liberī, <i>plur.</i>	præsidium
Aulus	Lūcius	socius
auxilium	maleficiū	solum
beneficiū	mūrus	spatium
castellum	nihilum (nihil)	tēlum
cōnsilium	Ōcelum	Titus
exemplum	oppidum	vadum
jugum	pericūlum	vicus

Adj. (having also fem. stems in -a).

bellicōsus	invītus	prīmus
certus	minimus	prīvātus
cibārius	necēssārius	quadringentī, <i>plur.</i>
cōsanguineus	nōnullus	quīntus
duo	Nōricus	septimū
frūmentārius	novus	singulī, <i>plur.</i>
hibernus	nullus	superus
inimīcus	perpaucus	ullus

4. THIRD DECL.

Nouns.

Give the gen. and gender of each.

altitūdo	mūnītio	ratis
Cæsar	nāvis	reditio
dēprecātor	obses, -sidis	servitūs, -ūtis
facultās	opus, -cris	sponte, <i>abl. sing.</i>
largītio	pēs, -edis	urbs
mēnsis, <i>masc. by exception.</i>	pōns, <i>masc. by exception.</i>	vīs
		voluntās

Adj.

Aprīlis	complūrēs, <i>plur.</i>	prīnceps
citerior	difficilis	ulterior

5. -Ū STEMS.

adventus	concursum	domus, <i>fem. by exception.</i>	Idūs, <i>plur., fem. by exception.</i>
cōnātus	cōnspectus		

6. -Ē STEM.

spēs

7. INDECL. NUMERAL ADJ.

duodecim	novem	quīnque	sēdecim
----------	-------	---------	---------

8. PRON.

quemque, <i>accus. sing.</i>	quis
------------------------------	------

9. PREP.

circum	post	præter	propter	sine	sub
--------	------	--------	---------	------	-----

10. ADV.

ibi	noctū	præterquam
inde	nōndum	quā
ita	nōnunquam	tamen
intereā	nūper	ubi
interdiū	omniū	ūnā
jam	pæne	vix

11. CONJ.

dum	itaque	sī	vel
-----	--------	----	-----

LESSON XLIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 12**, through **flūmen trānsierat**.

2. NOTES.

1. incrēdibilī lēnitāte; the abl. limited by an adj. modifies the preceding verb **influit** and tells how the river flows; hence called an abl. of manner; *cf.* **voluntāte XXXII.**

2. possit: (*a*) for form, *cf.* **XXXIV. n. 5**; (*b*) for const., *cf.* **XXIX. n. 6 (a)**; (*c*) **in utram partem fluat**; this clause is a quoted question and the subj. of **possit**; the thought of a person looking at the river would be, "**In utram partem fluit?**"

3. trānsībant: (*a*) impf., because they were in the act of crossing; (*b*) for position of **id**, the first word in the sentence, *cf.* **XXXVI. n. 2 (b).**

4. **Cæsar certior factus est**; *cf.* the similar expressions in XXXII. and XLI., and note that the adj. **certior** always agrees with the name of the person who is informed.

5. **trādūxisse**: (a) a pf. inf. act., formed on the pf. stem by the addition of **-isse**; *cf.* the pres. inf. act. **dūce-re**; (b) the preceding word, **flūmen**, is governed by **trāns** with which **dūcere** is here compounded.

6. **profectus**: (a) from dep. verb **proficiscī**. How, then, is it translated? (b) **dē vigiliā**, just before, lit. *from (i. e. beginning in) the watch*, may be translated *during* or *in the watch*.

7. **trānsierat**; from **transīre**, **-v** of the pf. stem being dropped.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. inf. act. is formed in all conjug. by adding **-isse** to the pf. stem.

2. The pf. of **īre** is regularly **īvit**, but compounds of **īre** usually drop **-v** of the pf. stem.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Two accus. after compound verbs. A. & G. 239, b. H. 376.
2. Abl. of manner A. & G. 248 and H. 419, III. Rem.
3. The question indirectly quoted A. & G. 338, H. 523, II. 1; 334. 529, I.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Arar or Araris (Ararim accus., and Ararī abl., are found), the name of a Gallic river, now the Saône. | 3. citrā , prep. with accus., on <i>this side of</i> . |
| 2. castra , -ōrum (the sing. castrum , a <i>fortress</i> , is not found in Cæsar), a <i>camp</i> . | 4. explōrātor (explōrāro , to <i>search out</i>), a <i>spy</i> , a <i>scout</i> . |
| | 5. incrēdibilis , <i>not to be believed</i> , <i>incredible</i> , <i>remarkable</i> . |
| | 6. jūdicāre , to <i>judge</i> . |

7. **lēnitās** (**lēnis**, *smooth*), *smoothness, gentleness.* 11. **utram**, accus. sing. fem., *which (of two)?*
 8. **linter**, **tris**, fem. by exception, *a boat.* 12. **vigilia**, *watchfulness, a watch of the night*; the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise, whatever its length, into four equal watches.
 9. **oculus**, *an eye.*
 10. **quartus**, *fourth.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Decline **incrēdibilis lēnitās** together, **flūmen**, and **fīnis**. (b) Decline **lintribus**, and explain formation of the nom. (c) Write all the forms that you know of **posse**. (d) Write all the inf. act. and pass. that you know of **trādūxisse**.

2. (a) Cæsar saw a river which was of remarkable smoothness. (b) Three parts of the Helvetian forces had crossed the river. (c) The Helvetii were hastening, that Cæsar might not destroy their boats. (d) The river flows neither toward the east nor toward the west.

3. (a) Cæsar could not judge with his eyes in which direction the river was flowing. (b) They inform Cæsar that the remaining fourth part is at last being led across the river. (c) Cæsar led to the river three legions which he had with him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending **-isse**. 2. The pres. stem of **trānsīre**. 3. The pf. stem of **īre**, of **transīre**. 4. Difference in form and mode of **fluit** and **fluat**. 5. Two kinds of abl. which are usually qualified by an adj. 6. All the kinds of abl. learned thus far. 7. The exact literal meaning of the Lat. translated *to inform*. 8. The principal clauses of indir. discourse. 9. The subordinate clauses of indir. discourse. 10. The interrogative clauses of indir. discourse. 11. The position of the word most closely related to preceding sentence. 12. The time of the third watch.

LESSON XLIV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 12**, **Eōs impedītōs** through **pœnās persolvit**.

2. NOTES.

1. **impedītōs**; pf. pass. partic. formed from the supine stem of the 4th conjug. verb **impedīre**.

2. **mandārunt**; for **mandāvērunt**, *cf.* **oppūgnārant** XXVIII.

3. **in silvās abdidērunt**; *cf.* XVII. n. 11 (*b*).

4. **hic**; nom. sing. masc. of the pron. **hī**. What other forms have been used?

5. **exīssset**; for **exī(v)isset**: (*a*) plpf. subjv. act., sign **-isse-**; *cf.* plpf. subjv. pass. **nūntiātum esset** XXXI.; (*b*) *cf.* instances of the use of **cum** in IX., XIV., XXV., XXXI., XXXVI., XL., and note that, whenever it is used with the impf. and plpf. tenses, **cum** is followed by the subjv.; (*c*) for omission of prep. with **domō**, *cf.* **domō** XXVIII.

6. **memoriā**; for const., *cf.* XXI. n. 2.

7. **intulerat**; for const. of preceding **populō**, *cf.* XIX. n. 12 (*c*).

8. **persolvit**: (*a*) **ea**, the subj. of this verb, refers to **pars** in the preceding relative clause; (*b*) **prīnceps** is here an adj. limiting **ea** (**pars**), and may be best translated by a clause; thus, *that part was the first to pay the penalty*, lit. *that part first paid the penalty*, i. e. before the other parts, not before doing something else.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The plpf. subjv. act. has the sign **-isse-** in all conjug., and is formed on the pf. stem because it denotes completed action.

2. The stems of all four conjug. have now been learned from the text. These stems are shown in representative verbs as follows:

	<i>Pres. stem.</i>	<i>Pf. stem.</i>	<i>Supine stem.</i>
1st conjug.	cremā-	cremāv-	cremāt-
2d conjug.	habē-	habu-	habit-
3d conjug.	dūce-	dūx- for dūcs-	duct-
4th conjug.	impedī-	impedīv-	impedīt-

3. The pres. inf., the pf. ind. act., and the pf. pass. partic., since they are very commonly found and invariably show the three stems of the verb, may properly be called the principal parts (or the parts) of the verb.¹

4. In Cæsar the conj. *cum*, meaning *when*, if followed by the impf. or plpf. tenses, commonly takes the subjv.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The antec. in the rel. clause . A. & G. 200, *b* H. 445, 9.
and N.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. abdere , -didit, -ditus, <i>to put away, to hide.</i> | 7. immortālis (in neg., and mors), <i>undying, immortal.</i> |
| 2. aggredi , -gressus (ad and gradi) <i>to go towards, to attack.</i> | 8. impedire -pediuit, -peditus (in, against, and pēs), <i>to impede, to place at a disadvantage.</i> |
| 3. calamitās , <i>disaster, calamity.</i> | 9. inopināns , adj., <i>unexpected, unaware.</i> |
| 4. cāsus , -ūs (cadere , <i>to fall</i>), <i>a falling, accident, misfortune, chance.</i> | 10. insignis (in, upon, and signum , <i>a mark</i>), <i>marked, remarkable.</i> |
| 5. concidere , -cīdit, -cīsus (con intensive, and cædere , <i>to cut</i>), <i>to cut to pieces, to kill.</i> | 11. interficere , -fēcit, -fectus, <i>to kill.</i> |
| 6. deus , <i>a god.</i> | |

¹ These principal parts, though not the same as those usually given, will answer the purpose equally well. The 1st pers. sing. of the pres. ind., which is usually included, is almost never found in Cæsar, and in many cases does not show the pres. stem.

12. **mandāre** (**manus**, *the hand*, and **dare**), *to give into one's hand, to commit*.
 13. **nam**, conj., *for*.
 14. **persolvere**, **-solvit**, **-solūtus**, *to loose thoroughly, to pay in full*.
 15. **silva**, *a forest*.
 16. **sive**, conj. (**sī** and **vel**), *or if; sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, either . . . or*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write all the forms that you know of **impedire**. (b) Of **mandāre**. (c) Decline the adj. **inopīnāns**, **insignis** in all genders. (d) Decline **silva**, **cāsus**, **-ūs**.

2. (a) The forests in which the rest hid themselves were very near to the river. (b) The part which was left was cut to pieces when taken at a disadvantage (partic.). (c) The rest of the Helvetii were taken at a disadvantage, because they were in the river. (d) That part of the Helvetii which had brought signal calamity upon the Roman people, was the first to pay the penalty.

3. (a) Tigurinus was one out of the four districts into which the Helvetian state was divided. (b) In the memory of our fathers, a Roman army was defeated and a Roman consul sent under the yoke. (c) Caesar said that it came to pass, either by chance or the design of the gods, that the Tigurini were the first to pay the penalty.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The stems of all conjug., and how to find them. 2. Likeness between the 1st and 4th conjug. in formation of stems. 3. Difference in the formation of pf. stem in 3d and 4th conjug. 4. Difference between the 2d and 4th conjug. in quantity of **i** in supine stem. 5. Difference in characteristic of 2d and 3d conjug. 6. The principal parts of every verb in the lesson except **intulerat**. 7. Instances in which a prep. expressed in Eng. is omitted in Lat. 8. In which the Lat. uses a different prep. from that which the Eng. translation suggests. 9. All you know about the form **cum**.

LESSON XLV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. l. 12, Quā in through Helvētiōrum fuerat in 13.

2. NOTES.¹

1. quā in rē; for order, cf. XV. n. 7 (c) and XXXVI. n. 2 (b).

2. interfecerant: (a) supply this verb in the subordinate clause, where it will have Tigurīnī for its subj. and Cassium for its obj.; (b) ejus, referring to Cæsar, depends upon socerī; it is not an adj. agreeing with socerī; (c) appositives in this sentence? (d) antec. and const. of quō?

3. cūrat: (a) pontem the obj. is limited by the gerundive faciendum; lit., he cares for a bridge to be made, more freely, he has a bridge built; (b) What clause gives the purpose of this bridge-building?

4. ipsī; for meaning and use, cf. ipse XXII. n. 4.

5. ut . . . trānsirent; substantive clause, in apposition with preceding id, which is the obj. of cōnfecerant; cf. XXIV. n. 3 (d).

6. illum: (a) refers to Cæsar, and is the word naturally used by the Helvetii in thinking of their enemy; cf. XXII. Vocab.; (b) What is the dir. disc. for illum fēcisse? or, in other words, what was the exact thought of the Helvetii?

7. Divico; nom. sing., not abl. sing. What, then, is its gen.?

8. prīnceps; here a noun; for const., cf. XX. n. 4 (d).

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The gerundive after cūrāre and

similar verbs A. & G. 294, d. H. 544, 2, n. 2.

¹ The pupil should remember that many difficulties unprovided for in the Notes are fully met in the Vocab., which must, of course, be consulted in translating the Text.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ægerrumē or ægerrimē , adv. in sup., <i>with the greatest trouble.</i> | 7. dux -cis (dūcere), <i>a leader.</i> |
| 2. avus , <i>grandfather.</i> | 8. pūblicus , <i>public.</i> |
| 3. Cassiānus , adj., <i>pertaining to Cassius</i> ; bellum Cassiānum , <i>the war with Cassius.</i> | 9. socerī , <i>fathers-in-law.</i> |
| 4. commovēre , -mōvit , -mōtus , <i>to move deeply.</i> | 10. repentinus , <i>sudden.</i> |
| 5. cōsequī , -secūtus , <i>to follow up, to obtain.</i> | 11. sōlum , adv., <i>only</i> ; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam , <i>not only . . . but also.</i> |
| 6. cūrāre , <i>to take care.</i> | 12. ulciscī , ultus , <i>to avenge, to punish.</i> |
| | 13. vīgintī , indecl. numeral, <i>twenty.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Principal parts of **facere**, **trānsīre**, **intellegere**, **mittere**. (b) Decline **ille**, **ipse**. (c) Decline **Divico**, **prīnceps**. (d) Write all the forms you know of **ulciscī**.

2. (a) Cæsar had married Calpurnia, the daughter of Piso. (b) The grandfather of Lucius Piso, from whom he received his name, had been killed by the Tigurini. (c) Therefore Cæsar said he avenged a private wrong, when he cut to pieces the Tigurini. (d) Cæsar has boats joined together, in order to lead his army across the river.

3. (a) For twenty days the Helvetii were building the bridge by which they crossed. (b) Divico, whom they sent to Cæsar, had waged war with the Romans. (c) Cæsar intended to punish those who had brought marked disaster upon the Romans. (d) Cassius led the army in which was the grandfather of Cæsar's father-in-law.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two cases possible for the form **socerī**. 2. The gender of **pōns**. 3. Difference in meaning between **hic** and **ille**. 4. Force of **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, **aut . . . aut**, **sive . . . sive**, **et . . . et**, **ita . . . ut**. 5. Two meanings of the form **quod** in this lesson. 6. Meaning of **Cassiānus** in this lesson. 7. The Lat. for

father, son, daughter, brother, father-in-law, grandfather, kinsman (by blood). 8. The abl. of time in this lesson. 9. The abl. of place. 10. Difference between them. 11. The subjv. with **cum** in this lesson. 12. The translation of the abl. absolute in this lesson.

LESSON XLVI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 13**, **Is ita** through **virtūtis Helvētiōrum**.

Is ita cum Cæsare ēgit :

“Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs **faciet**, in eam partem **ībunt** atque ibi **erunt Helvētiī**, ubi eōs — **cōnstitueris** atque esse **volueris**; sīn bellō persequī **persevērābis**, **reminiscere** et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī, et pristinæ virtūtis Helvētiōrum.”

‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs **faceret**, in eam partem **itūrōs** atque ibi **futūrōs Helvētiōs**, ubi eōs Cæsar **cōnstituisset** atque esse **voluisset**; sīn bellō persequī **persevērāret**, **reminiscerētur** et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinæ virtūtis Helvētiōrum.’

2. NOTES.

1. **faceret** : (a) impf. subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc., quoted after a past or historical tense, **ēgit** ; (b) the direct form is **faciet**, a fut. ind. ; (c) the tense sign of the 4th conjug. form **faciet** is -e- ; (d) **faceret**, *should make* ; **faciet**, *shall make*.

2. **Helvētiōs** : (a) subj. of **esse** understood with **itūrōs** and **futūrōs**, which are fut. act. partic. agreeing with **Helvētiōs** ; (b) the fut. inf. **itūrōs** (**esse**) stands for the fut. ind. **ībunt** in the dir. disc., and **futūros esse** for **erunt**, the fut. ind. of the irreg. verb **esse** ; (c) the subj. of the ind. is the nom. **Helvētiī**.

3 **cōnstituisset** : (a) plpf. subjv., sign -isse- ; cf. XLIV. n. 5 (a) ; (b) in the subjv., because it is in a subordinate clause of indir. disc. ; (c) the dir. form is the fut. pf. ind. **cōnstitueris**, *you shall have*

placed them; (*d*) the sign of the fut. pf. ind. is **-eri-**; (*e*) the pers. ending of the 2d sing. in the act. is **-s**, *thou* or *you*; *cf.* **-t**, **-nt**, **-mus**; (*f*) as Divico is addressing Cæsar, he would not use the Lat. word for *Cæsar*, but the Lat. for *thou* or *you*, which is expressed sufficiently by the pers. ending **-s**.

4. voluisset: (*a*) in the same construction as **cōstituisset**; (*b*) note that both are formed on the pf. stem, which in **cōstituisset** differs in form from the pres. stem only in the loss of the final **-e**; (*c*) **voluisset** is followed by (**eōs**) **esse**, *that they be* or *them to be*.

5. persevērāret: (*a*) impf. subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.; (*b*) it stands for the fut. ind. **persevērābis** in the dir. form; (*c*) **persevērābis** is formed on the pres. stem, because it denotes incomplete action; (*d*) its tense sign is **-bi-**; this **-bi-** is varied to **-bu-** in the 3d plur.; *cf.* **ī-bu-nt** **2** (*b*); (*e*) for use of 2d pers. and 2d pers. ending, *cf.* **3** (*e*) (*f*).

6. reminisceretur: (*a*) impf. subjv. of the dep. verb **reminiscī**; (*b*) stands for the pres. imperative, 2d pers. sing., **reminiscere**; (*c*) **reminisce-re** is formed on the pres. stem with the ending **-re**; *cf.* the ending of the pres. inf. act; (*d*) it is used with the gen. case in the words **incommodī** and **virtūtis**; *cf.* the Eng. expression *be mindful of*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New pers. endings: **-s**, 2d pers. act.; **-re**, 2d pers. pass.

2. New tense signs: **-bi-**, fut. 1st conjug. (**-bu-** in 3d plur.); **-ē-**, fut. 4th conjug.; **-eri-**, fut. pf. all conjug.

3. Examples of every tense in both the ind. and subjv. have now been found in Cæsar. The tenses of the ind. are the pres., impf., fut., pf., plpf., and fut. pf.; the tenses of the subjv. are the same, with the omission of the fut. and the fut. pf.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of **vetus** A. & G. **85.** H. **158.**

2. The 3d sing. and plur. in all
tenses of the ind. and subjv.,
and the inf. and partic. of
the irreg. verb **esse** . . . A. & G. **119.** H. **204.**

3. Changes of mode in indir. disc. A. & G. 336, H. 523, I. II. 339. 1, III., 524.
4. Fut. time in the subjv. . . . A. & G. 110, H. 496, I. II. a, 286, Rem. last sentence.
5. Change of pers. in indir. disc. . . . H. 526.
6. The gen. with verbs of remembering A. & G. 219. H. 406, II.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. agere, ēgit, āctus, <i>to set in motion, to drive, to do, to discuss.</i></p> <p>2. incommodus, <i>inconvenient</i>; as a noun in the neut., <i>an inconvenience</i>, a mild term for <i>misfortune</i>.</p> | <p>3. persequi, -secutus, <i>to follow up, to pursue.</i></p> <p>4. perseverāre, <i>to continue, to persist.</i></p> <p>5. prīstinus, <i>former.</i></p> <p>6. reminiscī, <i>to remember.</i></p> <p>7. sīn (sī and nē, <i>not</i>), <i>but if.</i></p> <p>8. vetus, -eris, <i>old, former.</i></p> |
|--|---|

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write the 3d sing. of all ind. and subjv. tenses act. and pass. of **perseverāre**, in the following order: pres., impf., fut., pf., plpf., fut. pf.; or, in other words, give the synopsis of **perseverāre** in the 3d sing. act. and pass. (b) Write the synopsis of **agere** in the 3d plur. subjv. (c) Write five inf. and three partic. of **cōstituere**.

2. (a) Remember the former war, in which the Roman consul Cassius was killed. (b) If peace shall be made by the Roman people, we will go to that place where Cæsar shall have commanded us (**nōs**) to be. (c) It is not fitting (**oportet**) for Cæsar to pursue us. (d) By a speech Divico tried to persuade Cæsar not to follow up the Helvetii.

3. (a) Divico discussed this matter (thing) with Cæsar, in order to obtain this request. (b) The Helvetii sent Divico to discuss this matter, because they saw that Cæsar was very powerful. (c) When Cæsar had determined to cross the river, he made a bridge in one day.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The tenses of the ind. and subj. act. formed on the pres. stem.
2. The pf. stem. 3. The formation of the pres. ind. 4. The tense signs of the impf., plpf., fut. pf. ind., and impf., pf., and plpf. subjv. in all conjug.
5. The endings of the pres. and pf. inf. act. in all conjug.
6. The formation of the fut. act. and pf. pass. inf. in all conjug.
7. The formation of the fut. act. and pf. pass. partic. in all conjug.
8. Peculiarities of conjug. in the verb **esse**.
9. The kind of clauses which take the inf. in indir. disc.
10. Special verbs which take the gen., the dat., the abl.
11. Why the fut. ind. is not changed in indir. disc. to the fut. subjv.

LESSON XLVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 13**, **Quod imprōvīsō** through **īnsidiīs nīterentur**.

“Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum **ad-ortus es**, eum īī, quī flūmen **trānsierant**, suīs auxiliūm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut **tuæ** māgnopere virtūtī **tribueris**, aut **nōs dēspexeris**; **nōs** ita ā patribus mājōribusque **nostrīs didicimus**, ut magis virtūte quam dolō **contendāmus** aut īnsidiīs **nītāmur**.”

‘Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum **ad-ortus esset**, eum īī, quī flūmen **trānsissent**, suīs auxiliūm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut **suæ** māgnopere virtūtī **tribueret**, aut **ipsōs dēspiceret**; **sē** ita ā patribus mājōribusque **suīs didicisse**, ut magis virtūte quam dolō **contenderent** aut īnsidiīs **nīterentur**.’

2. NOTES.

1. **adortus esset**: (a) plpf. subjv. of a dep. verb; for form, cf. XXXI. n. 2; (b) in the subjv. only because a subordinate clause of indir. disc.; cf. **adortus es** the direct form and XXXII. n. 6;

(c) in the 2d pers., because Divico is addressing Cæsar; **es** is the 2d pers. sing. of the pres. ind. of **esse**; (d) **adortus es**, the pf. is changed to the plpf. **adortus esset**, because the latter is quoted after the past tense **ēgit**; thus in Eng. we would say, *Do not despise us because you have attacked a canton*, but, *He said not to despise us because he had attacked a canton*.

2. **trānsissent**; simply changed to the subjv. from **trānsierant**, because in a subordinate clause.

3. **possent**: (a) in the subjv. in both dir. and indir. disc., because after **cum**; cf. XLIV. N. 5 (b); (b) the preceding **suīs** is a dat. case and a noun, *to theirs, to their (countrymen)*, cf. XL. N. 1.

4. **suæ**, *his*; changed from **tuæ**, *your* (sing.) in the direct form, where Divico is addressing Cæsar and referring to the valor of Cæsar.

5. **ipsōs**, *them*; refers to the Helvetii, and so stands for **nōs**, *us*, in the speech of the Helvetian Divico.

6. **nē aut . . . tribueret, aut . . . dēspiceret**, *not to ascribe it to his valor especially, or despise them*; both these verbs are changed from the pf. subjv. 2d sing. in the dir. form, and the clause is then translated, *Do not ascribe it to your own valor especially, or despise us*.

7. **sē**, *they*, in the reported speech stands for **nōs**, *we*, in the direct form.

8. **didicisse**: (a) pf. inf., ending **-isse**; cf. XLIII. N. 5 (a); (b) stands for the direct form **didicimus**, which is the pf. ind. act. 1st plur.; (c) **nōs**, the subj. of **didicimus**, is here expressed because emphatic, but cf. XLVI. N. 3 (f) and XL. N. 4 (d).

9. **contenderent**: (a) a result clause, giving the result of **didicisse**; (b) stands for the direct form **contendāmus**, the pres. subjv. act. 1st plur.; (c) for change of tense, cf. 1 (d).

10. **nitāmur**: (a) pres. subjv. of a dep. verb, same construction as **contendāmus**; (b) **-mur** is the ending of the 1st plur. pass.; cf. **-mus**, the ending of 1st plur. act.; (c) the clause **aut nitāmur** is peculiar in its connection with the rest of the sentence; it is best translated, *and (so) that we do not rely on ambuscades*; (d) for **īnsidiīs**, see Gram. Less.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Tenses of the subordinate clauses in indir. disc. . . . A. & G. 285, H. 491, 492, 286. 1, 2, 493, 1, 2.
2. The pf. subjv. in prohibitions . A. & G. 269, a. H. 484, IV. x. 1.
3. Abl. with *nīti* A. & G. 254, H. 425, II. 1, and *b*. 1) and *n*.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>adorīrī</i> , -ortus, <i>to rise against, to attack.</i> | <i>maximē</i> , sup., <i>very greatly, most, especially.</i> |
| 2. <i>dēspicere</i> , -spexit, -spectus, <i>to look down upon, to despise.</i> | 9. <i>māior</i> (comp. of <i>māgnus</i>), <i>greater</i> ; <i>mājōrēs nātū</i> or simply <i>mājōrēs</i> , <i>those greater by birth, ancestors.</i> |
| 3. <i>discere</i> , <i>didicit</i> , <i>to learn.</i> | |
| 4. <i>dolus</i> , <i>craft, deceit.</i> | 10. <i>nē</i> , adv., <i>not</i> ; cf. <i>nē</i> , conj., <i>that not.</i> |
| 5. <i>ferre</i> , <i>tulit</i> , <i>lātus</i> , irreg., <i>to bear.</i> | 11. <i>nīti</i> , <i>nīsus</i> or <i>nīxus</i> , <i>to rest upon, rely upon, to strive.</i> |
| 6. <i>imprōvīsō</i> , adv. (<i>in</i> neg., <i>prō</i> , <i>before, fore</i> , <i>vīsus</i> , <i>seen</i>), <i>unexpectedly.</i> | 12. <i>nōs</i> , nom. or accus. plur., <i>we</i> or <i>us.</i> |
| 7. <i>īnsidiæ</i> , nom. plur. (<i>in</i> , <i>in</i> , and <i>sedēre</i> , <i>to sit</i>) <i>an ambush, treachery.</i> | 13. <i>quam</i> , adv., <i>than.</i> |
| 8. <i>māgnopere</i> , adv. (<i>māgnō</i> and <i>opere</i>), <i>with great toil, greatly</i> ; <i>magis</i> , comp., <i>more</i> ; | 14. <i>tuus</i> , <i>tua</i> , <i>tuum</i> , <i>thy, thine, your</i> ; cf. <i>suus</i> . |
| | 15. <i>tribuere</i> , <i>tribuit</i> , <i>tribūtus</i> , <i>to assign, ascribe.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Decline *pāgus*, *auxilium*, *flūmen*, *pater*, *virtūs*, *rēs*.
 (b) Decline *ūnus* and give the cardinal numbers up to ten. (c) Write the synopsis of *posse* in 3d sing.

2. (a) You will not overcome the Helvetii by your valor. (b) The Helvetii themselves proved that they were very brave in the war with

Cassius. (*c*) In that war they defeated the Roman army and sent it under the yoke.¹ (*d*) Our fathers, when they waged war upon their neighbors, used to rely (were relying) on their own valor, not upon trickery.

3. (*a*) The Helvetii will be in that land where Cæsar shall have wished them to be. (*b*) For twenty days the Helvetii were crossing the river, which Cæsar crossed in one day by the bridge which he had built. (*c*) Divico says that Cæsar is ascribing it to his own valor, that (since) he has killed those whom their friends had left behind.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The exact translation of Divico's own words. 2. All the inf. and partic. of **nītī**. 3. Comparison of **māgnus** and **māgnopere**. 4. Two meanings for **nē**, for **quam**, for **quod**, for **virtūs**. 5. The endings **-mus** and **-mur**. 6. The sign of each tense of the subjv. in the 3d conjug. 7. In the 1st. 8. All the pers. endings you now know, both act. and pass. 9. The reason for each change of pers. in the Text in passing from dir. to indir. disc. 10. The reason why some subordinate verbs are in the subjv. in both dir. and indir. disc., and some in the subjv. only in the indir.

LESSON XLVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 13**, **Quārē nē** to the end.

Quārē nē commiseris , ut is locus, ubi cōstiterimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat , aut memoriam prōdat ."	'Quārē nē committeret , ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent , ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet , aut memoriam prōderet .'
---	--

¹ Lit.: They sent the defeated Roman army under the yoke.

2. NOTES.

1. **committeret**: for construction and change to **commiseris**, cf. XLVII. n. 6.

2. **cōstituisset**; stands for the fut. pf. ind. **constiterimus**, *we shall have taken our stand*; cf. XLVI. n. 3.

3. **caperet . . . prōderet**: (a) impf. subjv. of the 3d conjug.; (b) denote purpose after **committeret**, a verb of urging; cf. XX. n. 5 (b); (c) stand for the direct forms **capiat** and **prōdat**, which are in the pres. subjv. because after the primary tense **commiseris**; cf. XLVII. n. 2 (d), Gram. Less.; (d) **capiat** is of the 4th conjug. and **prōdat** of the 3d, though in the impf. subjv. both are of the 3d; some 3d conjug. verbs, (*e. g.* **capere** and **facere**), have 4th conjug. forms in several tenses formed on the pres. stem; (e) distinguish **capiat**, **prōdat** from **capiet**, **prōdet**, fut. ind., and **capit**, **prōdit**, **capiunt**, **prōdunt**, pres. ind.; (f) **interneciōne** has the same construction as **calamitāte**. (g) How does the form **exercitūs** differ from that of nom. sing.?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. We have now learned from the text the 3d sing. and plur. of every tense of the ind. and subjv. act. and pass. in all conjug.; also the partic., gerunds, supines, and the inf., with the exception of the fut. pass. inf., which is uncommon and may be omitted in the grammar references given below for review.

2. The pupil will save himself much confusion in learning these conjug., by fixing in mind the following facts:

(a) The conjug. differ in the main, only in their characteristics and the formation of their stems; the method of forming the tenses, the pers. endings, the endings of partic. and inf., and most of the tense signs, are the same for all conjug.

(b) The pass. differs from the act., in tenses formed from the pres. stem, only in its pers. endings, and forms all tenses of completed action by uniting the pf. pass. partic. and some tense of the verb **esse**.

(c) The most difficult tenses are the pres. ind., fut. ind., and pres. subjv., which must be carefully distinguished: the 3d conjug. in the pres. ind. changes **-e** of the pres. stem to **-i** in 3d sing. and **-u** in 3d plur.; the tense sign of the fut. is **-bi-** in the 1st and 2d conjug. and **-ē-** in the 3d and 4th; and the sign of the pres. subjv. is **-ē-** in the 1st conjug., but **-ā-** in the 2d, 3d, and 4th. For stems of all conjug., see XLIV. Obs. 2.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Tenses formed from the pres.,
pf., and supine stems . . . A. & G. 127. H. 222, I. II.
2. The four conjug.; ind. and
subjv. 3d sing. and plur. act.
and pass., and act. and pass.
inf. and partic. . . . A. & G. 128- H. 205-212.
132.¹

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. committere , -mīsit , -missus ,
<i>to let go together, to commit, to</i>
<i>cause that; praelium com-</i>
<i>mittere, to join battle.</i> | 4. internecio , <i>destruction, exter-</i>
<i>mination.</i> |
| 2. cōsistere , -stitit , <i>to take a</i>
<i>stand, stop.</i> | 5. prōdere , -didit , -ditus , <i>to put</i>
<i>forth, to transmit, to hana</i>
<i>down.</i> |
| 3. nōmen , <i>a name.</i> | 6. quārē (quā and rē), <i>on account</i>
<i>of which thing, wherefore.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Synopsis of **committere** in 3d sing. act. and passive; (b) Of **prōdere** in 3d plur. act. and pass. (c) Inf. and partic. of **capere** with meaning of each form. (d) Decline **is**, **internecio**, **locus**, **memoria**.

2. (a) Cæsar will not cause this place where he shall take his stand (shall have taken his stand) to receive a name from the extermina-

¹ Select from these articles only what the heading of this reference calls for.

tion of his army. (b) In the battle which Cæsar is about to join with the Helvetii, he will avenge the former disaster of the Roman consul. (c) The memory of that (*illius*) misfortune has been handed down to those who are dwelling in Italia.

3. (a) After enrolling new legions, Cæsar hastened to his army and attacked that part of the Helvetii which had not yet crossed the river. (b) Follow up the Helvetii, that they may not arrive at the boundaries of the Santones. (c) Cæsar causes new legions to be enrolled, to contend with the Helvetii.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the tense signs of the ind. and subjv. 2. All the endings of inf. and partic., and the stem upon which each is formed. 3. The tenses of the pres. system. 4. The pf. system. 5. The supine system. 6. The impf. ind. and impf. subjv. of the 4th conjug. 7. Peculiarity of the ending of the pres. inf. pass. in 3d conjug. 8. Similarity between 1st and 4th conjug. 9. Differences between the 1st and 4th conjug. 10. Some verbs which have forms of different conjug. 11. The pres. and fut. ind. and pres. subjv. 3d sing. of *cremāre*, *habēre*, *dūcere*, and *impedīre*.

LESSON XLIX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 14, through **difficile cavere**.

Hīs Cæsar ita respondit :

“Eō **mihi** minus dubitātiōnis **datur**,
quod eās rēs, quās ———
——— **commemorāvīstis**
memoriā **teneo**, atque eō gra-
vius **fero**, quō minus meritō
populī Rōmānī **accidērunt** :
quī sī alicūjus injuriæ sibi
cōnsciūs fuisset, non **fuit** diffi-
cile cavere ;”

‘Eō **sibi** minus dubitātiōnis **darī**,
quod eās rēs, quās **lēgātī**
Helvētīī **commemorāssent**,
memoriā **tenēret**, atque eō gra-
vius **ferre**, quō minus meritō
populī Rōmānī **accidissent** :
quī sī alicūjus injuriæ sibi
cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn **fuisse** diffi-
cile cavere ;’

2. NOTES.

1. **respondit** : (a) for the construction of the preceding **hīs**, cf. XXII. n. 2, Obs. 3 ; (b) **respondit** is a pf. indefinite referring to simple past time. What is the form of the pres. ind. act., 3d sing. ? What tenses will follow **respondit** in the subordinate clauses of indir. disc. ? XLVII. n. 1 (d) ; (c) remember that the subj. is **Cæsar** ; he is about to speak to the Helvetian ambassadors, for whom Divico has acted as spokesman.

2. **darī** : (a) in the principal clause of indir. disc., for **datur** in the dir. ; (b) note that the tense of the principal verb in indir. disc. is not changed after a past tense as in Eng. ; in Lat., lit., *Cæsar replied that less doubt is given*, where the Eng. requires *Cæsar replied that less doubt was given* ; (c) for construction of preceding **eō**, cf. XVI. n. 2 (c) ; (d) instead of the indir. **sibi**, *to him*, Cæsar, in speaking to the legates, used **mihi**, *to me* ; (e) **minus** is a neut. adj. in form, here a noun, the subj. of **darī**, with the partitive gen.

dubitātiōnis dependent upon it; *cf.* the adv. **minus**, and XVI. n. 5, Obs. 5.

3. commemorāssent for **commemorāvissent**: (a) plpf. subj. act., 1st conjug.; for form, *cf.* XXVIII. n. 6 (a) (c), XLIV. n. 5 (a); (b) for change from **commemorāvīstis**, *cf.* XLVII. n. 1; (c) the subj. **lēgātī** takes the place of the Lat. for *you*, plur., in the direct form, and *you*, plur., is expressed by the ending **-tis** in the verb **commemorāv-īs-tis**.

4. tenēret: (a) explain mode and tense; (b) takes the place of the verb **tene-o**, *I hold*, the pers. ending **-o** meaning *I*.

5. ferre: (a) for **fero**, *I bear*, of the dir. disc.; (b) modified by the adv. **gravius**, in the comp., lit. *I bear more heavily*, freely *I am more angry*; (c) for construction of **eō** before **gravius**, *cf.* XXVII. n. 1.

6. accidissent: (a) for change from **accidērunt**, *cf.* 3; (b) **quō**, the rel. pron. in abl. neut. before the adv. **minus**, has the same construction as **eō** 5 (c); lit. *by that I bear these things more heavily, by which less they happened because of the desert of the Roman people*, freely, *I am the more angered, in proportion as they did not happen deservedly to the Roman people*; (c) the subj. of both the dir. and indir. verb is **eæ rēs**, *these things*, supplied from what precedes; (d) for construction of **meritō**, *cf.* XVI. n. 2 (c).

7. fuisset: (a) the subj. is **quī**, of which the antec. is **populī Rōmānī**; for translation of **quī**, *cf.* IX. n. 1 (d), Obs. 1; (b) **cōnsciūs** is a pred. adj. agreeing with **quī**; it is followed by the dat. **sibi** and the gen. **injūriæ**; (c) **alicūjus** is an indef. adj. (from nom. **aliquī**), limiting **injūriæ**; (d) the collective noun **populus** is sing. in agreement, not plur., as the word *people* would more commonly be in Eng.; (e) **fuisset** is the plpf. subjv. in both dir. and indir. form, to imply that the Roman people were not conscious of wrong; the clause is lit. translated *if the Roman people had been conscious to itself of any wrong-doing*.

8. fuisse: (a) pf. inf. of **esse**, standing for **fuit**, *it was*, of the dir. disc. (**fuisset**, *would have been*, seems more natural in connection with the **sī** clause which precedes); (b) the subj. is **cavēre**, and **difficile** is the pred. adj. agreeing with this subj.; *cf.* XXII. n. 3 (b).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pers. ending **-tis**, *you*, is that of the 2d plur. in the act. voice; **-o** is used as the pers. ending of the 1st sing. in the pres. ind. act., and in some other tenses.

2. It is the subordinate and imperative clauses which change the tenses of their verbs in indir. disc. after a past tense. The inf. in the principal clauses has, as nearly as the forms of the inf. will admit, the tense of the principal verb for which it stands.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The partitive gen. depending
on neuters and comparatives A. & G. 216, 2, H. 397, 3.
3.
2. **Quō . . . eō** A. & G. 106, c.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. accidere , -cidit (ad and cadere , <i>to fall</i>), <i>to fall upon, to fall out, to happen</i> (used generally of unfortunate occurrences, hence Eng. <i>accident</i>). | 5. cōnsciū (con , <i>with</i> , and sciē , <i>to know</i>), <i>knowing with one's self or with others, conscious</i> . |
| 2. aliquī , indef. adj., <i>any</i> . | 6. dubitātio , <i>doubt</i> . |
| 3. cavēre , cāvit , cautus , <i>to take care, beware of</i> . | 7. gravius , adv. in comp., <i>more heavily</i> ; gravius ferre , <i>to be more annoyed, angry</i> . |
| 4. commemorāre , <i>to call to mind, to mention</i> . | 8. meritum (merēri), <i>desert, merit</i> . |
| | 9. mihi , dat., <i>me</i> . |
| | 10. minor , adj. in comp., <i>smaller, less</i> . |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Give the principal parts of all the verbs in this lesson, except **dare**. (b) Decline **sibi**, **quī**, **cōnsciū**, throughout. (c) Decline in all genders **difficilis**, **minor**.

2. (*a*) Cæsar said there was no doubt¹ that the Helvetii attacked the Romans without cause. (*b*) I am more angry because that former disaster did not happen on account of any wrong which the Romans had committed. (*c*) I remember that the Romans were not waging war upon the Helvetii when the Helvetii attacked them. (*d*) It will not be easy to send the brave Helvetii under the yoke.

3. (*a*) If Cæsar contends (shall contend) with the Helvetii, he will overcome them. (*b*) The more I think of it, the more difficult it seems (pass. of *vidēre*) to me. (*c*) Having prepared all things for waging war, Cæsar on that day discussed the matter with the Helvetii.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison between the forms of the adj. and those of the corresponding adv. in positive, comp., and sup. 2. All the pers. endings learned thus far. 3. Two uses of the inf. in this lesson. 4. Construction used with *cōnscius*. 5. The Lat. for *to be more angry, to remember, the more . . . the more*. 6. Tenses in the subordinate clauses of indir. disc. 7. In the principal clauses. 8. Different kinds of abl. in this lesson. 9. The agreement of the collective noun. 10. The antec. of every pron. in lesson. 11. Changes of pers. in this lesson in passing from dir. to indir. disc. 12. The gender of a substantive clause.

¹ See XXII. Text and n. 7.

LESSON L.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 14**, **sed eō** through **dēpōnere posse**.

“sed eō **dēceptus est**, quod neque commissum ā sē **intellegēbat** quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum **putābat**. Quod sī veteris contumēliæ oblīviscī **volo**, num etiam recentium injūriarum, quod **mē** invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptāvīstis**, quod Hæduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas **vexāvīstis**, memoriam dēpōnere possum ? ”

‘sed eō **dēceptum**, quod neque commissum ā sē **intellegeret** quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum **putāret**. Quod sī veteris contumēliæ oblīvisci **vellet**, num etiam recentium injūriarum, quod **eō** invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptāssent**, quod Hæduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas **vexāssent**, memoriam dēpōnere posse ? ’

2. NOTES.

1. **dēceptum** : (a) forms with **esse**, understood, the pf. pass. inf. of **dēcipere** ; (b) the subj. is **populum Rōmānum**, supplied from what precedes ; (c) *cf.* the direct form **dēceptus est**, and note that there is no change of tense in the indir. form.

2. **intellegeret** : (a) *cf.* the dir. **intellegēbat**, and note that subordinate verbs already in a secondary tense remain in the same tense when changed to indir. disc. after a secondary tense ; (b) the subj. is **populus Rōmānus** ; (c) the clause **quod . . . intellegeret** is in apposition with the preceding **eō**, which is an abl. of means with **dēceptum esse** ; (d) the subj. of **commissum (esse)** is indefinite ; it would be some such word as **aliquid**, *anything*.

3. **timēret** ; subjv. in both dir. and indir. disc., is explanatory of **commissum (esse)**.

4. **putāret** : (a) has the same construction as **intellegeret** ; (b) for **timendum**, with **esse** understood, *cf.* XXXIII. N. 3 (b) ;

(c) the whole lesson so far may be thus translated from the direct form very lit., *but (the Roman people) was deceived by this, because it knew that it (or anything) had not been committed by itself wherefore it should fear, and it did not think it was to be feared without a cause; very freely, but the Roman people were deceived by the knowledge of their own innocence, and the belief that they did not need to fear without reason.*

5. **quod**, before **sī**: (a) an adverbial accus. translated, with **sī**, as *to which if*, or, freely, *but if*, *now if*; (b) its antec. is the whole preceding sentence.

6. **vellet**: (a) irreg. impf. subjv. of **velle**, *to wish*; (b) the change from the dir. **volo** is perfectly regular; (c) for **-o** of **volo**, cf. XLIX. n. 4 (b); (d) followed by the pres. inf. of the 3d conjug. **oblīviscī**; (e) **oblīviscī**, dep., *to forget*, is used with the gen. **contumēliæ**; cf. XLVI. n. 6 (d).

7. **temptāssent**: (a) follows **quod**, *because*; (b) for change from **temptāvīstis**, cf. **commemorāssent** XLIX. n. 3; (c) **eō**, after **quod**, is in the abl. absolute with **invītō**; cf. **Sēquanīs invītīs** XXXVI.; (d) takes the place of **mē**, the abl. sing. of the pers. pron. of the 1st pers.; cf. **mihi** XLIX. n. 2 (d), and **nōs** XLVII. n. 5, 7.

8. **vexāssent**: (a) the same construction as **temptāssent**; (b) **quod**, *because*, is repeated by Cæsar before each obj. of the verb, in order to call attention to the repeated instances of wrong-doing on the part of the Helvetii; (c) **Allobrogas** is a peculiar form of the accus. for the more common **Allobrogēs**.

9. **num . . . injūriārum . . . memoriā dēpōnere posse?** (a) note that the clause is interrogative; (b) the interrogative word is **num**, which stands first; when this word is used, a negative answer is expected, expressed in Eng. by *he could not*, *could he?* or merely the tone of the voice; (c) the subj. of **posse** is **Cæsarem**, understood, which becomes *I* in the Eng. of the dir. disc.; therefore (d) **possum?** the direct form of **posse?** means *can I?* the **-m** is the pers. ending of the 1st pers. sing.; (e) interrogative clauses are usually in the subjv. in indir. disc., but **possum** is changed to **posse** because it is really, in connection with **num**, a simple declarative verb meaning *I cannot*; (f) **injūriārum** depends upon **memoriā**.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The pers. endings of the act.
voice A. & G. **116** and H. **247** and 1.
foot-note 3.
2. Force of **num** in asking a
question A. & G. **210**, e. H. **351**, 1, n.
3. The use of the rel. **quod** as an
adv. accus. A. & G. **240**, a, H. **378** and 2;
b. **453**, 6.
4. The gen. with verbs of forget-
ting A. & G. **219**. H. **406**, II.
5. Substantive clauses introduced
by the conj. **quod** . . . A. & G. **329**, H. **540**,¹ IV.
333,¹ and n.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. contumēlia , <i>effrontery, insult.</i> | 5. oblīviscī , -lītus , <i>to forget.</i> |
| 2. dēcipere (dē and capere),
- cēpit , - ceptus , <i>to catch</i>
<i>away, entrap, deceive.</i> | 6. recēns , <i>fresh, recent.</i> |
| 3. dēpōnere , - posuit , - positus ,
<i>to place aside.</i> | 7. sed , conj., <i>but.</i> |
| 4. num , interrogative particle; in
direct questions expects a
negative answer. | 8. temptāre or tentāre (tenēre),
<i>to handle, to try.</i> |
| | 9. timēre , timuit , <i>to fear.</i> |
| | 10. vexāre , <i>to annoy, vex.</i> |

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Principal parts of **committēre**, **intelligere**, **putāre**. (b) Synopsis of **putāre** in 3d sing., act. and pass. (c) Write the act. and pass. inf. and partic. of **intelligere** with the meaning of each. (d) Decline **sē**, **veteris**, **iter**, **vim**.

¹ Read examples carefully.

2. (a) By deceiving the Roman people (the Roman people having been deceived), the Helvetii were able to overcome the Roman army in battle. (b) I fear because you have already committed evil deeds. (c) I ought not to fear (it is not to be feared by me), for no wrong has been done by me. (d) Forget that wrong which the Helvetii brought upon the Roman people.

3. (a) The Helvetii use force, in order to make a way through the province. (b) Though Cæsar was unwilling, the Helvetii persisted in wandering through the fields of the Hædui. (c) Cæsar told the Helvetian ambassadors that he was more indignant, because they had attacked the Romans, who were not conscious to themselves of any wrong-doing.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The forms of **velle** met thus far. 2. The forms **mē. mihi, nōs, vōs**. 3. The difference in form between impf. ind. and impf. subjv. in 1st, 2d, and 3d conjug. 4. In the 4th conjug. 5. Two uses of the form **quod** in this lesson. 6. Two endings for the 1st sing. in the act. voice. 7. The adv. accus. 8. Different kinds of substantive clauses used thus far. 9. The translation, both lit. and free, of **Pontem faciendum cūro** and **Pōns mihi faciendus est**. 10. The mode used in the dir. disc. of this lesson after **quod** and **sī**.

LESSON LI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 14, Quod suā through impūnitātem concēdere.

<p>“Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne injūriās tulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.”</p>	<p>‘Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne injūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinere. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.’</p>
---	---

2. NOTES.

1. **glōriārentur**: (a) Why impf. subjv. instead of pres. ind. (the dir. form)? (b) **glōriāminī** is the 2d plur. of a dep. verb; note the ending of the pass. 2d plur. **-mini**; cf. **-mur**, pass. 1st plur., XLVII. N. 10 (b) and **-tur, -ntur**; (c) **suā**, *their*, in connection with the 3d plur. verb **glōriārentur**, corresponds to **vestrā**, *your*, plur. with the 2d plur. verb **glōriāminī**; (d) cf. **vestrā**, 2d pers. plur. possessive adj., with **tuæ**, 2d pers. sing. XLVII. N. 4 and with **nostrī** XL. N. 5; (e) **victōriā** is abl. of cause with **glōriārentur**.

2. **admīrārentur**: (a) the same construction as **glōriārentur**; note the close connection with it indicated by **-que** in **quodque**; (b) followed by the accus. and inf. **sē tulisse**; (c) **sē** takes the place of **vōs**, *you* (plur.) in the dir. disc.; (d) **tulisse** seems to be used in an unusual sense; *you have borne wrongs with impunity, i. e. the guilt of them has rested upon you without doing you harm.*

3. **pertinēre** : (*a*) has (like the dir. form **pertinet**) the two preceding substantive **quod** clauses as its subj. ; (*b*) the sentence may be in part translated thus, *the fact that you glory and wonder tends to the same thing, i. e. to your final punishment*, as explained in what follows ; (*c*) for use of two subj. with sing. verb, *cf.* V. n. 8 (*b*) and H. 463, II. 3.

4. **deōs** : (*a*) the subj. of **cōnsuēsse** ; (*b*) changed from nom. **dī** (contracted from **deī**) in the dir. disc. ; (*c*) **cōnsuēsse** for **cōnsuēv-isse** is a pf. inf. act. ; note ending **-isse** ; (*d*) note the emphatic position of verb at the head of the clause ; *cf.* XXX. n. 1 ; *you are surprised*, says Caesar, *at what is customary* ; (*e*) **cōnsuēvērunt** is pres. in sense though pf. in form ; (*f*) for the position of the conj. **enim** after the beginning of the clause, *cf.* **quoque** IX. and **autem** XVII., and contrast **nam** and **ita** XLIV.

5. **doleant** : (*a*) for subjv. in both dir. and indir. disc., *cf.* XXXIV. n. 5 ; (*b*) the pres. is here used, rather than the impf., after the past tense of the verb of saying which introduces the whole clause, because a universal truth rather than a particular instance in the past is referred to ; (*c*) the preceding **rē-rum** is the gen. plur. of **rēs**.

6. **concēdere** : (*a*) a complementary inf. after **cōnsuēsse** ; (*b*) **hīs**, the dat. plur. from **hī**, is the antec. of **quōs**, which begins the preceding clause ; *cf.* **quæ pars . . . ea** XLIV. ; (*c*) **velint** is pres. subj. of **velle**, *to wish*, for **volunt**, the pres. ind. of the dir. disc. ; *cf.* **vellent** XXXIII., **volēbat** XXXVI., **voluisset** XLVI. ; (*d*) degree of comp. of **secundiōrēs** and **diūturniōrem** ?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Pers. endings of the pass. . . . A. & G. 116. H. 247.
2. The complete conjug. of the
irreg. verb **velle** A. & G. 138. H. 293.
3. Position of **enim**, **autem**, **quo-**
que A. & G. 345, *b*. H. 569, III.
4. Position of the rel. clause before
the principal clause A. & G. 201, *c*. H. 572, II.
and n.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **admīrārī**, *to wonder at, to admire.*
2. **commūtatio**, **-ōnis** (**mūtāre**, *to change*), *a changing, change.*
3. **cōnsuēscere**, **-suēvit**, **-suētus**, *to accustom one's self; in pf. to have accustomed one's self, to be wont.*
4. **diū**, adv., *long* (used of time, not space).
5. **diūturnus**, adj. (from **diū**), *long* (in time)
6. **dolēre**, **doluit**, *to feel pain, to grieve for.*
7. **enim**, *for; used generally after the first word of the clause.*
8. **eōdem**, adv., *to the same place.*
9. **glōriārī**, *to boast, to glory.*
10. **impūne**, adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*
11. **impūnitās**, *impunity.*
12. **insolenter** (in neg. and **solēre**, *to be accustomed*), *strangely, insolently.*
13. **interdum**, adv., *sometimes.*
14. **scelus**, **-eris**, *a crime.*
15. **secundus**, *following, second, favorable* (a wind *following* or right astern would be a *favorable* wind).
16. **tam**, *so* (used mostly before adv. and adj.).
17. **vestra**, fem., *your*, plur.; *cf. tuus, thy or your*, sing.
18. **vōs**, nom. and accus. plur., *you; cf. poss. adj. vestra and nōs, nostra.*
19. **victōria**, *victory.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Principal parts of **ferre**, **ulciscī**, **concēdere**, **velle**. (b) Synopsis of **concēdere** in 3d sing. act. and pass. (c) Decline **secundus** in all genders. (d) Compare **diūturnus** in all genders. (e) Decline **secundiōrēs rēs** together in plur.

2. (a) We glory in our victory, because we overcame the brave Romans. (b) We think that when we defeated Cassius the victory was a very great (one). (c) The Helvetii have brought many wrongs upon the rest of the Gauls. (d) The immortal gods are wont to punish those men who glory in their crimes.

3. (a) The Helvetii wished to fight continually with their neighbors. (b) The way was so narrow that carts could be drawn (only) one-by-one. (c) All those countries of which Cæsar was informed stretch toward the north. (d) Against my will you were trying to force your way through our province after annoying our allies.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. A letter found in all but one of the pers. endings of the pass.
 2. Comparison of act. and pass. pers. endings. 3. The tenses for completed action in pass. 4. A verb pf. in form but pres. in sense.
 5. Position in Lat. of the rel. pron., of the demonstrative, of the monosyllabic prep. used with a noun and adj., of **cum**, of **autem**.
 6. The sign of the pres. subjv. 7. The verbs used thus far with the complementary inf. 8. With an obj. clause of purpose. 9. Peculiarities in the conjug. of **velle**. 10. *You* and *your*, *we* and *our*, in Lat. 11. Four kinds of abl. sometimes translated by the Eng. prep. *in*.

LESSON LII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 14**, **Cum ea** to the end.

“Cum **haec** ita **sint**, tamen sī obsidēs **ā vōbis** mihi **dabuntur**, utī ea quæ **pollicēminī** factūrōs **intellegam**, et sī Hæduīs dē injuriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum **intulīstis**, item sī Allobrogibus **satisfaciētis**, ego **vōbiscum** pacem **faciam**.”

‘Cum **ea** ita **sint**, tamen sī obsidēs **ab iīs sibi** **dentur**, utī ea quæ **polliceantur** factūrōs **intellegat**, et sī Hæduīs dē injuriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum **intulerint**, item sī Allobrogibus **satisfaciant**, **sēsē cum iīs** pācem **esse factūrum**.’

Divico respondit :

‘Ita **Helvētiī** ā mājōribus suis **institūtī sunt**, utī obsidēs accipere, nō dare cōsuērīnt; ējus rei **populus Rōmānus est** testis.”

‘Ita **Helvētiōs** ā mājōribus suis **institūtōs esse**, utī obsidēs accipere, nō dare cōsuērīnt; ējus rei **populum Rōmānum esse** testem.’

Hōc respōnsō datō, discēssit.

2. NOTES.

1. **ea**, *those things*: (a) changed from **haec**, *these things*, in dir. disc., where it is used to indicate a closer relation to the speaker; cf. XXIII. n. 4 (b); (b) **haec** like **ea** is the nom. plur. neut., and like **ea** has the same form in the nom. and accus. plur. neut. and the nom. sing. fem.

2. **tamen**, *yet*; this word is used in contrast to the preceding **cum**, which is here used in what is called its concessive sense and means *although*; note that it is followed by the subjv. in both dir. and indir. disc.

3. **dentur**: (a) a primary is sometimes used after a secondary tense of a verb of saying for the sake of vividness; see Gram. Less. below; (b) **ḡabuntur**, fut. ind. pass. 3d plur.; for change to pres. subjv., cf. XLVI. n. 1, Gram. Less.; (c) **vōbis** is the abl. plur. of **vōs**, *you*, nom. plur. (d) Why **ab iīs** but **ā vōbis**? (e) Remember that Cæsar is speaking to the Helvetian legates.

4. **polliceantur**: (a) mode and tense and sign? (b) conjug. of verb, and how you know the conjug. from this form? (c) force of the endings **-ntur** and **-mini**?

5. **intellegat**: (a) used after **utī**, for form of which, see **utī** . . . **proficiscantur** XXVIII.; (b) mode and tense? why? (c) force of ending **-m** in **intellegam**? (d) the subj. of **factūrōs** (**esse**), exceptionally omitted, would be, if expressed, **vōs** in the dir. and **eōs** in the indir. disc.; (e) **ea**, the obj. of **factūrōs**, is here the antec. of rel. **quæ**; note that the pron. **is**, **ea**, **id** is used constantly as the antec. of a rel., e. g. **id** XLV., **īf** XLVII.

6. **intulerint**: (a) pf. subjv. of the verb **īnferre**; sign? In what other tense is this sign found? (b) **intul-īstis**, pf. ind. 2d plur.; cf. **commemorāv-īstis** XLIX. and note that the ending is the same, though the stems are differently formed; cf. XLVIII. Obs. 2 (a); (c) for the preceding dat. **ipsīs** and **sociīs**, cf. **fīnitimīs īnferre** XVI.; (d) **ipsīs** refers to **Hæduīs**, *upon the Hædui themselves*.

7. **satisfaciant**: (a) How does the dir. form **faciētis** differ from it in mode and tense? (b) the preceding **Allobrogibus** is dat. with this verb, lit. *if they would do enough for the Allobroges*, freely *if they would satisfy the Allobroges*.

8. **factūrum esse** : (a) fut. inf. for **faciam**, the fut. ind. 1st pers. of the dir. disc. ; (b) note that **-ē-**, the sign of the fut. ind. in the 3d and 4th conjug., is varied to **-a-** in the 1st sing., and the form becomes the same, in that pers., as the pres. subjv. ; cf. **faciam**, **satisfaciētis**, **intellegam** : (c) the subj. of **faciam** is **ego**, *I*, which is here expressed as a separate word because of the contrast with **vōbis** ; (d) for position of **cum** in **vōbiscum**, cf. VIII. n. 4 (b).

9. **mājōribus** ; for meaning, cf. XLVII. Vocab.

10. **cōnsuērint** : (a) pf. subjv. even in dir. disc. because the verb of a result clause ; (b) force of pf. tense in this verb ? LI. n. 4 (e) ; (c) for whole passage from **ita**, cf. **sē . . . niterentur** XLVII.

11. **reī** : the gen. sing. of **rēs** ; cf. gen. plur. **rē-rum** LI. n. 5 (c).

12. **testem** : (a) Why accus. in indir. but nom. in dir. disc. ? cf. XX. n. 4 (d) ; (b) What gen. depends upon it ?

13. **respōnsō** ; here from the noun **respōnsum**, a reply.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Nouns with stems in **-ē** have the endings of the 3d decl., except in the gen. sing. and the gen. plur., where the endings are **-ī** sing. and **-rum** plur.

2. The following forms of the demonstrative pron. **hic**, **hæc**, **hoc**, have been used in the text thus far : **hic**, **hōc**, **hāc**, **hī**, **hæc**, **hōrum**, **hīs**.

3. **Cum** causal and **cum** concessive take the subjv. ; **cum** temporal usually takes the subjv. in Cæsar when used with the impf. or plpf. tenses.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The decl. and gender of **-ē** stems A. & G. 72, 73. H. 120.

2. The decl. of **ego** throughout

and of **vōs** in plur. . . . A. & G. 98. H. 184.

3. The complete conjg. of **esse**

and **posse** A. & G. 119, H. 204, 290,
120, b. II. n. 1, 2.

4. The decl. of **hic**, **hæc**, **hoc** . A. & G. p. 51, H. **186**, l. foot-foot-note 1 and note 4.
101
5. The meaning and use of **hic**,
ille, **is**, **ipse** A. & G. **102**, *a*, H. **450**, 1, 4,
b, d, e. **451, 452.**
6. **Cum** concessive A. & G. **326.** H. **514, 515**
III.
7. The pres. and pf. after an historical tense II **525, I**

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. discēdere , - cēssit , - cēssūrus ,
<i>to go apart, to depart.</i> | 4. respōnsum , <i>the thing answered,</i>
<i>a reply.</i> |
| 2. īstituere , - stituit , - stitūtus ,
<i>to arrange, construct, instruct.</i> | 5. satisfacere , - fēcit , - factūrus ,
<i>to do enough, to satisfy.</i> |
| 3. pollicērī , pollicitus , <i>to promise.</i> | 6. testis , <i>a witness.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **is**, **ille**, **ipsæ**. (*b*) Decline **obses**, **pāx**, **injūria**. (*c*) All the inf. and partic. of **īferre** with meaning of each. (*d*) The synopsis of **pollicērī** in 3d plur.

2. (*a*) If you shall give me hostages, I will do you no harm. (*b*) But if, after annoying the allies of the Roman people, you shall lay waste their fields, I will kill the largest possible number of your army. (*c*) The Helvetii said they would not satisfy the Allobroges for the injuries which they had inflicted upon them. (*d*) The Roman people have been so instructed by their ancestors that they wage war upon all who inflict wrong upon them.

3. (*a*) I have less doubt because I remember that those things did not happen on account of any misdeed of the Romans. (*b*) We ought not to fear without reason. (*c*) I cannot forget that you have annoyed the Hædui and Allobroges. (*d*) For fifty (**quīnquāgintā**) years the Romans remembered that disaster in which the Helvetii were glorying.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The cases in which the forms of **hic** given in Obs. 2 may be found. 2. Likeness between **-ē** and **-i** stems. 3. Difference between **vōs** and **nōs**, **tua** and **vēstra**, **suus** and **ējus** or **eōrum**. 4. Consonant changes in conjug. of **esse**. 5. Letters dropped in the conjug. of **posse**. 6. Peculiarities of decl. of **hic**, **hæc**, **hoc**. 7. Contrast in meaning between **hic** and **ille**. 8. The different uses of conj. **cum**. 9. Exact meaning of **tamen**, **etiam**, **ita**, **item**, **autem**, **ibi**, **ubi**. 10. Change of a fut. ind. in a subordinate clause in passing from dir. to indir. disc. 11. Of a fut. pf. ind. 12. The forms of the fut. ind. and pres. subjv. in 3d conjug.

LESSON LIII.

REVIEW of LESSONS XLIII. to LII. inclusive.

The two most important subjects in this Review are the Conjugation of the Verb and Indirect Discourse. On both of them much has been learned from the text of the last ten Lessons. Be sure to gain so complete a knowledge of these subjects that it can be readily used in the Lessons which follow. On the necessity and the method of review, see the introduction to Lesson XII.

1. TEXT.—CÆSAR, B. G. I., 12 to 14 INCLUSIVE.

Follow implicitly the directions given in XLII. under "Text," 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, simply omitting under 4 the clause: "then compare the result with the 'Verb Diagram' of XXVI."

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The decl. and gender of **-ē**
 stems A. & G. 72, 73. H. 120.
2. The decl. of **vetus** A. & G. 85. H. 158.

3. The decl. of **ego**, and of **vōs**
in plur. A. & G. **98.** H. **184.**
4. The decl. of **hic**, **hæc**, **hoc** . A. & G. p. 51, H. **186**, I. foot-
foot-note 1, note 4.
and **101.**
5. The meaning and use of **hic**,
ille, **is**, and **ipse** . . . A. & G. **102**, *a*, H. **450**, 1, 4,
b, *d*, *e*. **451**, **452.**
6. Force of **num** in asking a
question A. & G. **201**, *c*. H. **351**, 1, N.
3.
7. **Quō . . . eō** A. & G. **106**, *c*.
8. The antec. attracted into the
rel. clause A. & G. **200**, *b*, H. **445**, 9.
and N.
9. Position of the rel. before the
principal clause A. & G. **201** *c*. H. **572**, II.
and N.
10. Position of **enim**, **autem**,
quoque A. & G. **345**, *b*. H. **569**, III.
11. The tenses formed on the pres.,
the pf., and the supine stems A. & G. **127.** H. **222**, I. II.
III.
12. The pers. endings of the act.
voice A. & G. **116** and H. **247** and 1.
foot-note 3.
13. The pers. endings of the pass.
voice A. & G. **116.** H. **247.**
14. The four conjug. complete¹ . . A. & G. **128**– H. **205**–**212.**
132.
15. The complete conjug. of **esse**
and **posse** A. & G. **119**, H. **204**, **290**,
120, *b*. II. N. 1, 2.

¹ Almost all forms of the four conjug. have now been learned from the text, at least in their component parts, and it is probably best to learn all of them from the grammar for the sake of completeness of view. The teacher should see to it, however, that the greatest emphasis is laid upon the 3d pers and the modes and tenses which are most common in Cæsar.

16. The complete conjg. of **velle** A. & G. **138.** H. **293.**
17. The partitive gen. depending
on neuters and compara-
tives A. & G. **216, 2,** H. **397.**
3.
18. The gen. with verbs of remem-
bering and forgetting . . A. & G. **219.** H. **406, II.**
19. Two accus. after compound
verbs A. & G. **239, b.** H. **376.**
20. The rel. **quod** as an adv. accus. A. & G. **240, a,** H. **378** and **2;**
b. **453, 6.**
21. The abl. of manner A. & G. **248** and H. **419, III.**
Rem.
22. The abl. with **nīti** A. & G. **254** H. **425, II. 1,**
and **b.** **1),** and **N.**
23. **Cum** concessive A. & G. **326.** H. **514, 515,**
III.
24. The pf. subjv. in prohibitions . A. & G. **269, a.** H. **484, IV.,**
N. 1.
25. Substantive **quod** clauses . . A. & G. **329, 333.** H. **540, IV.**
and **N.**
26. The gerundive after **cūrāre** .
and similar verbs . . . A. & G. **294, d.** H. **544, 2, N.**
2.
27. The question indirectly quoted A. & G. **338, 334.** H. **523, II. 1;**
529, I.
28. Changes of mode in indir. disc. A. & G. **336, 339.** H. **523, I. II.**
1, III. 524.
29. Changes of tense in the subor-
dinate clauses of indir. disc. A. & G. **285, 286.** H. **491, 492,**
1, 2, 493,
1, 2.
30. The pres. and pf. subjv. after
an historical tense H. **525, 1**
31. Future time in the subjv. . . A. & G. **110, a;** H. **496, I. II.**
286, Rem. last
sentence.
32. Changes of pers. in indir. disc. H. **526.**

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Cæsar, **B. G. i.**
12-14.

1. VERBS.

1st Conjug. (-ā verbs).

admīrārī	glōriārī	persevērāre
commemorāre	jūdicāre	temptāre (tentāre)
cūrāre	mandāre	vexāre

2d Conjug. (-ē verbs).

cavēre	commovēre	dolēre	pollicērī	timēre
--------	-----------	--------	-----------	--------

3d Conjug. (-e verbs).

Write the principal parts of these verbs.

abdere	concīdere	dēpōnere	interficere	prōdere
accidere	cōnsequī	dēspicere	nītī	reminiscī
agere	cōnsistere	discēdere	oblīvīscī	satisfacere
aggredi	cōnsuēscere	discere	persequī	tribuere
committere	dēcipere	īstituere	persolvere	ulciscī

4th Conjug. (-ī verbs).

adorīrī	impedīre
---------	----------

Irregular verb.

ferre

2. NOUNS HAVING -A STEMS.

contumētia	īnsidiæ	silva	victōria	vigilia
------------	---------	-------	----------	---------

3. -O STEMS.

Nouns.

avis	deus	meritum	respōsum
castra, plur. in form	dolus	oculus	socerī, plur.

Adj. (having also fem. stems in -a).

aliquī	diūturnus	publicus	secundus
Cassiānus	incommodus	quartus	tuus
cōnsciūs	prīstinus	repentīnus	utrī, plur.
		vestrī, plur.	

4. THIRD DECL.

Nouns.

Give the gen. and gender of each.

Arar (Araris)	explōrātor	nōmen
calamitās	impūnitās	scelus
commutātio	internecio	testis
dubitātio	lēnitās	
dux	linter, <i>fem. by exception</i>	

Adj.

immortālis	inopīnāns	māior	recēns
incrēdibilis	insīgnis	minor	vetus

5. -U STEM.

cāsus

6. INDECL. NUMERAL ADJ.

vīgintī

7. PRON.

aliquī	tuus	vestrī, <i>plur.</i>
ego (mihi, mē, nōs)	utrī, <i>plur.</i>	vōs, <i>plur.</i>

8. PREP.

citṛā

9. ADV.

ægerrimē, <i>sup.</i>	gravius, <i>comp.</i>	īnsolenter	nē	quārē
diū	imprōvīsō	interdum	num	sōlum
eōdem	impūne	māgnopere	quam	tam

10. CONJ.

enim	nam	sed	sīn	sīve
------	-----	-----	-----	------

LESSON LIV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 15**, through **nostris** cadunt.

2. NOTES.

1. **idem** ; cf. **XXI. n. 4**.

2. **sociis** ; governed by **ex**, like **prōvinciā** and **Hæduis**.

3. **habēbat** : (a) the obj. is the rel. **quem** ; (b) **coāctum** agrees with **quem** ; (c) **coāctum habēbat** is similar in meaning to the Eng. partic. with *have*, but lays more emphasis on the idea of possession and continuing to possess, thus *he was holding after having collected* ; note that, in the Eng. expression *he has held the cavalry*, the pass. partic. *held* really limits *cavalry* the obj. of the verb *has*, just as in the case above **coāctum** limits **quem**.

4. **videant** : (a) mode, tense, and sign? (b) why subjv.? cf. **XXX. n. 5** ; **XXXII. n. 3** ; (c) pres., because it is after the primary tense **præmittit** ; (d) plur., although its subj. refers to the sing. collective noun **equitātum** ; for more usual agreement, see **XLIX. n. 7 (d)**.

5. **in** ; for position, cf. **XV. n. 7 (c)**.

6. **faciant** : (a) for tense, cf. **4 (c)** ; (b) for mode, cf. **XLIII. n. 2 (c)** ; (c) cf. the forms of the text : **adficiēbantur, facere, facti sunt, perficit, faciunt, faciendum, fēcisse, factūrum**. Which are of the 4th conjug.? On what stem are all the forms of the 4th conjug. based? (d) **quās**, which introduces the clause and agrees with **partēs**, is from the interrogative **quī**, not the rel. **quī**.

7. **committunt** : (a) Might the preceding **cupidius** agree with **agmen**, so far as form is concerned? How do you know that it does not so agree? for its meaning, see Gram. Less. ; (b) for **locō**, see **XXXI. n. 9**.

8. **paucī**, for use, see **XXIX. n. 6 (b)**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Lat. as in Eng., several nouns may be governed by the same prep.

2. **Capio**, *I take*, **facio**, *I make*, **gradior**, *I go*, **morior**, *I die*, **patior**, *I suffer*, and their compounds, and some others not yet found in the text, are of the 3d conjug., though having the vowels **-io** in the pres. ind. 1st. sing. like the 4th conjug. The following forms, all based on the pres. stem, are of the 4th conjug. in both act. and pass.: the pres. ind. 1st sing. and 3d plur., the impf. and fut. ind. and pres. subj., throughout, and the 3d plur. of the fut. imperative; also the pres. act. partic., the gerund, and gerundive. All other forms drop the **i**, and are of the 3d conjug.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The interrog. adj. **quī** . . . A. & G. 104. H. 188, II. and 1.
2. Conjug. of **capere** . . . A. & G. p. 83. H. 217, 218, 219.
3. The comp. meaning *too* rather than *more*. A. & G. 93, a. H. 444, 1.
4. The pf. pass. partic. after **habēre** . . . A. & G. 292, c. H. 388, 1, x.
5. Collective nouns with agreement of plurals . . . A. & G. 205, c. H. 461, 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **agmen** (**agere**), *that which is set in motion, an army on the march, a line (of march); novissimum agmen, the newest or last line, the rear.*
2. **aliēnus** (**alius**), *belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.*
3. **cadere**, **cecidit**, **cāsūrus**, *to fall*
4. **cupidē** (*cf.* adj. **cupidus**), *eagerly.*
5. **equitātus**, **-ūs**, *a collection of horsemen, cavalry.*

6. **hostis**, *a stranger, an enemy* ;
in plur., *the enemy*.
7. **insequi**, **-secutus**, *to follow*
up.
8. **movēre**, **mōvit**, **mōtus**, *to*
move.
9. **pauci** (sing. very rare), *few*.
10. **posterus** (**post**), *coming after*,
following.
11. **præmittere**, **-mīsīt**, **-missus**,
to send before.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Decline together **posterō diē**, **eō locō**, **equitātum omnem**, **omnī prōvinciā**, **novissimum agmen**. (b) Synopsis of **facit**, 3d sing. act. and pass. (c) Decline **quī**.

2. (a) Cæsar had with him as cavalry four thousand men. (b) Those men who had been collected out of all the province he sent ahead. (c) Having attacked the enemy in an unfavorable place, they were defeated. (d) Cæsar sent the cavalry to follow up the enemy.

3. (a) A few of the cavalry fell, since they had joined battle in a very unfavorable place. (b) Cæsar told Divico that if the Helvetii would do what they had promised he would make peace with them. (c) When hostages had been given, Cæsar established friendship with the nearest states, and levied several legions upon them.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The conjug of **impedire** and **facere** compared in the pres. system. 2. The Lat. for *a more eager line follows*, and *he follows the line more eagerly*. 3. The Eng. for **novæ rēs**, **novissimum agmen**. 4. Lat. for *a soldier, a leader, a lieutenant, an enemy, the enemy*. 5. Difference between **īdem** and **idem**. 6. When the pres. and when the impf. subjv. is used in a purpose clause. 7. The emphasis in the sentence **Idem facit Cæsar**. 8. Comparison of **cupidius** as adj.; as adv.

LESSON LV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 15**, quō prœliō to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **sublātī** ; pf. pass. partic., from **tollere**, means *raised* (in spirit), *elated*.

2. **equitibus** ; for use, cf. **legiōne mīlitibusque XXXIV.** and **H. 415**, I. 1.

3. **equitum** ; why not **equitium** ?

4. **agmine** ; for use as abl. of place without a prep., cf. **Gram. Less.**

5. **nostrōs** ; for use, cf. **suīs XLVII.**

6. **cœpērunt** ; lacks the pres. system ; see **Gram. Less.**

7. **prohibēre** : (a) obj. of **habēbat**, which here means *he held* in sense of *regarded* ; (b) **satis**, which has here the force of a predicate noun, is an accus. in agreement with **prohibēre** ; (c) **hostem**, the obj. of **prohibēre**, means *each one of the enemy* ; our Eng. expression, *the enemy*, is plur. in sense, and is generally represented in Lat. By the plur., cf. **hostēs LIV.** ; (d) contrast **ā prœliō** and **rapīnīs**, and cf. **IX. n. 15 (c) (d)**.

8. **fēcērunt** : (a) for const. of preceding **diēs**, cf. **XX. n. 3 (b)**. How do you know that it is not a nom. ? (b) case of **iter** here ? gen. sing. ?

9. **prīmum** ; limits what word understood ?

10. **interesset** : (a) why subjv. ? (b) its subj. is **amplius**, which is in form a neut. comp. ; (c) **mīlibus** is the abl. case after the comp. **amplius** ; **quam**, *than*, being omitted, and the abl. translated by *than* ; (d) **quīnīs** and **sēnīs** are distributive adj. meaning *five* and *six* to each or at a time (cf. **singulī XXIX.**) ; used here to show that the armies were five or six miles apart on each day ; (e) with **quīnī**,

nom., *cf.* **quīnque**, *five*, **quīndecim**, *above* (**quīnque** and **decem**), *fifteen*, **quīnquāgintā** (like **octōgintā** XVII.), **quīngentī** (nom. of **quīngentīs**, *above*), **ducenta** XVII. N. 9, **quīntus**, *fifth*.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. The cardinal numbers from **quattuor** to **centum** are indecl.; the multiples of *ten* from *thirty* to *ninety* end in **-gintā**; the multiples of *one hundred* from *two* to *nine hundred* end in **-centī** (**centum**), changed after **n** to **-gentī**, and are declined. Almost all the names of cardinals, ordinals, and distributives are derived in some way from the first ten cardinals.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjug. of **cœpit** A. & G. 143, *a.* H. 297.
2. The cardinals to **mīlle** A. & G. 94. H. 174.
3. The use of distributives. . . . A. & G. 95 and H. 174, 2, 1).
a.
4. The abl. after comp. without
quam A. & G. 247 and H. 417 and 1).
a.
5. The abl. of place without a
prep. A. & G. 258, *f.* H. 425, II. 1,
1) and 2).

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. amplus , <i>ample, much, great</i> ;
adv., amplē . | 7. laccessere , laccessīvit or laccessiit , laccessitus , <i>to provoke, assail.</i> |
| 2. audācter , <i>boldly</i> . | 8. populātio (populārī), <i>a laying waste, ravaging.</i> |
| 3. circiter , adv., <i>about</i> . | 9. præsentia (præ and esse),
<i>a being present, presence</i> ;
in præsentīā , <i>at present.</i> |
| 4. cœpit , cœpisse , (<i>he, she, it</i>)
<i>began</i> . | 10. prōpellere , -pult , -pulsus ,
<i>to drive before.</i> |
| 5. eques , equitis (equus , <i>a horse</i>), <i>a horseman, a knight.</i> | 11. pābulātio (pābulārī), <i>a getting of food, a foraging.</i> |
| 6. interesse , interfuit , <i>to be between or among, to take part in</i> ; interest , <i>it makes a difference, it interests.</i> | |

12. **quīndecim** (**quīnque** and **de-**
cem), *fifteen*.
13. **quīngentī**, *five hundred*.
14. **quīnī**, distributive, *five to each*,
five at a time.
15. **rapīna** (**rapere**, *to seize*),
plunder.
16. **sēnī** (**sex**), distributive, *six to*
each, six at a time.
17. **subsistere**, **-stitit**, *to make a*
stand, resist.
18. **tantus**, adj., *so much, so great*.¹

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Give all forms of **continēbat** in both act. and pass. which are based on the pres. stem, using 3d sing. in ind. and subjv.; in other words, give a synopsis of **continēbat** in the pres. system. (b) Decline **praelium**, **eques**, **agmen**, **pābulatio**, and give the rules for the gender of the last two. (c) Compare **amplus**, **amplē**, **audācter**.

2. (a) The Helvetii were elated by this battle. (b) It will be enough for Cæsar to keep his soldiers from battle and restrain the enemy from foraging. (c) The horsemen who were driven forward by the Helvetii were not Romans but Gauls. (d) Five hundred Helvetii are not able to drive before (them) four thousand Romans.

3. (a) The Helvetii began to think that they could make a stand and wage war upon the Romans. (b) The multitude of Helvetii was so great that Cæsar did not attack it in an unfavorable place with his legions. (c) The armies were marching in such a way that the rear of the enemy was five miles distant from the van (first line) of the Romans. (d) Cæsar says that the horsemen ought not to attack the rear of the other army so boldly.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The different kinds of numerals. 2. Eng. words derived from the first ten cardinals. 3. Lat. for *the line* or *army on the march*, *the van*, *the rear*. 4. The case used when **quam** is expressed. 5. The 3d decl. nouns which have **i** in the gen. plur. 6. Meaning of

¹ Note how many words in this Vocab. are related to other Lat. words. The student must not forget to prepare himself with related Eng. words.

nostrī, nostra, suī, sua, as nouns in the plur. 7. Cases which have the same form in the **-ē** decl. 8. In the **-u** decl. 9. The use of **passuum** in connection with **mīlia**. 10. All the numerals which contain the syllable **sex**. 11. Difference between the abl. of means and the abl. of voluntary agent. 12. Between the accus. and abl. of time.

LESSON LVI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 16**, through **adesse, dīcere**.

2. NOTES.

1. **flāgitāre** : (a) though an inf. its subj. is the nom. **Cæsar**, and it is translated like the ind., *Cæsar kept earnestly asking or kept importuning*. Such an inf. is used in animated narrative, and is called the historical inf.; (b) it has two objects, — **Hæduōs**, the name of the persons who are asked, and **frūmentum**, the name of the thing asked for; with certain words a similar const. occurs in Eng., *e. g.* in the expression *he asks the boy the way*, *boy* has the same const. as **Hæduōs** and *way* the same const. as **frūmentum**; (c) **essent** in the subordinate clause is subjv., because of the idea of saying implied in **flāgitāre**; *Cæsar asked for the corn which, as he said, was promised*.

2. **ut . . . dictum est**; for **ut** with ind., *cf.* XXV. N. 6.

3. **frūmenta in agrīs**; note that the plur. is here used for the grain in the fields, while the harvested grain for which Cæsar asks the Hædui is **frūmentum**. Why should the plur. be more appropriate for the standing grain?

4. **subvēxerat**; note that **flūmine** and **nāvibus** are both necessary means in bringing up the grain.

5. **poterat**: (a) followed by the complementary inf. **ūtī**; (b) const. of **frūmentō**? XXVIII. N. 2.

6. **dūcere**: (a) historical inf.; (b) **diem** is not its obj. but an accus. of time; (c) **ex**, *out of*, has here the force of *after*, **diem ex-**

diē, *day after day*; (*d*) **dūcere** has **Cæsarem** understood as its obj., and means *to put off, to delay*.

7. **cōnferri**: (*a*) pres. inf. pass.; note the doubling of the **r**; (*b*) cf. **differunt** IV., **efferre** (for **efferere**) XXVIII., **intulerat** XLIV., **ferre** (for **ferere**) XLVII., **fero**, dir. disc., XLIX., **tulisse** LI. and **sublātī** LV. (which though not from **ferre**, shows the supine stem of that verb); note that the three stems **fere-**, **tul-** and **lāt-** have no common base, and that final **-e** of the pres. stem is sometimes dropped.

8. **dīcere**: (*a*) historical inf., its subj. is **Hæduī**; (*b*) **cōnferri**, **comportārī**, **adesse**, inf. in indir. disc.; subj., **frūmentum** understood.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjug. of **ferre** A. & G. 139. H. 292 and 1, 1), 2).
2. Two accus. with verbs of asking and teaching A. & G. 239, c. H. 374.
3. The historical inf. . . . A. & G. 275 and H. 536, 1 and Rem. N.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **adesse**, -**fruit**, *to be near, to be present, to assist*.
2. **āvertere**, -**vertit**, -**versus**, *to turn away*.
3. **comportāre**, *to carry together*.
4. **cōnferre**, **tulit**, **collātus**, *to bring together, to collect, to compare*; where **con** is intensive, *to bring vigorously or rapidly* **sē cōnferre**, *to betake one's self*. (In this lesson **cōnferri** evidently means *is being collected* among the **Hædui**, **comportārī**, *is being brought together* to **Cæsar**.)
5. **cotīdiē** or **quotīdiē**, *daily*.
6. **flāgitāre**, *to ask repeatedly or earnestly*.
7. **frīgus**, -**oris**, *cold*; in plur. with same meaning.
8. **interim**, *meanwhile*.
9. **mātūrus**, *ripe, early*.
10. **modo**, adv., *only*.
11. **nōlle**, **nōluit** (**nē** and **velle**), *to be unwilling*.
12. **pābulum** (**pāscere**, *to feed, pasture*), *that which feeds, food, especially for animals, fodder*.

13. **pōnere, posuit, positus, to place.**

14. **publicē, publicly, by public authority.**

15. **quidem, indeed; in Cæsar mostly in the phrase *nē* . . .**

quidem enclosing the emphatic word, thus ***nē Cæsar quidem, not even Cæsar.***

16. **subvehere, -vēxit, -vectus, to carry from below, i.e. to carry up.**

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Analyze **pollicitī, suppetēbat, subvēxerat.** (b) Synopsis of **āverterant** in pf. system. (c) Principal parts of **pollicitī essent, flāgitāre, ūtī.** (d) Decline **frīgora, septentriōnibus, nāvibus.**

2. (a) The Hædui did not bring the grain which they had promised. (b) Cæsar kept asking for the grain, because (as he said) the supply of food which he had was not sufficiently great. (c) The ships which were carrying the grain were left (behind) when Cæsar turned away from the river. (d) The cold is greater in Gaul than in Italia, because Gaul stretches toward the north.

3. (a) Cæsar turned away from the river, in order to follow up the Helvetii. (b) The great number of beasts of burden, which were drawing the wagons of the Helvetii, had consumed all the fodder. (c) Having used very much fodder, Cæsar asked the Hædui for the grain which they were collecting. (d) Cæsar asked the Hædui to bring the largest possible supply of fodder.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Different gen. endings possible for nouns in **-us**. 2. Meaning and position of ***nē* . . . *quidem***. 3. Difference in meaning between **frūmentum** and **frūmenta**. 4. Analysis of **poterat**. 5. Meaning of **cōpia** in plur. 6. Exact meaning of the word translated *north*. 7. How does this exact meaning explain the use of **sub** before it instead of **in**. 8. Two meanings of **ut** and two modes used after it. 9. Different ways of saying *because of* in Lat. 10. Difference in the two accus. after a verb of asking. 11. Case of the subj. of the historical inf.

LESSON LVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G.** I. 16, **Ubi** sē to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **intellēxit**: (a) follows **ubi**, *when*; cf. instances of the use of **ubi** in XXVII. XXXII. XXXV. XLIII.; what mode and tense follow **ubi** in all these instances? (b) **diūtius** is the comp. of **diū**, with sense of *too* rather than *more*; cf. **cupidius** XLIV.; (c) **dūcī** is used in same sense as in preceding lesson; subj.? voice?

2. **oportēret**: (a) for use, cf. XXIV. n. 3; for meaning, cf. **concedendum** XXXIII., **dēbuerint** XL.; (b) **quō diē**; cf. **quibus itiueribus** XXIX.; (c) **mīlitibus**; for case, see XXII. Obs. 3.

3. **eōrum**; antec.?

4. **Divitiacō, Liscō**; form an abl. absolute const. with **convocātis** to be supplied.

5. **præerat**; for dat. used with it, cf. XIX. n. 12 (c).

6. **vergobretum**; accens. in apposition with **quem**; **magistrātui**, just before, means the *magistracy* (*office* not *officer*), and the antec. of **quem** is **Liscō**.

7. **Hæduī**. How does its position at the end of the clause modify the meaning of the sentence?

8. **annuus**; adj., agreeing with **quī**.

9. **in suōs**; *into, toward, over his* (*countrymen*), not *among his* (*countrymen*), which would be **in suīs** or **apud suōs**; cf. **in hīs**, just before, and **apud Helvētiōs** XIII.

10. **graviter**; adv., formed by adding the ending **-ter** to **gravi-**, the stem of the corresponding adj.; cf. the comp. **gravius** XLIX.

11. **accūsāt**; the principal verb of the sentence; note how the reader is kept in suspense until preliminary statements are brought in.

12. **posset**: (a) for mode, cf. XLIV. n. 5; (b) the subj. is **frūmentum** to be supplied.

13. *propinquīs hostibus* : for const., *cf.* *Sēquanīs invitīs* XXXVI.

14. *sublevētur* : (a) mode and tense? why? *cf.* *accūsāt* and LVI. N. 1 (c); (b) the subj. is *Cæsar*.

15. *māgnā ex parte*, *out of* or *from a great part*, freely, *in a great measure, largely*; note position of prep.

16. *suscēperit* : (a) pf. subjv.; another tense with same form? (b) for reason of mode, *cf.* XL. N. 2 (b).

17. *multō gravius*; for *multō*, *cf.* XXVII. N. 1.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. Many adj. with stems ending in *-ī* form the positive of the corresponding adv. by adding *-ter* to this stem; most adj. with masc. stems in *-o* form the positive of the adv. by changing *-o* of the stem to *-ē*; both adv. in *-ē* and those in *-ter* have the comp. like the nom. sing. neut. of the corresponding adj. and usually form the sup. by changing final *-um* of the neut. sup. of the adj. to *-ē*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Difference in meaning of the same prep. when used with different cases A. & G. 152, c. H. 435 and N. 1.
2. Mode and tense used after *ubi* A. & G. 324. H. 518 and N. 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>accūsāre</i> (<i>ad</i> and <i>causa</i>), <i>to call to account, to blame, to accuse.</i> | 6. <i>emere, ēmit, emptus</i> , <i>to buy.</i> |
| 2. <i>annuus</i> (<i>annus</i>), <i>annual, yearly.</i> | 7. <i>graviter</i> , <i>heavily, severely.</i> |
| 3. <i>convocāre</i> , <i>to call together, summon.</i> | 8. <i>īnstāre, -stitit, -stātūrus</i> , <i>to stand upon, to approach, to press upon.</i> |
| 4. <i>creāre</i> , <i>to make, to elect.</i> | 9. <i>mētīrī, mēnsus</i> , <i>to measure.</i> |
| 5. <i>dēstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus</i> , <i>to set away from, to abandon.</i> | 10. <i>nex, necis</i> , <i>death, especially a violent death.</i> |
| | 11. <i>potestās (posse)</i> , <i>power, lawful authority.</i> |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 12. præesse , - fruit , to be over, to command; cf. præficere , to put in command. | 17. sublevāre , to lift up from beneath, to aid. |
| 13. præsertim , especially. | 18. summus (irreg. sup. of superus), highest. |
| 14. precēs , prayers. | 19. vergobretus , the title of the chief magistrate among the Hædui. |
| 15. propinquus , near; as noun, a relative. | 20. vīta , life. |
| 16. querī , questus , to complain. | |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Synopsis of **mētīrī**¹ and **suscēperit** in pres. system. (b) Synopsis of perfect system of **emere**. (c) Synopsis of supine system of **accūsāre**. (d) Compare **gravius**, grave, **gravis**. (e) Decline **nex**, **diēs**, **magistrātus**.

2. (a) The chief magistrate among the Hædui is called by them vergobretus. (b) Cæsar ought to measure out grain to-day (this day). (c) Although Cæsar cannot buy grain or take it from the fields, yet the Hædui do not bring together into the camp the grain which they have promised.

3. (a) Cæsar, influenced by the prayers of the Hædui, has enrolled his legions (abl. absolute) and is waging war. (b) Cæsar was much more angry, because the Hædui had put him off day after day. (c) Cæsar could not use the grain which was in the ships, because he had marched away from the river. (d) Many chiefs of Gaul who had followed Cæsar were in the camp.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference in form and meaning between **emit** and **ēmit**. 2. Two ways of forming adv. from adj. 3. Difference between **in castra** and **in castrīs**. 4. Two meanings of **magistrātus**. 5. Three verbs meaning *to command* and one meaning *to put in command*. 6. Two words meaning *when* and the const. used with each. 7. How to say *when* in Lat. without using any word meaning *when*. 8. Two

¹ Where no pers. or number is mentioned, the 3d sing. may be used in the ind. and subjv.

possible meanings of **diūtius**; four possible meanings of **gravius**. 9. Peculiarity in use of **oportēret**. 10. Three ways of expressing obligation. 11. Difference between Lat. and Eng. as to the number of particulars included in any one sentence. 12. The tense of the subjv. which is used after a pres. ind. to express incomplete action; to express complete action. 13. Eng. words derived from some form of **convocāre**, **appellāre**, **emere**, **mētīrī**.

LESSON LVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 17**, through **imperia præferre**;

Before translating this Text, review once more the text of Chap. **13** and **14**.

2. NOTES.

1. **prōpōnit**: (*a*) its obj. is **id** understood, which is the antec. of **quod**; (*b*) **quod** is the obj. of **tacuerat**; which is here transitive.

2. **esse**; why inf., and what is the dir. form?

3. **plūrimum valeat**; for meaning, cf. **plūrimum possent** XXII.

4. **magistrātūs**: (*a*) a nom. plur., has the same const. as the **quī** before **quam**, *i. e.* it is the subj. of **possint** to be supplied; lit. translation from **quī**, *who can more than the magistrates themselves (can)*; (*b*) reason for mode of **possint**? for tense? (*c*) **plūs** is the irreg. neut. comp. of **multum** and **plūrimum**.

5. **cōferant**: (*a*) for const., cf. XXV. N. 1; (*b*) for the use of plur. number here, cf. LIV. N. 4 (*d*).

6. **dēbeant**: (*a*) used with complementary inf. **præstāre**, which here means *to furnish*; (*b*) antec. of **quod**?

7. **præferre**: (*a*) the subj. is **sē**, referring to **nonnullōs**, *i. e.* to the influential Hæduan chiefs who were unfriendly to the Romans; (*b*) these chiefs say to the multitude, *if we cannot any longer hold the chief place of Gaul, we choose the rule of the Gauls (i. e. to be ruled by the Gauls) rather than the rule of the Romans.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Irreg. comparison of the adj.
exterus, superus, māgnus,
parvus, multus, propior,
ulterior A. & G. 90, 91 H. 163, 3; 165
and a. and N. 1;
166.
2. Comparatives with *quam* . . . A. & G. 208, *a*; II. 417, 1, 444,
247, a. 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>anteā</i>, adv., <i>before</i>. 2. <i>dēmum</i>, <i>at last</i>. 3. <i>dēterrēre</i>, reg., <i>to frighten away from, to deter</i>. 4. <i>improbus</i>, <i>above or below the proper standard, base, excessive, wicked</i>. 5. <i>plūs, plūris</i> (neut. comp. of <i>multus</i>), <i>more</i>. 6. <i>præferre, -tulit, -lātus</i>, <i>to bear before, to prefer, to choose</i>. 7. <i>prīvātim</i>, <i>privately, as private citizens</i>. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. <i>prōpōnere, -posuit, -positus</i>, <i>to put or set forth, to declare</i>. 9. <i>sēditiōsus</i>, <i>seditionous</i>. 10. <i>tacēre</i>, reg., <i>to be silent</i>; also sometimes transitive, <i>to be silent about, to pass over in silence</i>. 11. <i>tum</i>, adv., <i>of time, then</i>. 12. <i>valēre, valuit, valitūrus</i>, <i>to be strong or powerful, to avail</i>. |
|---|---|

5. EXERCISES.

1. Write first the Eng. and then the Lat. of the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (a) Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was more powerful than Liscus himself. (b) When Cæsar ordered grain to be brought together, some did not do what he ordered. (c) Some were persuading the multitude not to bring grain to Cæsar. (d) Cæsar was informed by Liscus that some of the chiefs were unfriendly to the Romans.

3. (a) The multitude, (because) influenced by the reckless talk of the chiefs who desired revolution, did not bring the grain to the camp.

(*b*) The common people ought to furnish the grain which they have promised. (*c*) When Cæsar has called together the chiefs, he asks for the grain. (*d*) All prefer the rule of their own (countrymen) to (than) the rule of strangers (*aliēnus*, as noun).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of *tacēre* and formation of its stems. 2. Gender and decl. of *plūs*. 3. What *quam* connects in each instance of its use in the Text of this lesson. 4. Difference in form and meaning of *possunt*, *possint*, *possent*, *poterunt*, *poterant*, *potuērunt*. 5. Antec. of the pronouns in this lesson. 6. Two cases in which the form *ipsī* is found. 7. How to decide whether *quod* means *because* or *which*. 8. A transitive and an intransitive meaning of *tacēre*. 9. Eng. words related to *tacēre*, *prōpōnere*, *valēre*, *plūs*. 10. What subjv. in the passage are so simply because they are in indir. disc., and what are subjv. in dir. disc.?

LESSON LIX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, *B. G. I. 17*, neque *dubitāre* to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. *dēbeant*: (*a*) the brackets about this word indicate that it probably does not belong in the Text; it may be omitted in translation; (*b*) *dubitāre* is therefore the principal verb of indir. disc.; it has the same subj. as *præferre* in preceding lesson.

2. *superāverint*: (*a*) a pf. subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc. after the primary tense, *prōpōnit*; (*b*) changed from a fut. pf. ind. in dir. disc., where, however, its form was the same; for a fut. pf. quoted after a secondary tense, cf. XLVI. n. 3 (*b*) (*c*) (*d*); (*e*) conjug. and analysis of form?

3. **sint ēreptūrī**: (a) **sint** is in the subjv. after **quīn** in both the dir. and indir. disc.; cf. XXII. N. 7 (b) and XXV. N. 8 (b); (b) note how **Rōmānī**, which is the subj. of **sint**, is drawn to the end of the preceding clause, and cf. XXXVI. N. 2 (b) and A. & G. 344, b; (c) **ūnā** before **cum** is an adv. meaning *together*; cf. **ūnā cum** XXVIII.; (d) for meaning of **reliquā**, cf. IX. N. 5 (b); (e) **Hæduīs** is here a dat. with **ēreptūrī**; see Gram. Less.; (f) **ēreptūrī** is from **ēripere** a verb in -io of the 3d conjug.; what partic.? how different from **ēreptī**?

4. **nūntiārī**: (a) the subj. are **cōnsilia** and the clause **quæ . . . gerantur**, **quæ** meaning here *whatever* or *those things which*; (b) **gerantur** means *are done*; why subjv.?

5. **posse**: (a) which of the inf. in this clause is the principal verb of ind. disc.? which complementary? (b) the antec. of **sē** is the subj. of the verb of saying in LVIII.

6. **ēnūntiārit** for **ēnūntiāverit**; pf. subjv. after **quod**, *because*; this substantive **quod** clause is used as an adv. accus.; cf. L. N. 5 (a).

7. **intellegere sēsē**: (a) in dir. disc. **intellego**, *I know*; (b) introduced by **quīn**, which means *nay more, in fact*; not *that* or *but that*, which is its meaning when followed by the subjv.

8. **fēcerit**: (a) for mode, cf. XLIII. N. 2 (c), Gram. Less.; (b) preceded by what interrogative word, and what does that word limit? (c) why pf.? (d) its obj. **id** has the **quod** clause for its antec.

9. **quam diū**, *as long as*.

10. **tacuisse**; here intrans.; cf. the trans. **tacuerat** LVIII.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The use of **quīn** with the subjv. A. & G. 332, g H. 501, II. 2; and Rem. 504.
2. The adv. use of the substantive **quod** clause A. & G. 333,¹a. H. 516,¹ II. 2, N.
3. The dat. with certain verbs of taking away A. & G. 229. H. 386, 2; 385, II. 2.

¹ Study examples and note their translation.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. coërcēre , reg., to hold on all sides, restrain, coerce. | 5. quantus , adj. (quam , <i>how</i>), <i>how great, as much as</i> ; after |
| 2. dubitāre , to doubt, to hesitate. | tantus (<i>so great</i>), quantus may be translated as. |
| 3. libertās , freedom, liberty. | |
| 4. necessāriō , adv., necessarily, of necessity. | 6. quīn , conj., when used with the ind., <i>but, nay more, in fact</i> . |

5. EXERCISES.

1. Write in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. for the indir. in this lesson.

2. (a) If the Romans shall overcome (shall have overcome) the Helvetii, they will take away the liberty of the Hædui. (b) Liscus, although he was vergobretus, could not restrain these reckless men. (c) These same (men) inform the enemy that Cæsar has not a large enough supply of fodder. (d) Cæsar asks Liscus how great a number of the common people are influenced by the reckless speeches of these men.

3. (a) (When) compelled to speak, Liscus sets forth the plans of those who are unfriendly to the Romans. (b) Liscus began to set forth these things, because Cæsar had rebuked him sternly. (c) Cæsar himself will punish these chiefs, that others may not do the same (thing).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The tense sign **-eri-**. 2. Cases possible for the form **quæ**. 3. For **sē**. 4. Meaning of **quam**, **tam**, **quantus**, **tantus**. 5. The endings **-us** and **-ūrus**. 6. Two meanings of **quīn**. 7. Of **ūnā**. 8. Of **quam**. 9. How fut. time is represented in the subjv. 10. Mode and tense of **gerantur**, **geruntur**, **gerentur**. 11. Four interrogative words learned thus far? 12. The best translation for the clause **quod . . . ēnuntiārit**. 13. Analysis of **tacuisse**, **superāverint**.

LESSON LX.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 18, through *audeat nemo*.

2. NOTES.

1. *frātre*: (*a*) stem *frātr-*, nom. *frāter*, — the *e* before *r* being developed in the effort to pronounce the stem; (*b*) with stem *frātr-*, *cf.* stem *agro-* (*cf.* *agru-m* for *agro-m* XV.); here *-o* of the stem is dropped and *e* is developed in the nom. as in *fratr-*, giving *ager* as the nom. of stem *agro-*; (*c*) in *alter-um* XXIX. the nom. is formed from the stem by simply dropping the *-o*, thus stem *altero-* gives nom. *alter*.

2. *plūribus præsenti*: (*a*) for const., *cf.* *Sēquanīs invītīs* XXXVI.; (*b*) *plūribus*, from nom. plur. masc. *plūrēs*, means here *many*.

3. *celeriter*: (*a*) for formation, *cf.* LVII. N. 10; (*b*) the nom. masc. of the corresponding adj. is *celer*; the sup. of *celeriter* is *celerrimē* or *celerrumē*; *cf.* *ægerrumē* XLV. and LVII. Obs. 1.

4. *sōlō*: (*a*) agrees with *eō* understood referring to *Liscus*; (*b*) the gen. and dat. sing. are like those of *tōtus*.

5. *conventū*: (*a*) the nom. sing. *conventus* means, primarily, *a coming together*, *i. e.* the ending *-tus* names the action of the verb *convenīre*; *cf.* XXVII. N. 6, XXXII. N. 1; (*b*) the form is the same in the nom. as the masc. of the pf. pass. partic.

6. *esse vēra*: (*a*) the subj. of *esse* is *ea*, *those things*, to be supplied; (*b*) why inf. in *esse*? (*c*) case of *vēra* and why?

7. *ipsum*; in the sense of *very one* rather than *himself*; (*he finds out*) *that Dumnorix is the very man*.

8. *audāciā*; the name of a quality formed from the adj. *audāx* by the addition of *-ia* to the stem; before *i* of the ending, *-i* of the stem is dropped; thus, *audāc-ia*; *cf.* XIX. N. 2.

9. **grātiā**: (*a*) qualified by the preceding **māgnā**; (*b*) for const. and also for that of **audāciā**, *cf.* XXX. N. 2.

10. **vectīgālia**; accus. plur. neut. from nom. sing. **vectīgāl**.

11. **redempta habēre**: (*a*) for use, *cf.* LIV. N. 3 (*b*) (*c*); (*b*) **pretiō**; this word tells at how much he bought the revenues; it is called an abl. of price; the abl. of price is closely related to the abl. of means or instrument.

12. **licente**: (*a*) a pres. act. partic. from verb **licē-rī**; its nom. is **licē-ns**; *cf.* **ori-ē-ns**, **inopīnā-ns**, and note that though the verbs are of different conjug. the ending is the same in each; (*b*) forms with **illō** an abl. absolute const., *he bidding* or *while he was bidding*; this is the first pres. partic. which has been used as such in the text thus far; other words having the forms of pres. partic. were adj. in all respects; (*c*) note that **licērī**, though dep. and therefore pass. in form, has the pres. act. partic. **licente**.

13. **nēmo**; force of position?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A few stems in **-ro** and **-ero** have the nom. masc. in **-er**. Those thus far used are as follows; stems in **-ro**; **ager**, **noster**, **vester**, **æger**, **uter**; in **-ero**; **socer**, **alter**, **līber**.¹

2. The pres. act. partic. is used in Lat. only to represent the action as actually going on at the time of the principal verb, and never loosely as in Eng. to describe an action which preceded that of the principal verb.² This partic. ends in **-ns** in all conjug.

¹ Adj. in **-er** have forms in **-a** and **-um**; thus, **alter**, **altera**, **alterum**, **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**.

² In the Eng. sentence "Hobbling to the door he found it locked," the pres. partic. "hobbling" is evidently used to describe an act which preceded the finding of the door locked. A Roman would have used instead of "hobbling," a pf. partic. or a temporal clause meaning *when he had hobbled to the door*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of neuters in **-al** . . . A. & G. **52**, ani- H. **63**, ani-
mal. mal.
2. Decl. of nouns and adj. with
stems in **-ro** and **-ero** . . . A. & G. **38**, puer, H. **51**, puer,
ager and n. ager and 2,
near bottom 1), 4), 5);
of p. 16; **82**. **149**, **150**.
3. The decl. of the pres. act. partic. A. & G. **85**, *b*, H. **157**, *amāns*.
iēns.
4. Sup. of adj. in **-er** and adv.
formed from them. . . . A. & G. **89**, *a*; H. **163**, *1*;
92; *miserē*. **306** and **2**.
5. The partic. of dep. verbs . . . A. & G. **135** H. **231**, **1**, **232**.
and *a*.
6. The name of the quality in **-ia**,
-tia, **-tās**, **-tūdo** A. & G. **163**, *e*. H. **325** and **1**.
7. **Ipse**, meaning *very* A. & G. **195**, *f*, H. **452**, **2**.
Rem.
8. The time denoted by the partic. A. & G. **290**. H. **550**.
9. The abl. of price A. & G. **252**. H. **422**.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. audācia (audāx), <i>boldness</i> ,
<i>audacity</i> . | 6. conventus , -ūs , <i>a coming to-</i>
<i>gether, a meeting</i> . |
| 2. audēre , ausus est , ¹ <i>to dare</i> . | 7. dēsignāre (sīgnum <i>a mark</i>), <i>to</i>
<i>mark out, point out, describe</i> . |
| 3. celeriter , celerius , celerrimē ,
<i>quickly</i> . | 8. dīmittere , -mīsīt , -missus , <i>to</i>
<i>send apart, to dismiss</i> . |
| 4. concilium , <i>an assembly, coun-</i>
<i>cil</i> ; cf. cōnsilium , <i>a plan,</i>
<i>counsel</i> . | 9. jactāre , <i>to throw about</i> ; when
used of words, <i>to discuss</i> . |
| 5. contrā , adv. and prep. with
accus., <i>against</i> . | 10. līberālītās (līber , <i>free</i>) <i>the qual-</i>
<i>ity of a freeman, generosity</i> |

¹ Dep. in the pf. system, though not in the pres. Such verbs are called semi-deponent.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 11. liberē (from adj. liber), <i>freely</i> . | 18. quærere, quæsivit or -iit, quæsitus , <i>to seek</i> ; cf. queri , <i>to complain</i> . |
| 12. licēri , reg., <i>to bid (at an auction)</i> . | 19. redimere, -ēmit, -emptus , <i>to buy back, to buy up</i> . |
| 13. nēmo, nēmini dat. (nē and homo), <i>no man, no one</i> ; the gen. and abl. sing. of this word are supplied by nullius and nullō . | 20. reperire, reperit, repertus , <i>to find out</i> . |
| 14. parvus, minor, minimus , <i>little, small</i> . | 21. retinere, -tinuit, -tentus , <i>to hold back</i> . |
| 15. portorium (portāre) , <i>a tax, especially a tax paid on goods imported</i> . | 22. sēcrētō , <i>separately, in private</i> . |
| 16. præsēns (in form a partic. from præesse), <i>present, immediate</i> . | 23. sōlus (gen. -ius , dat. -i), <i>alone</i> . |
| 17. pretium , <i>a price</i> . | 24. sentire, sēnsit, sēnsus , <i>to feel, to perceive, to think</i> . |
| | 25. vectīgal , <i>tax, revenue</i> . |
| | 26. vērus , <i>true, right</i> . |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Synopsis of **licēri** in 3d plur. ind. and subjv. (b) Write the Eng. and then the Lat. of the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (a) After very quickly dismissing the council, Cæsar ordered Liscus to speak freely. (b) Those (things) which were said in the council are true. (c) Cæsar did not allow these things to be discussed when many were present. (d) Among the chiefs who were in the camp Cæsar found enemies of the Romans.

3. (a) When Dumnorix is a bidder, the rest do not dare to buy up the taxes. (b) Which field (of the two) is ours? (It) is the other. (c) Dumnorix was a man of so great popularity among the common people that the magistrates could not restrain him. (d) Having bought up the taxes at a very small price, Dumnorix tried to obtain very much money (**pecūnia**).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Formation of the nom. from the stems **agro-**, **socero-**, **patr-**.
2. The formation of the adv. from the adj., in each degree.
3. The

form, decl., and use of the pres. partic. 4. The neut. of **noster**, **alter**, **māgnus**, **gravior**, **gravis**, **licēns**. 5. The fem. of each of the foregoing. 6. Difference in use of the final letters **-ia** in **vectigāl-ia** and **audāc-ia**. 7. Definition of **gravi-tās**, **dēsīgnā-tio**, **vēri-tās**, **accūsā-tio**, **mōtus**, **-ūs**, **forti-tūdo**. 8. Collect from Chap. 12-18 the names of qualities and the names of actions which they contain. 9. The comparison of **multus**, **parvus**, **māgnus**. 10. Other Lat. words related to **audēre**, **liberē**.

LESSON LXI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 18, **Hīs rēbus** through **cīvitātēs collocāsse**.

2. NOTES.

1. **comparāsse**; (*a*) full form? (*b*) the subj. is **Dumnorigem** to be supplied; (*c*) **hīs rēbus** is an abl. of means with **comparāsse** and **auxisse**; **Dumnorix** had made money by farming the taxes; (*d*) **et . . . et**, both . . . and; (*e*) **ad largiendum**; for form, cf. XVIII. N. 6; it here expresses purpose like **ad rēs cōficiendās** XIX.

2. **sūptū**, *expense*; for its derivation from **sūmere**, cf. LX. N. 5; **sūmere** as the basis of this word means *to take* from one's means for some purpose, *i. e. to spend*.

3. **neque** = **et non**, *and not*.

4. **domī**, *at home*; the ending **-ī** is not here that of the gen., but the ending of a case which occurs in comparatively few Lat. words; this case is called the "locative" because it denotes the place (**locus**) in which.

5. **largiter posse**, *can largely, has influence*; cf. **plūrimum possent** XXII., **plūs possint** LVIII.

6. **collocāsse**, *has placed, has given in marriage*: (*a*) **hūjus potentiæ causā**, *because of, or for the sake of this power, i. e. in*

order to secure this power; the phrase expresses purpose; (*b*) for case of *causā*, cf. XVI. N. 2 (*c*); (*c*) for case of *hominī*, cf. XXII. Obs. 3.

7. *sorōrem ex mātē*, a sister from the mother, a sister on the mother's side (only), i. e. a half-sister.

8. *nūptum collocāsse*; for *nūptum*, cf. XL. N. 2 (*a*); *collocāsse* has in this expression the force of a verb of motion.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. We have found thus far four different ways of expressing purpose in Lat.: (*a*) By the subjv. with *ut* (sometimes *quī = ut is*) or *nē*. (*b*) By *ad* with the gerund or gerundive. (*c*) By *causā* with a gen. depending upon it. (*d*) By a supine in *-um*, after a verb of motion.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The locative case A. & G. 31, *h*. H. 45, 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>alere</i> , <i>aluit</i> , <i>altus</i> , to nourish, support. | 7. <i>largiter</i> , largely, bountifully. |
| 2. <i>augēre</i> , <i>auxit</i> , <i>auctus</i> , trans., to increase. | 8. <i>māter</i> , - <i>tris</i> , mother. |
| 3. <i>collocāre</i> , to place together, to set up, establish. | 9. <i>nūbere</i> , <i>nūpsit</i> , <i>nūptus</i> , ¹ to veil one's self, hence, to marry (said of the woman); <i>hominī nūbere</i> , to veil one's self for a man, to marry a man. |
| 4. <i>familiāris</i> (<i>familia</i>), belonging to the household, private, intimate; as noun, a friend. | 10. <i>potentia</i> (<i>potēns</i>), power. |
| 5. <i>illīc</i> (<i>ille</i>), in that place, there, yonder. | 11. <i>semper</i> , always. |
| 6. <i>largīrī</i> , <i>largītus</i> , to give bountifully, to give bribes. | 12. <i>soror</i> , sister. |
| | 13. <i>sūmptus</i> , - <i>ūs</i> (<i>sūmere</i>), expense. |
| | 14. <i>uxor</i> , wife. |

¹ For change of *b* to *p* before *s* and *t*, see A. & G. 11, *f*, 1; H. 33, 1.

6. EXERCISES.

1. Write in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (a) Dumnorix by buying up the taxes (the taxes having been bought up) amasses large means. (b) His means were so large that he could support many horsemen. (c) He increased his influence among the neighboring states by giving his female relatives in marriage. (d) Dumnorix was willing to do anything (all things) to increase his own power.

3. (a) Dumnorix, that bold chieftain, is persuading the common people not to send grain to Cæsar. (b) Dumnorix was most powerful among the common people who lived in his country, but was not well disposed toward the Romans. (c) When he had collected cavalry to defend him, the magistrates did not dare to set forth the things which he had done.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The endings of the pres. act., pf. act., and pres. pass. inf. 2. The Lat. for *means, expense, private property, public revenue, customs* (i. e. duties on imports). 3. For *council, counsel*. 4. For *father, mother, sister, brother, wife*. 5. Lat. words and Eng. words related to *alere, posse*. 6. One regular verb of each conjug. in this lesson, with principal parts. 7. The other Lat. case which the locative most nearly resembles. 8. The Lat. for *Cæsar married Calpurnia, Calpurnia married Cæsar*. 9. Three ways of saying, *he came to ask aid*.

LESSON LXII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 18, Favēre et through grātiā, dēspērāre.

2. NOTES.

1. **Helvētiīs** ; dat. with **favēre**, *he favors* (**Dumnorigem** or **eum** being understood), and **cupere**, *he is well disposed* ; note that the meaning of **favēre** might lead us to expect the accus., and *cf.* XIV. n. 12 (b), XXXI. n. 8, XXXVI. n. 5.

2. **ōdisse**, *he hates* ; pres. in sense, though pf. in form ; *cf.* LI. n. 4 (e) ; lacks the pres. system, like **cœpisse** ; see Gram. Less.

3. **suō nōmine** ; *in his own name, on his own account* ; abl. of cause.

4. **dēminūta** ; supply **sit** ; why not **est** ? why not **esset** ?

5. **sī quid** ; *cf.* XXXIII. n. 9, Gram. Less.

6. **accidat** ; (a) for meaning, see XLIX. Vocab. ; (b) stands for a fut. in the dir. disc. ; *cf.* XLVI. n. 1 (b), LII. n. 3 (b).

7. **per Helvētiōs**, *through the Helvetii, i. e. by their assistance*.

8. **rēgnī obtinendī** ; **rēgnī** depends on **spem**, and **obtinendī** is a gerundive agreeing with **rēgnī** ; lit. *the hope of the kingly power to be possessed, freely, the hope of possessing the kingly power* ; *cf.* XIX. n. 5, XXXIII. n. 5.

9. **imperio populī Rōmānī**, *under the government of the Roman people* ; **imperio**, like **adventū**, above, is an abl. of both time and cause ; Dumnorix is losing hope not only at the time of the Roman government, but because of it ; *cf.* XL. n. 2 (b).

10. **dē eā quam habeat grātiā** ; note that **grātiā** is the antec. of **quam**, and that **quam habeat** has the force of an adj. restricting the meaning of **eā**, and is for that reason placed after it ; the phrase might be translated *of his existing popularity* ; *cf.* **māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā**, *of great popular, bribe-bought influence*, LX.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. Some verbs, the ordinary meaning of which would lead us to expect the accus., are used with the dat. Four such verbs have already been found in the text, viz., **favēre**, *to favor*; **imperāre**, *to command*; **persuādēre**, *to persuade*; **studēre**, *to desire*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjug. of **ōdit** . A. & G. 143, *b* and *c*, N. H. 297 and 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. adfinitās (finēs), <i>nearness, relationship by marriage.</i> | 5. dēspērāre , <i>to be hopeless, to despair.</i> |
| 2. antīquus (ante), <i>old, ancient, former.</i> | 6. favēre , fāvit , fautūrus , <i>to favor</i> ; takes dat. of person. |
| 3. cupere , cupīvit or -iit , cupītus (a verb in -io of the 3d conjug.), <i>to long for, desire, be well-disposed toward</i> (in the last sense it takes a dat.). | 7. honor , <i>honor, office.</i> |
| 4. dēminuere , -minuit , -minūtus (dē and minus), <i>to lessen.</i> | 8. ōdisse , <i>to hate</i> ; found only in the pf. system, and in the pf. is pres. in sense. |
| | 9. restituere , -stituit , -stitūtus , <i>to set up again, to restore.</i> |

6. EXERCISES.

1. Write first in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (a) Influenced by this relationship, Dumnorix favors the Helvetii. (b) Influenced by his Helvetian wife, Dumnorix, in order to furnish aid to the Helvetii, tries to take away (to snatch away) the grain from the Romans. (c) Men often hate those who keep them from power. (d) For the sake (**causā**) of possessing the kingly power, Dumnorix wished to defeat the Roman army.

3. (a) The high-born chiefs of Gaul were always longing to seize the kingdoms which their fathers had held for many years. (b) In

former times Divitiacus had been more powerful than Dumnorix. (c) Dumnorix, after amassing large means and marrying a Helvetian wife, was influential both with the common people of his own country and with the Helvetii.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Likeness and difference between **ōdit** and **cœpit**. 2. The meaning of **obtinēre**, of **potīrī**, of **cōnsequī**. 3. A verb of commanding which does not take the dat. 4. The meaning of **sī quid accidet, accidit, accidat**. 5. How Eng. *accident* shows the meaning of **accidere**. 6. The best Eng. for **venīre in spem**. 7. Decl. of **nōmine, adventū, spem**. 8. Compare **antīquus** by endings, and also by adverbs. 9. Compare **summus**. 10. Define **cōnsanguinitās**,¹ and contrast its meaning with that of **adfīnitās**.

LESSON LXIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 18**, **Reperiēbat etiam through equitātum perterritum.**

2. NOTES.

1. **reperiēbat . . . Cæsar**: (a) note the expressiveness of the transposition in this clause; the verb first, to show that something important is found out, — not simply related by Divitiacus, who has been speaking, — and the subj. last, to show that Cæsar was now active and not simply a listener; (b) **quærendō** is a gerund, *in seeking*.

¹ Do not forget that there is a General Vocabulary at the end of the book. If you have forgotten the meaning of the adj. **cōnsanguineus**, look it up.

2. **equestre**; note stem **equestri-**, and *cf.* XXI. N. 1, and Gram. Less. below.

3. **paucis ante diebus**; **ante** is here an adv., and **diebus** an abl. of degree of difference, *before by a few days, a few days before*; *cf.* XXVII. N. 1.

4. **quod . . . esset factum**: (*a*) for const. of clause, *cf.* LIX. N. 6, Gram. Less.; (*b*) why subjv.? LVI. N. 1 (*c*).

5. **factum**; **esse** is to be supplied.

6. **ejus equitibus**; (*a*) for const. of **equitibus**, *cf.* LIV. N. 2, Obs. 1; (*b*) antec. of **ejus**? why **ejus** rather than **suus**? *cf.* **ejus fugæ**, where **ejus** is an adj. limiting **fugæ**, *of that flight*.

7. **miserant**; the preceding dat. **auxiliō** means *for aid, i. e. in order to aid*, sometimes called a dat. of "purpose" or "end," and the dat. **Cæsari** means *to Cæsar*; *cf.* Gram. Less.

8. **præerat**; for const. of preceding **equitatuī**, *cf.* **magistratuī** **præerat** LVII.

9. **perterritum**: (*a*) the antec. of the preceding **eōrum** is **equitatuī**; *cf.* LIV. N. 4 (*d*); (*b*) **reliquum** is made emphatic by separation from its noun **equitatum**; the rest of the cavalry was terrified, not all of it, for that of Dumnorix ran away for the purpose of creating a panic.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 3d decl. adj. in **-er** A. & G. 84, **ācer**. II. 153, **ācer**.

2. Two dat., the obj. to which and

the end for which A. & G. 233. H. 390 and I. II.

3. Time before or after A. & G. 259, *d.*¹ II. 430¹ and N. 1, 2); also footnote 3.

4. The effect of separating words

naturally connected A. & G. 344 and *e.* H. 561, III.

¹ Study examples.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **adversus** (in form the pf. partic. of **advertere**), *turned toward, in front of; adverse, unfavorable.*
2. **equester, equestris, equestre**, *belonging to a horseman, cavalry.*
3. **perterrere**, reg., *to frighten thoroughly.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Principal parts of all the verbs in this lesson. (b) Synopsis of **reperiēbat** in pres. system. (c) Of **mīserant** in pf. system. (d) All the inf. and partic. of **perterritum**. (e) Decline **equitibus, quem**.

2. (a) Dumnorix and his horsemen had begun to retreat, in order that the rest of the horsemen might be thoroughly frightened. (b) The Hædui, influenced by the popularity and liberality of Dumnorix, had put him in command of their cavalry. (c) The battle, which was fought, was unfavorable, because Dumnorix favored the Helvetii. (d) The horsemen whom the Hædui had sent to aid Cæsar were influenced by Dumnorix.

3. (a) When the horsemen of Dumnorix began to retreat, the rest followed (them). (b) Dumnorix entertains the hope of defeating the Romans. (c) He intends to obtain the greatest possible influence. (d) Dumnorix is angry because Divitiacus, his brother, has been restored to his former position of honor.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference in meaning between **reperire, quærere, rogare, flāgitare**. 2. The nom. sing. and plur. neut. of **equester, māgnus, æger, gravis, gravior, fluēns**. 3. The abl. sing. and gen. plur. of each of the foregoing. 4. The position and const. of **diēbus** in the phrase **paucīs ante diēbus**. 5. Eng. words related to those in Vocab. 6. The effect of placing a subj. last in a sentence; a verb first; an adj. far away from its noun. 7. An example in this lesson of the abl. of agent, and also of the abl. of means. 8. Difference between **ējus** or **eōrum** and **suus**. 9. Five ways to express purpose.

LESSON LXIV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 19**, through **animadvertere jubēret**.

2. NOTES.

1. **accēderent**: (*a*) **accēdere**, meaning strictly *to go to*, comes to have the pass. meaning *to be added*, because of the idea of increase or addition in the original meaning; ¹ (*b*) for mode, *cf.* XL. n. 2 (*b*).

2. **trādūxisset**: (*a*) its subj. is **Dumnorix** to be supplied; (*b*) subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.; the thought of Cæsar, as suggested by the word **suspitiōnēs**, is here quoted.

3. **dandōs curāset**; (*a*) **dandōs** agrees with **obsidēs** not **eōs**; (*b*) the antec. of **eōs** are **Sēquanōrum** and **Helvētiōs**; for the circumstance referred to, *cf.* XXXVI. and XXXVII.; (*c*) for use of **dandōs**, *cf.* XLV. n. 3 (*a*).

4. **injūssū suō et cīvitātis**: (*a*) **injūssū**, *without the command*, is an abl. of manner; for form, *cf.* LX. n. 5 (*b*); (*b*) **suō** here refers to **Cæsar**, the unexpressed subj. of a verb which follows; (*c*) **suō** and **cīvitātis** (which depends on **injūssū**) are connected by the co-ordinate conj. **et**; note that the adj. **suō** and the gen. **cīvitātis** have exactly the same possessive force.

5. **ipsīs**; its antec. are **cīvitātis** and **Cæsaris** (the latter implied in **suō**); it forms an abl. absolute const. with **inscientibus**; for decl. of **inscientibus**, see Gram. Less.

6. **accūsārētur**; the four **quod** clauses which end with this word have the same const.; they are in apposition with **rēs** (the subj. of **accēderent**) and may each be introduced in translating by the phrase *the fact that*.

¹ *Cf.* in Harper's Lat. Dictionary, **ad, E, 2** and in Webster's Unabridged Dictionary, *to, 5 (f)*.

7. **arbitrābātur**: (a) the subj. is **Cæsar** understood; (b) the preceding **causæ** is a partitive gen. depending on **satis**; cf. **minus dubitātiōnis** XLIX.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. **Accēdere**, though active in form, has often the pass. meaning, *to be added*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of adj. in -ns A. & G. 85, a, H. 157, **prū-egēns**. **dēns**, N.
2. The adj. with the force of the
gen. A. & G. p. 146, H. 393, foot-
N., 190. note 3; 395,
N. 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **accēdere**, -**cēssit**, -**cēssus**, *to go to, to approach, to be added; accēdit, it is added; with ut or quod, moreover.*
2. **animadvertere** (**animus**, **ad**, and **vertere**), *to turn the mind or attention to, to notice* (in this sense takes simple accus.); **in hominem animadvertere**, *to punish a man; cf. the Eng. expression to attend to in sense of to punish.*
3. **cōgnōscere**, **cognōvit**, **cognitus**, *to learn thoroughly; cōgnōvit, he has learned, he knows.*
4. **injūssū** (in neg. and **jubēre**), found only in abl., *without command.*
5. **īnsciēns** (in neg. and **scīre**, *to know*), adj., though pres. partic. in form, *not knowing, unaware.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write all the partic. of **cōgnōscere**, **dare**. (b) Synopsis of **trādūcere** in ind. and subjv. act. and pass. (c) Decl. of **quis** and **quī**. (d) Comparison of **certus**.

2. (a) **Dumnorix** had done all things without the knowledge of his state. (b) **Cæsar** knows that very certain facts can be added to these

suspicious. (c) Cæsar himself has done all these things very quickly. (d) Cæsar was influenced by the fact that (because) Dumnorix was accused by Liscus, a Hæduan magistrate.

3. (a) There was reason enough why Cæsar should punish Dumnorix. (b) Cæsar was no longer without knowledge of (dē) this matter, since very certain facts had been learned. (c) Cæsar having been informed of this crime will punish the man by whom it was committed. (d) Cæsar noticed many things which others were not able to find out.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Similarity in use of **fiēbat** and **accēdēbat**. 2. Difference in the decl. of pres. partic. and that of other adj. in **-ns**. 3. The adj. case of nouns. 4. The adv. case. 5. The Lat. for *to notice, to punish, to have a thing done, to lead across, to cross, to learn, to know*. 6. The translation of the substantive **quod** clause. 7. The various classes of words with which the partitive gen. is used.

LESSON LXV.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 19**, **Hīs omnibus** through **sint dicta**;

2. NOTES.

1. **repūgnābat**, *was opposed* (or *repugnant*): (a) the subj. is **ūnum**, *one (thing)*; (b) **rēbus** is the dat. of indir. obj.

2. **cōgnōverat**: (a) for meaning, cf. LXIV. Vocab.; (b) its subj. is **Cæsar** understood; (c) antec. and case of **sē** in phrase **in sē**? (d) note that the conj. is entirely omitted between the different obj. of **cōgnōverat**; cf. **linguā**, **īstitūtīs**, **lēgibus** IV. and **Garumnā**, **Ōceanō**, **fīnibus** X., but contrast **Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Lato-
brīgīs** XXVIII.

3. **nē . . . offenderet verēbātur**, *he feared that he would offend*: (a) **nē**, following **verēbātur** in thought, is translated *that*; ¹ (b) the impf. subjv. **offenderet** refers to the fut.; (c) the antec. of **ējus** is **Dumnorix**.

4. **quicquam**, sometimes written **quidquam**, *anything*: (a) the accus. sing. neut. of the indef. pron. **quisquam**, **quæquam**, **quicquam** (**quidquam**); (b) cf. **quemque**, *each one* XXVIII.; it is from **quisque**, **quæque**, **quidque**; note that both of these pron. have only the first syllable declined and that this is the indef. **quis**, **quæ**, **quid**; for which, see XXXIII.

5. **cui . . . habēbat**, *to whom he was having the highest confidence of all things*, more freely, *in whom he had the highest confidence respecting everything*: (a) case and antec. of **cui**? (b) note that the gen. **rērum** is not best translated by *of*, and cf. **dictiōnis**, *for pleading* XXIV., **trium mēnsium**, *sufficient for three months* XXVIII., **incommodī**, *disaster* (like accus.) XLVI., **minus dubitātiōnis**, *less doubt* XLIX.

6. **colloquitur**: (a) part of speech and const. of preceding **Galliæ**? (b) **familiārem** is a noun; cf. LXI. Vocab.; (c) antec. of **eō**?

7. **quæ . . . dicta sint**: (a) **ea** the omitted antec. of **quæ** is the obj. of the preceding verb; (b) the antec. of **ipsō** is **Divitiacus**. (c) Why is **dicta sint** subjv., and why in the pf. tense?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The translation of the gen., like that of all cases, depends upon the context; thus, though most frequently translated by the Eng. possessive, or obj. with *of*, it is sometimes translated by *for*, by a nom. or objective or by a phrase containing words for which there are no exact equivalents in the Lat.

2. The neg. **nē**, introducing a clause which is the obj. of a verb of fearing, is regularly translated by the affirmative *that*. This will seem less strange if we observe that where **nē** is used the obj. is not desired.

¹ Note that, if **verēbātur** is translated by the verb *desire*, **nē** becomes neg. in sense, thus, *he desired that he might not offend*. We never fear that a thing will happen without desiring the contrary.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of **quisque** and **quisquam** A. & G. 105, c, H. 190, 2, 1)
e. 2) and N. 1.
2. Use or omission of the conj.
in series of more than two
words A. & G. 208, b. H. 554, I. 6.
3. The const. with verbs of fear-
ing A. & G. 331, f. H. 498, III.
and N. 1,
foot-note 4.

5. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cāius , more correctly written
Gāius or Gājus , a Roman
first name, usually represent-
ed by C . | 9. quisquam , quæquam , quid-
quam , <i>any one, anything</i> . |
| 2. colloquī , -locūtus , <i>to confer</i> ,
<i>converse</i> . | 10. removēre , -mōvit , -mōtus ,
<i>to move back, remove</i> . |
| 3. commonefacere , -fēcit , -fac-
tus , <i>to put in mind, to remind</i>
<i>forcibly</i> . | 11. repūgnāre , <i>to fight back, to be</i>
<i>opposed</i> . |
| 4. ēgregius (ē and grex , -gis , a
<i>herd</i>), <i>out of the (common) herd</i> ,
<i>hence, eminent, excellent</i> . | 12. simul , adv., <i>at the same time</i> ,
<i>at once</i> . |
| 5. interpres , -etis , <i>an interpreter</i> . | 13. studium , <i>zeal, devotion, a pur-</i>
<i>suit</i> . |
| 6. jūstitia (jūstus , <i>just</i>), <i>justice</i> ,
<i>sense of justice, uprightness</i> . | 14. supplicium (sub and plicāre ,
<i>to fold, to bend</i> , as the knees
in kneeling), <i>a kneeling, sup-</i>
<i>plication, punishment</i> . |
| 7. offendere , -fendit , -fēnsus , <i>to</i>
<i>hit against, stumble, blunder</i> ,
<i>offend</i> . | 15. temperantia (temperāre) <i>mod-</i>
<i>eration</i> . |
| 8. prius , adv. in comp., <i>sooner</i> ;
prius quam or priusquam ,
conj., <i>sooner than, before</i> . | 16. vocāre , <i>to call, to summon</i> . |
| | 17. verērī , reg., <i>to feel awe of, to</i>
<i>fear</i> . |

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Principal parts of **repūgnāre**, **habēre**, **jubēre**, **dīcere**.
- (b) Decline **fīdem**, **jūstitiam**, **animum**, **sē**, **omnium**, **præsente**.
- (c) Compare **summus**.

2. (a) After finding out all these things, Cæsar called Divitiacus, the brother of Dumnorix. (b) He was unwilling to wound the feelings of Divitiacus, who had been a friend to him and to the Roman people for many years. (c) Though Dumnorix was reckless, his brother was a man of eminent moderation. (d) After conversing with all the rest, Cæsar determined to inform Divitiacus of all that he had learned.

3. (a) I fear that I shall forget many things. (b) Divitiacus surpassed all in good faith, in moderation, and in justice. (c) These were men in whom Cæsar had entire confidence respecting the most important matters. (d) Cæsar feared that there would not be grain enough.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The derivation of **voluntās**, **temperantia**. 2. The abstract noun from stem of **præsēns**. 3. Lat. words related to **studium**, **prīnceps**, **familiāris**. 4. Difference between **concilium** and **cōnsilium**. 5. Translation and peculiarity in use of **cōnsuēvit**, **cōgnōvit**, **ōdit**, **cœpit**. 6. Three indef. pron. 7. How **īdem** resembles two of them in decl. 8. Why the Romans used the neg. **nē** where we use the affirmative *that*. 9. Difference between Lat. and Eng. respecting the use of the conj. in the enumeration of particulars. 10. Eng. words related to **studium**, **voluntās**, **vocāre**, **colloquī**.

LESSON LXVI.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 19**, et ostendit through **sē crēvisset**; in **20**.

2. NOTES.

1. **ostendit**: What two tenses are possible for this verb?

2. **dīxerit**: (a) How does the tense of this verb determine that of **ostendit**? (b) antec. of **eō** and **sē**? (c) **apud sē**, *near him, in his presence*.

3. statuat : (*a*) mode and tense? (*b*) for const., *cf.* XX. n. 5, Gram. Less., and examples of the same const. in XXX., XXXII., XXXVII., XLVIII.; (*c*) *ējus* depends upon *animī* and refers to *Divitiacus*; (*d*) *ipse* refers to *Cæsar*, *eō* to *Dumnorix*; (*e*) const. and best translation of *causā cōgnitā*?

4. statueret : (*a*) for const., *cf.* 3; (*b*) note the position of *quid* with respect to *nē*, and *cf.* *si quid* LXII.; (*c*) *gravius* is here an adj.; gender and agreement? it means *too severe* rather than *more severe*; *cf.* the meaning of adv. *cupidius* LIV.; (*d*) *in frātre*m, *against his brother*.

5. capere : (*a*) why inf.? (*b*) nom. and const. of *quem-quam*? (*c*) *ex eō*, *from that fact*, i. e. the behavior of *Dumnorix*; (*d*) const. and antec. of *sē*? LVIII. n. 4, Gram. Less.; (*e*) for *plūs dolōris*, *cf.* *minus dubitātiōnis* XLIX.

6. domī : *cf.* LXI. n. 4.

7. posset : (*a*) Was this verb subjv. in the dir. disc.? XLIV. n. 5; (*b*) modified by both *plūrimum* and *minimum*; *cf.* XXII. n. 7 (*c*).

8. crēvisset : (*a*) from *crēscere*; (*b*) stems *crēsce-*, *crēv-*, *crēt-*; (*c*) note that *crē-* is the basis of all three stems; it is called the verb stem; (*d*) the pres. stem is formed from this verb stem by adding *-sce*; *cf.* *cōnsciscere*, verb stem *cōnscī-*, pres. stem *cōnscīsce-*; *cōnsuēscere*, verb stem *cōnsuē-*, pres. stem *cōnsuēsce-*; (*e*) note that all the verb stems mentioned above end in a vowel, as also in the case of *scī-*, verb stem of *scīre*; the pf. stems are *crēv-*, *cōnscīv-*, *cōnsuēv-*, *scīv-*, and the sup. stems *crēt-*, *conscīt-*, *con-suēt-*, *scīt-*; *cf.* *amā-*, *amāv-*, *amāt-*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The basis of the three stems of a verb already learned — the pres., the pf., and the sup. — is called the verb stem. This in the 1st and 4th conjug. is the same in form as the pres. stem.

2. Verbs of the 3d conjug. in *-scere* form the pres. stem by adding *-sce* to the verb stem.

3. Most verb stems ending in a vowel form the pf. stem by adding *-v*, and the sup. by adding *-t*.

4. The indef. *quis* usually stands immediately after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num*.

4. VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. complectī , -plexus, <i>to embrace.</i> | 6. obsecrāre (ob and sacrum , <i>sacred</i>), <i>to ask on religious grounds, to beseech.</i> |
| 2. crēscere , crēvit , crētus , <i>intrans., to grow, increase; cf. the trans. augēre.</i> | 7. petere , petīvit , petītus , <i>to aim at, to seek.</i> |
| 3. hortārī , <i>to urge.</i> | 8. scīre , scīvit , scītus , <i>to know.</i> |
| 4. lacrima , <i>a tear.</i> | 9. sēparātīm , <i>separately.</i> |
| 5. offēnsio (offendere), <i>a striking against, a stumbling, an offence.</i> | |

5. EXERCISES.

1. Write in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (*a*) Divitiacus began to embrace Cæsar and to beseech him not to compel Dumnorix to pay the penalty of his crime. (*b*) The greater his wrong-doing is, the greater sorrow I experience because of it. (*c*) Dumnorix was increasing in power because of the aid which Divitiacus was giving to him. (*d*) When Divitiacus had learned all things which Cæsar had found out, he feared that Cæsar would kill his brother.

3. (*a*) Cæsar was accustomed to converse with the Gauls by means of interpreters. (*b*) Each one says that no one is more unfriendly to Cæsar than Dumnorix (*is*). (*c*) If Cæsar kills (shall kill) Dumnorix, he will offend many among the Hædui, because Dumnorix is popular at home.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The pres. ind., pres. subjv., and fut. ind., 3d sing. and plur. of **statuere**. 2. The synopsis and inf. and partic. of **crēscere** in act. voice. 3. Synopsis of **capere** in pres. system. 4. Decl. of **quisque**, **plūs**. 5. Third plur. of **ostendit** in pres. ind.; in pf. ind. 6. How to distinguish like forms of rel. and indef. pron. by the position of the latter. 7. The four stems of the verb. 8. Two meanings of the comp., of the sup. 9. Difference between in

frātrem, in **frātre**, and **apud frātre**m. 10. Antec. of every pron. in the lesson. 11. Verbs in text thus far which take an obj. clause of purpose.

LESSON LXVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, **B. G. I. 20**, quibus opibus through **sē āverterentur**.

2. NOTES.

1. **ūterētur**: (*a*) why subjv.? (*b*) what case used with it? XXVIII. n. 2; (*c*) for translation and force of **ad minuendam grātiā**m, cf. XIX. n. 5, LXI. n. 1 (*e*); (*d*) **suam** is for **meam**, *my*, in the words of Divitiacus; for form and use of **meam**, cf. **suus**, **tuus** XLVII. n. 4.

2. **amōre**; the nom. sing. **amor** names the action of the verb **amāre**, *to love*; cf. **dolor** LXVI., which names the action of **dolēre**, and LX. n. 5.

3. **frāternō**: (*a*) an adj., the nom. sing. of which, **frāter-nus**, is formed from **frāter** by the addition of the ending **-nus**; cf. the following adj.: **Cassi-ānus**, **repent-īnus**, **frūment-ārius**, **cōnsanguineus**, **ēgreg-ius**, **cupi-dus**, **faci-lis**, **immort-ālis**, **incrēdi-bilis**. Give the meaning of each of these adj. and the word from which it is formed. (*b*) Note that the adj. **frāternō** has here the same force as the gen. **vulgī**, just beyond, and cf. LXIV. n. 4 (*c*), Gram. Less.

4. **exīstimātūrum**: (*a*) supply **esse**. What inf. is then formed? (*b*) the preceding **accidisset**, after **sī**, stands for a fut. pf. in the dir. disc.; cf. LIX. n. 2; the exact Eng. for the dir. form of the Lat. would be "If any thing shall have happened, no one will think;" the Lat. uses the fut. pf. in the **sī** clause, but the simple fut. in the conclusion, to indicate that something must happen before there can be any thought about it; contrast the vague use of the pres. "happens" in the Eng. sentence, "If anything happens, no

one will think," and XVI. N. 15, foot-note; LX. Obs. 2, foot-note; (c) for **quod**, cf. L. N. 5; (d) for **quid** and **eī**, cf. **sī quid accidat Rōmānīs** LXII.; (e) for **gravius**, cf. LVI. N. 4 (c); (f) **nēminem** is an accus. sing. from **nēmo**.

5. **factum**: (a) **esse**, understood, *it was done*; what inf.? cf. **exīstimātūrum** (**esse**); (b) **voluntāte** is an abl. of manner; cf. **voluntāte** XXXII. N. 9 (e).

6. **āverterentur**: (a) cf. **futūrum ut . . . habēret** XXXVIII.; (b) cf. **āverterant** LVI., and note that the pres. stem **āverte-** differs from the pf. stem **āvert-** only in the final **-e** of the pres.; **avert-** is both verb stem and pf. stem; verbs like **āvertere** in this respect have the same form in the pres. and pf. ind. 3d sing.; examples are **minuit**, **ostendit**, **statuit**, **incendit**, **offendit**, **solvit**; cf. XXIV. N. 5, Obs. 3, LXVI. N. 8, Obs. 1, 2, 3.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The following adj. endings meaning *belonging to* or *pertaining to* have been used in the text: **-nus**, **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-ārius**, **-ius**, **-ālis**.

2. The Lat. use of tenses is more precise and definite than the Eng.; the pres. ind. is very rarely used for the fut. or fut. pf., or the pres. partic. for the pf. partic., or the simple past tense of the ind. for the impf. All of these inaccuracies are permitted by Eng. usage.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The possessive adj. pronouns . A. & G. 99, *a*, H. 185, 449.
197.
2. The name of an action in **-io**,
-tio, **-tus**, **-or** A. & G. 163, *a*, H. 326 and 1,
b. 327 and 1.
3. Four classes of 3d conjug.
verbs, classified according to
the formation of the pf.
stem from the verb stem . A. & G. 124, *a*, H. 252 and 1,
b, *d*, *e*. 254, 255
and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **amor** (*amāre*), *love, desire.*
2. **exīstimātio** (*exīstimāre*), *estimation, opinion.*
3. **frāternus**, *of a brother, brotherly, fraternal.*
4. **meus**, *my, mine.*
5. **minuere**, **minuit**, **minūtus** (*minus*), *to lessen.*
6. **nervus**, *a sinew, tendon, nerve;*
in plur., power, strength.
7. **ops**, *ability;* *in plur., means, resources.*
8. **perniciēs**, **-ēī** (**nex**), *destruction.*
9. **vulgus** (of the 2d decl., neut. by exception and, hence, having nom. and accus. alike; wanting in plur.), *the public, the crowd, the mob.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write first the Eng. and then the Lat. of the dir. disc. which is quoted in this lesson.

2. (a) Dumnorix used the resources which he received from his brother to increase his own popularity. (b) Divitiacus showed that Cæsar would turn the affections of the public from him (*i. e.* Divitiacus) if he should decide upon any too severe (punishment) for his brother. (c) It happened that the popularity of Divitiacus was lessened, but the influence of Dumnorix was increased. (d) If anything happens to my brother, his friends will blame me.

3. (a) Although Dumnorix had inflicted injuries upon his brother, yet Divitiacus asked Cæsar not to punish him too severely. (b) If Cæsar punishes Dumnorix, every one will say that Divitiacus, the friend of Cæsar, urged him to do it. (c) He lessened our popularity, in order to obtain favor himself. (d) Embracing Cæsar, he said that he experienced more sorrow than any other man on account of his brother's wrong-doing.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Three possible translations for **ostendit**.
2. How to determine the tense where the form is the same in pres. and pf. ind.
3. Verb stems of **dūcere**, **agere**, **emere**, **facere**, **cōnsuēscere**, **dēfendere**, **nūbere**.
4. Formation of pf. stem and classification of each of the foregoing.

5. Difference in meaning or use between **tuus** and **vester**, **noster** and **vester**, **meus** and **noster**, **suus** and **ējus**. 6. The names of actions and the names of qualities in Chap. 19 and 20. 7. The difference in form between fut. act. and pf. pass. inf. 8. Mode and tense of **accidere**, **accideret**, **accidisse**, **accidisset**. 9. Explanation of combinations **quod sī** and **sī quid**. 10. Comparison of **gravius** as adj. and as adv. 11. Declension of **gravius** as an adj. 12. A class of nouns having a stem ending which is like that of **nēmo**. 13. Use of tenses in the Eng. sentences: "Seizing his hand, he thanked him," "If he goes, he will come again," "While I mused, the fire burned."

LESSON LXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar, B. G. I. 20, **Hæc cum** to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. **peteret**: (a) the introductory **cum** is here best translated *while*, as very often when used with the impf. subj. (b) Why does **hæc** precede **cum**? (c) **flēns**, pres. partic. in form and use; for meaning, cf. LX. N. 12 (b), Obs. 2; for pf. ind., cf. LXVI. N. 8 (e), Obs. 3.

2. **prendit**: (a) for verb stem and pf. stem, cf. LXVII. N. 6 (b); (b) for decl. of **dextram** (sometimes written **dexteram**), cf. LX. N. 1. (c) What would mean *his own right hand*, *her right hand*?

3. **faciat**: (a) for omission of **ut** before **faciat**, see Gram. Less.; (b) for const. of clause, cf. **statuat**, LXVI. N. 3 (b); (c) meaning of **finem** in plur.? (d) for **ōrandī**, cf. **bellandī**, XVI. N. 12.

4. **ostendit**: (a) antec. of preceding **ējus** and **sē**? (b) **tantī**, the gen. sing. of **tantus** is a predicate after **esse**, lit., *he shows that his favor is of so much*, freely, *is of so much (account)*, *is worth so much*; **tantī** is called a gen. of price, since it tells (in an indefinite way) how much a thing is worth.

5. **reīpublicæ**: (a) really two words, **rēs** and **publica**, declined together; cf. **jūsūrandum** and also **rēs familiāris**, **novæ rēs**; (b) note the gen. ending **-ī** of the **-ē** decl.

6. **condōnet**: (a) What conjug., mode, and tense? (b) Explain mode; (c) antec. of **ējus**; (d) the dat. in **voluntātī** and **precibus** may be best translated *for the sake of* or *because of*.

7. **querātur**: (a) mode and tense? why? (b) meaning? cf. **quærātur**; (c) Might **quæ** agree with **cīvitās** (cf. **quæ cīvitās XXXVII.**) so far as form is concerned? How do you know that it does not?

8. **ut . . . vītet**: (a) same const. after **monet** as in **faciat**, above; (b) best Eng. translation for **in reliquum tempus**?

9. **præterita**: (a) in form a pf. pass. partic. plur. neut. from **præterīre**, *to go by*: lit. *the things which have been passed by*, more freely, *by-gones, the past*; (b) cf. the following forms of **īre** and its compounds: **exīrent** XLII., **exeant**, **subeunda** XXVII., **exīre**, **trānsītur** XXIX., **īre** XXX., **trānsībant**, **trānsierat** XLIII., **ībunt** (dir. disc.), **itūrōs** XLVI., **trānsīssent**, and the derivatives **iter**, **initium**, **reditio**. What is the verb stem of **īre**? Its pres. stem? How is this stem changed when it stands before a vowel? How is the sup. stem formed? What is true of its tense signs and pers. endings?

10. **dīcit**: (a) note the position of this word with reference to the clause which follows it in thought, and contrast the position of verbs of saying or thinking in LX., LXIII., LXVI.; cf., however, position of **dīcere** LVI., **arbitrābātur** LXIV.; (b) cf. also (as to the position of the verb of urging) **monet ut vītet**, above, and **hortātur ut statuāt**, **obsecrāre nē statueret** LXVI., **rogat faciat**, above; note also the position of result clauses in XXIX., LXVII. and in this lesson; (c) for repetition of pres. ind. in this lesson, cf. XXXI. n. 10.

11. **possit**: (a) used after **ut**; why, then, subjv.? (b) **quæ agat** is an indir. question; **quæ** being here an interrogative, not a rel. pron.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb stem of **īre** is **i-**, which is lengthened to **ī-** to form the pres. stem and adds **-t** to form the supine stem. Before a vowel the pres. stem is changed to **e**.

3. **Cum** with the impf. subjv. is often best translated *while*.

1. The conjug. of **fīre** A. & G. **141.** H. **295**, 1, 3.
2. **Ut** omitted after a verb of
urging A. & G. **331**, *f*, H. **499**, 2.
Rem.
3. The gen. of price A. & G. **214**, *c*, H. **401**, **404**.
215, *c*.

1. **adhibēre**, reg., *to hold to, to summon, to employ.*
2. **condōnāre**, *to give up, to pardon.*
3. **cōnsōlārī** *to console, to comfort.*
4. **custōs**, **ōdis**, *a guard.*
5. **dexter**, -**tera**, -**terum** or more frequently -**tra**, -**trum**, *the right*; **dextra** (*manus*, fem., *the hand*, being understood), *the right hand.*
6. **flēre**, **flēvit**, **flētus**, *to weep.*
7. **loquī**, **locūtus**, *to speak.*
8. **monēre**, reg., *to remind, warn, advise.*
9. **ōrāre**, *to entreat, to beg.*
10. **præterīre**, -**it**, -**itus**, *to go by, to pass by*; **præterita**, *things gone by, the past.*
11. **prendere** (also written **prehendere**), **prendit**, **prēnsus**, *to grasp.*
12. **reprehendere**, *to hold back, to blame.*
13. **rēspública** (also written as two words **rēs pública**, and always decl. as two), *the commonweal, republic.*
14. **verbum**, *a word.*
15. **vītāre**, *to shun.*

1. (a) Decline **fīens**, **hæc**, **ējus**, **dextram**, **finem**, **reīpublicæ**, **jūsjūrandum**, **precibus**, **omnēs**, **tempus**. (b) Synopsis of **peteret** in the pres. system and of **prendit** in the pf. system. (c) Principal parts of **condōnet**, **adhibet**, **intellegat**, **scīre**, **faciat**.

2. (a) Your (sing.) favor is worth so much that I freely pardon your brother in order to retain it. (b) Dumnorix, when called (having been called), is reproved by Cæsar because he has not shunned suspicion. (c) He asks what Cæsar is complaining about. (d) He asked Cæsar to pardon his brother.

3. (a) I will forgive the past if you will, for the future, do what ought to be done. (b) Cæsar went into Gaul, to overcome the Helvetii, who had gone out of their territory and were crossing the fields of the Hædui. (c) Cæsar told the ambassadors, who had asked permission to cross the province, that, if they should try to cross by force, he would prevent them.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Where the following forms are found : eunt, eo, eant, it, iret, itūrus. 2. The partic. of cōnsōlārī with the meaning of each. 3. Formation of pres. and fut. ind. and pres. subjv. in all conjug. 4. Meaning of tam, quam ; tantus, quantus ; is, quī ; ibi, ubi. 5. Of cōpia, cōpiæ ; finis, finēs ; castrum, castra. 6. Of rēs publica, rēs familiāris, novæ rēs. 7. Of est tantī. 8. Of quærere, querī. 9. Of præterita, in reliquum tempus, in præsentiā. 10. Usual position of the verb and all the exceptions thus far learned. 11. Ut clauses in this lesson. 12. All possible meanings of cum, conj.

LESSON LXIX.

REVIEW of LESSONS LIV. to LXVIII. inclusive.

1. TEXT. — CÆSAR, B. G. I, 15 TO 20 INCLUSIVE.

Follow implicitly the directions given in LIII. under "Text."

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Decl. of neuters in **-al** . . . A. & G. 52, ani- H. 63, ani-
mal. mal.
2. Decl. of nouns and adj. with
stems in **-ro** and **-ero** . . . A. & G. 38, puer, H. 51, puer,
ager and N. ager and 2,
near bottom 1), 4), 5);
of p. 16; 82. 149, 150.
3. Decl. of the pres. act. partic. . A. & G. 85, *b*, H. 157, a-
iēns. māns.
4. Decl. of adj. in **-ns** (other than
pres. partic.) A. & G. 85, *a*, H. 157, prū-
egēns. dēns N.
5. 3d decl. adj. in **-er** A. & G. 84, ācer. H. 153, ācer.
6. Comparison of certain irreg.
adj. A. & G. 90, 91 H. 163, 3;
and *a*. 165 and N.
1, 166.
7. Comparative meaning *too*
rather than *more* A. & G. 93, *a*. H. 444, 1.
8. Sup. of adj. in **-er** and of adv.
formed from them A. & G. 89, *a*; H. 163, 1;
92, miserē. 306 and 2.
9. The cardinals to **mille** A. & G. 94. H. 174.
10. The use of distributives A. & G. 95 and H. 174, 2, 1).
a.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 11. The possessive adj. pronouns | A. & G. 99, <i>a</i> , | H. 185, 449. |
| | 197. | |
| 12. Decl. of the interrogative adj.
<i>quī</i> | A. & G. 104. | H. 188, II.
and 1. |
| 13. Decl. of <i>quisque</i> and <i>quisquam</i> | A. & G. 105, <i>c, e</i> . | H. 190, 2, 1),
2) and N. 1. |
| 14. <i>Ipsē</i> meaning <i>very</i> | A. & G. 195, <i>f</i> ,
Rem. | H. 452, 2. |
| 15. The partic. of dep. verbs | A. & G. 135 and
<i>a</i> . | H. 231, 1;
332. |
| 16. Four classes of 3d conjug. verbs | A. & G. 124, <i>a</i> ,
<i>b, d, e</i> . | H. 252 and 1,
254, 255
and II. |
| 17. Conjug. of <i>capere</i> | A. & G. p. 83. | H. 217, 218,
219. |
| 18. Conjug. of <i>īre</i> | A. & G. 141. | H. 295, 1, 3. |
| 19. Conjug. of <i>ferre</i> | A. & G. 139. | H. 292 and 1,
1), 2). |
| 20. Conjug. of <i>ōdisse</i> | A. & G. 143, <i>b</i>
and <i>c, n</i> . | H. 297 and 2. |
| 21. Conjug. of <i>cœpisse</i> | A. & G. 143, <i>a</i> . | H. 297. |
| 22. The name of the action in <i>-io</i> ,
<i>-tio, -tus, -or</i> | A. & G. 163, <i>a, b</i> . | H. 326 and 1,
327 and 1. |
| 23. The name of the quality in <i>-ia</i> ,
<i>-tia, -tās, -tūdo</i> | A. & G. 163, <i>e</i> . | H. 325 and 1. |
| 24. The gen. of price | A. & G. 214, <i>c</i> ,
215, <i>c</i> . | H. 401, 404. |
| 25. The adj. with the force of a
gen. | A. & G. p. 146,
N., 190. | H. 393 and
foot-note 3;
395, N. 2. |
| 26. Two dat.; the obj. to which
and the end for which | A. & G. 233. | H. 390 and I,
II. |
| 27. The dat. with certain verbs of
taking away. | A. & G. 229. | H. 386, 2;
385. II. 2. |

28. Two accus. with verbs of asking
and teaching A. & G. 239, *c.* H. 374.
29. The locative case A. & G. 31, *h.* H. 45, 2.
30. The abl. of price A. & G. 252. H. 422.
31. The abl. of place without a prep. A. & G. 258, *f.* H. 425, II. 1,
1) and 2.
32. Time before or after A. & G. 259, *d.* H. 430 and N.
1, 2), also
foot-note 3.
33. Difference in meaning of same
prep. when used with differ-
ent cases A. & G. 152, *c.* H. 435 and N.
1.
34. Comparatives with **quam** . . A. & G. 203, *a*; H. 417, 1,
247, *a.* 444, 2.
35. Comparatives without **quam** . A. & G. 247 and *a.* H. 417 and 1.
36. Collective nouns with the agree-
ment of plurals A. & G. 205, *c.* H. 461, 1.
37. Const. with verbs of fearing . A. & G. 331, *f.* H. 498, III.
and N. 1,
foot-note 4.
38. The use of **quān** with the subjv. A. & G. 332, *g.* H. 501, II. 2;
Rem. 504.
39. The adv. use of the substantive
quod clause A. & G. 533, *a.* H. 516, II. 2,
N.
40. Mode and tense used after **ubi** A. & G. 324. H. 518 and
N. 1.
41. **Ut** omitted after a verb of urg-
ing A. & G. 331, *f.* H. 499, 2.
Rem.
42. The historical inf. . . . A. & G. 275 and H. 536, 1 and
Rem. N.
43. The time denoted by participles A. & G. 290. H. 550.
44. The pf. pass. partic. after **habēre** A. & G. 292, *c.* H. 388, 1. N.
45. The use or omission of the conj. A. & G. 208, *b.* H. 554, I. 6.
46. The effect of separating words
naturally connected . . . A. & G. 344, H. 561, III.
and *e.*

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Cæsar, **B. G. I.**
15-20.

1. VERBS.

1st Conjug. (-ā verbs).

accūsāre	cōnsōlārī	dēspērāre	īnstāre	repūgnāre
collocāre	convocāre	dubitāre	jactāre	sublevāre
comportāre	creāre	flāgitāre	obsecrāre	vītāre
condōnāre	dēsīgnāre	hortārī	ōrāre	vocāre

2d Conjug. (-ē verbs).

adhibēre	deterreēre	monēre	retinēre
audēre	favēre	movēre	tacēre
augēre	flēre	perterrēre	valēre
coercēre	licērī	removēre	verērī

3d Conjug. (-e verbs).

Give the principal parts of these verbs.

accēdere	complectī	loquī	prōpellere
alere	crēscere	minuere	prōpōnere
animadvertere	cupere	nūbere	quærere
āvertere	dēminuere	ōdisse	querī
cadere	dēstituere	offendere	redimere
cœpisse	dīmittere	petere	reprehendere
cōgnōscere	emere	pōnere	restituere
colloquī	īnsequī	præmittere	subsistere
commonefacere	laccessere	prendere	subvehere

4th Conjug. (-ī verbs).

largīrī	metīrī	reperīre	scīre	sentīre
---------	--------	----------	-------	---------

Irregular verbs.

adesse cōnferre interesse nōlle præesse præferre præeterīre

2. NOUNS HAVING **-A** STEMS.

audācia	lacrima	præsentia	temperantia
jūstitia	potentia	rapīna	vīta

3. **-O** STEMS.*Nouns.*

Cāius	pābulum	studium	vergo Bretus
concilium	portōgium	supplicium	vulgus
nervus	pretium	verbum	

Adj. (having also stems in **-a**).

adversus	ēgreġius	paucī	seditiōsus
aliēnus	frāternus	posterus	sēnī
amplus	improbus	propinquus	sōlus
annuus	mātūrus	quantus	summus
antīquus	meus	quīngentī	tantus
dexter	parvus	quīnī	vērus

4. THIRD DECL.

Nouns.

Give the gen. and gender of each.

adfīnitās	frīgus	māter	populatio
agmen	honor	nēmo	potestās
amor	hostis	nex	prex
custōs	interpres	offēnsio	soror
eques	liberālītās	ops	uxor
exīstimatio	libertās	pābulatio	vectigal

Adj.

equester	familiāris	īnsciēns	plūs, <i>neut.</i>	præsēns
----------	------------	----------	--------------------	---------

5. **-U** STEMS.

conventus	equitātus	injūssū	sūmptus
-----------	-----------	---------	---------

6. -Ē STEMS.

perniciēs

rēspública

7. INDECL. NUMERAL ADJ.

quīndecim

8. PRON.

quisquam

meus

9. PREP.

contrā

10. ADV.

anteā

graviter

necēssariō

sēcrētō

celeriter

illīc

præsertim

semper

circiter

interim

prius

sēparātīm

cotidiē

largiter

privātīm

simul

cupīdē

liberē

publicē

tum

dēmum

modo

quidem

11. CONJ.

quīn

LESSON LXX.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW and INDEX of LESSONS I. to LXVIII.

In this Lesson the most important grammatical points discussed in the foregoing Lessons are arranged in the usual order of the grammars. The Lesson may be used both for systematic study and for reference. It has been thought best in giving references to mention only the Notes and Observations; the pupil should remember, however, that the subject of reference is very often treated under the Grammar Lesson and the Topics of Study in the Lesson referred to.

The grammatical principles referred to below are always discussed in immediate connection with their application. It is therefore possible and very desirable, in the systematic study of this Lesson, for the pupil to prepare classified sets of examples taken from the text and illustrating the most important principles which he has been studying. The teacher cannot too strongly urge upon his pupils the necessity of associating every principle with a definite, concrete example of its use.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Roman pronunciation, I.-IV., **au**, **œ**, IX. Obs. **7**; **j**, XX. N. **1**, Obs. **1**; accent, I.; consonant changes, IV. N. **8** (*b*); VII. N. **12** (*a*), Obs. **4**; X. Obs. **6**; XXV. N. **2**; vowel changes, XXII. N. **3**, Obs. **2**; the mutes, XXV.; quantity of contracts, XXV. N. **3**.

ETYMOLOGY.

NOUNS.

Gender: I. N. **1** (*d*) Obs. **5, 9**; II. N. **4** (*e*), Obs. **7**.

Declension: there are different decl. II. Obs. **8**; the stem, VI. N. **4**, Obs. **8**; the neut. ending **-a**, N. **7**, Obs. **2**; classification of nouns by stem endings, XVII. N. **8**, Obs. **1**; nom. formed by adding **-s**, XXV. N. **3** (*b*), Obs. **2**.

-a decl.; **-a, -am, -æ** nom. plur. II. Obs. **5, 6, 7**; **-ārum, -ā**, III.; **-ās, -īs**, abl., V.; **-æ** gen. VI.; all forms, VIII. Obs. **10**.

-o decl. **-ī** nom. plur., **-ōrum**, III.; **-īs**, abl. IV. N. 4, Obs. 3; **-os**, V.; **-um** (masc.), and the neut. endings, VIII.; XI. Obs. 3; masc. nouns declined, XIII. N. 2, Obs. 3, 4.

3d decl.; the ending **-ēs**, I. N. 6, Obs. 6; **-is, -ibus**, IV.; **-en**, V. N. 5, Obs. 6; **-i -um, -e**, VI.; dental stems complete, XIII. N. 11, Obs. 5; **-i** stems, XIV. N. 1, Obs. 1; nouns in **-ns, -rs**, and **-en**, XV.; nouns in **-or**, XVI. N. 14, Obs. 8; stems in **-c** and **-g**, XVIII. N. 2, Obs. 2; nom. in **-os** and **-o**, neuters with gen. in **-ūris** and **-oris**, **-i** stems, XXV.; decl. of **vīs**, XXX.; **iter**, XXXI. N. 3, Obs. 2; gen. in **-eris**, XXXIV. N. 4; neuters in **-al**, LX. N. 10.

-u decl. XXV. N. 3, Obs. 1.

-ē decl. LII. N. 11, Obs. 1.

ADJECTIVES.

First and second decl. XIII. N. 2, Obs. 6; in **-is, -e**, XIV. N. 1, Obs. 1; force of prefix **per**, XIV. N. 1, Obs. 4, XVIII. N. 3 (*b*); **altera** and **alia**, XV. N. 7, Obs. 5; comp. XVI. N. 5 (*c*), Obs. 5, XXIII. N. 6, Obs. 3; neut. of the comp. XXIX. N. 8; decl. of **duo**, XXIX. N. 2; adj. with gen. in **-ius**, dat. in **-ī**, XXXII. N. 7 (*b*); comp. by adv. XXXVIII. N. 5; the first ten ordinals, XXXIX. N. 4; the abl. ending **-ī**, XL. N. 3, Obs. 1; decl. of **vetus**, XLVI.; comp. meaning *too*, LIV. N. 7 (*a*); the cardinals to **mille** and use of distributives, LV. N. 10 (*d*), (*e*), Obs. 1; irreg. comp. LVIII. N. 4 (*c*); decl. and comp. of adj. in **-er**, LX. N. 1, 3, Obs. 1; LXIII. N. 2; adj. in **-ns**, LXIV. N. 5.

PRONOUNS.

Decl. of **is** and **quī**, XXI. N. 2, 5, Obs. 1, 2; of **ille** and **ipse**, XXII. N. 4; the indefinite **quis**, XXXIII. N. 9, Obs. 2; decl. of **īdem**, XLI. N. 1; decl. of **hic**, LII. N. 1 (*b*), Obs. 2; decl. of **ego** and **vōs**, LII. N. 8 (*c*); the interrogative adj. pron. **quī**, LIV. N. 6 (*d*); **quisque** and **quisquam**, LXV. N. 4; the possessive adj. pron. LXVII. N. 1 (*d*).

VERBS.

In general: the pers. ending **-t**, I. N. 2 (b); **-nt**, II. N. 2 (c), Obs. ; **-ntur**, III. N. 8, Obs. 5; the stem VI. N. 4, Obs. 8; pres. ind. VII. N. 11, Obs. 3; all 3d pers. endings, X. N. 10 (c), Obs. 5; ending of pres. inf. XIV. N. 8, Obs. 7; sign of the impf. ind. and subjv. XVI. N. 3 (b), Obs. 1; dep. verbs XVII. N. 5 (b), Obs. 4; characteristics of the four conjug. XVIII. N. 11; Obs. 5, 6, 7, 8; the gerundive, XIX. N. 5, Obs. 2; plpf. ind. act. and pass. XX. N. 3, 4, Obs. 3; the supine stem, XXI. N. 3 (a); fut. act. and pf. pass. partic. XXII. N. 5, Obs. 1; supine in **-ū**, XXII. N. 1; the three stems, how found, XXIV. N. 5, Obs. 1, 2; impers. verbs, XXIV. N. 3; plpf. subjv. pass. XXXI. N. 2; the pf. ind. and pf. inf. pass. XXXIII. N. 2 (a); sign of the pres. subjv. XXXVII. N. 4, Obs. 2; the sign of the pf. subjv. act. XL. N. 7 (a), Obs. 3; pf. inf. act. XLIII. N. 5, Obs. 1; the plpf. subjv. act., the stems of all conjug., the principal parts, XLIV.; tense signs of the fut. and fut. pf. ind. XLVI. N. 1 (c), N. 3 (d), N. 5 (d); tenses of the ind. and subjv. XLVI. Obs. 3; summary of reg. verb forms, XLVIII.; the pers. endings of the act. L.; pers. endings of the pass. LI.; partic. of dep. verbs, time denoted by pres. partic. and decl. of pres. partic. LX.; the verb stem, LXVI. N. 8, Obs. 1, 3.

First conjug.: pf. stem, XXVIII. N. 6, Obs. 2; loss of **-v** from pf. stem, XXVIII. N. 6 (a).

Second conjug.: pf. stem, XX. N. 3 (a), Obs. 2; the supine stem, XXXV. N. 3 (a), Obs. 2.

Third conjug.: how to find stems, XXIV. N. 5, Obs. 3, 4; pres. inf. pass. XXXI. N. 11, Obs. 6; conjug. of **capere**, LIV. N. 6 (c), Obs. 2; **-sce** in 3d conjug. LXVI. N. 8, Obs. 2; verbs in which the verb stem and pf. stem are alike, and four classes of 3d conjug. verbs, LXVII. N. 6.

Irregular: formation and conjug. of **posse**, XXIII. N. 8; pf. of compounds of **ire**, XLIII. N. 7, Obs. 2; conjug. of **esse**, XLVI.; complete conjug. of **velle**, LI. N. 6 (c); of **esse** and **posse**, LII.; of **cœpit**, LV. N. 6; of **ferre**, LVI. N. 7; of **ōdit**, LXII. N. 2; of **īre**, LVIII. N. 9 (b), Obs. 1.

PARTICLES (*i. e.* adv., conj., prep.).

The adv. ending **ē-**, VI. n. **11** (*a*), Obs. 2; sup. of the adv. VI. n. **11**, Obs. 3; force of **ob** and **con** in composition, X.; difference in meaning of **ā** or **ab** and **ex**, XV. n. **1**, Obs. 1; comp. of adv. XVI. n. **5**, Obs. 5.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Formation of adv. in **ē-** and **-ter**, LVII. n. **10**, Obs. 1.

The name of the quality in **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūdo**, LX. n. **8**.

The endings of adj., and the name of the action, LXVII.

SYNTAX.

NOUNS.

Agreement: two sing. subj. with sing. verb, V. n. **8** (*b*), Obs. 4; appositive, V. n. **5** (*b*); X. n. **9** (*b*), Obs. 1; pred. noun or adj. XX. n. **4** (*d*).

Nom.: as subj. II. n. **2** (*f*'), Obs. 3, 5.

Accus.: as Obj. II. n. **2** (*f*'), **5** (*c*), Obs. 4, 6; with **in** and **inter**, IV. n. **7**, Obs. 1; extent of space, XVII. n. **7** (*b*), Obs. 7; duration of time, XX. n. **3** (*b*); **domum** XXVII. n. **6** (*b*); two accus. after compound verbs, XLIII. n. **5** (*b*); two accus. with verbs of asking and teaching, LVI. n. **1** (*b*); substantive **quod** clause as adv. accus. LIX. n. **6**.

Gen.: in general, and also possessive and partitive, VI.; words used with partitive gen. XVII. n. **8** (*b*), Obs. 8; with **potīrī**, XXIII. n. **7**; of quality, XXXIV. n. **2** (*b*); with special verbs, L. n. **6** (*e*); the adj. with force of gen. LXIV. n. **4** (*c*); gen. not always translated *of*, LXV. n. **5** (*b*), Obs. 1; of price, LXVIII. n. **4** (*b*).

Dat.: indir. obj. VIII. n. **2**, Obs. 1; with compounds, XIX. n. **12** (*c*), Obs. 3; with adj. XXI. n. **3** (*b*); with verbs of giving and saying, XXII. n. **2** (*b*), Obs. 3; of possessor, XXXII. n. **4** (*b*); of the agent, XLI. n. **7** (*b*); with certain verbs of taking away, LIX. n.

3 (*e*) ; the dat. where the accus. might be expected, LXII. n. **1**, Obs. **1** ; two dat. LXIII. n. **7**.

Abl. : in general and of respect, IV. ; with **ā** or **ab**, V. ; of separation, IX. n. **15**, Obs. **2** ; with **in**, IX. n. **18**, Obs. **3** ; of means, X. n. **11**, Obs. **2** ; absolute, XIII. n. **5**, Obs. **1** ; of cause, XVI. n. **2** (*c*) , Obs. **9** ; prep. with, XVII. n. **1**, Obs. **5** ; of agent, XX. n. **4** (*c*) ; of time, XXI. n. **2** ; translation of abl. absolute, XXIII. n. **5** ; abl. of degree of difference, XXVII. n. **1** ; place from which, and **domō**, XXVIII. n. **1** (*b*) ; abl. with special verbs, XXVIII. n. **2** ; prep. omitted with **locō** and **locīs**, XXIX. n. **9** ; abl. of quality, XXX. n. **2**, Obs. **1** ; of manner, XLIII. n. **1** ; of place without a prep. LV. n. **4** ; after comp. without **quam**, LV. n. **10** (*c*) ; of price, LX. n. **11** (*b*) ; time before or after, LXIII. n. **3**.

The locative case, LXI. n. **4**.

ADJECTIVES.

Agreement, VI. n. **2**, Obs. **7** ; used substantively, XXIX. n. **6** (*b*) ; with force of gen. IX. n. **5** (*b*) , LXIV. n. **4** (*c*) .

PRONOUNS.

Agreement, VII. n. **3**, Obs. **6** ; rel. translated like demonstrative, IX. n. **1** (*d*) , Obs. **1** ; **suus** and **eōrum** IX. n. **19**, Obs. **9** ; use of demonstrative as pers. pron. XIV. n. **9**, **12**, Obs. **8** ; use of reflexives, XIX. n. **12** (*d*) , Obs. **4** ; rel. agreeing with repeated antec. XXIX. n. **3** (*c*) ; pers. pron. often omitted, XL. n. **4** (*c*) (*d*) ; change of pers. pron. in indir. disc. XLVI. ; use of the rel. **quod** as an adv. accus. L. n. **5** ; meaning and use of **hic**, **ille**, **is**, **ipse**, LII. n. **1** (*a*) , LX. n. **7**.

VERBS.

Tenses, use of, LXVII. n. **4** (*b*) , Obs. **2** ; agreement, VII. n. **6** (*a*) ; omission of **esse**, XXIII. n. **3** (*a*) , Obs. **1** ; substantive clauses, XXIV. n. **3** (*b*) .

Ind. : force of the pf. XIII. n. **3**, Obs. **8** ; force of the impf. XVI. ; pres. in narrative, XXXI. n. **10** ; used after **ubi**, LVII. n. **1** (*a*) .

Subjv.: of purpose, XVIII. n. 13 (*d*), Obs. 10; obj. clause of purpose, XX. n. 5; neg. purpose, XXV. n. 1; translation of purpose clause, XXVIII. n. 4, Obs. 4; subjv. of result, XXIX. n. 6; purpose clauses introduced by a rel. XXX. n. 5; the subordinate clause of indir. disc. XXXII. n. 6; **dum** clauses of purpose, XXXIII. n. 7; subjv. of purpose after **quōd**, XXXIV. n. 5 (*b*); substantive clause of result, XXXVIII. n. 6; **cum** causal, XL. n. 2 (*b*); indir. question, XLIII. n. 2 (*c*); **cum** temporal in Cæsar, XLIV. n. 5; fut. time in the subjv. XLVI.; tenses of the subordinate clauses in indir. disc. XLVII.; **cum** concessive, LII. n. 2, Obs. 3; subjv. with **quīn**, LIX. n. 3 (*a*); with verbs of fearing, LXV. n. 3, Obs. 2; **ut** omitted after a verb of urging, LXVIII. n. 3.

Inf.: after a verb of saying, XIV. n. 2, Obs. 9; the subj. of the inf., XVII. n. 3, Obs. 6; complementary inf., XVIII. n. 8, Obs. 11; inf. with **jubēre**, XXVIII. n. 1; subj. of inf. in indir. disc. regularly expressed, XL. n. 4 (*d*); translation of pres. inf. after past tense of **debēre**; tense of inf. in indir. disc. XLIX. n. 5, 8, Obs. 2; the historical inf. LVI. n. 1 (*a*).

Gerunds, Supines, and Partic.: force of the partic. XIII. n. 7, Obs. 7; of the gerund, XVI. n. 12, Obs. 6; best translation of partic. XXVIII. n. 3, 7; gerundive meaning *ought* or *must*, XXXIII. n. 3 (*b*); the supine in **-um**, XL. n. 2 (*a*); gerundive after **cūrāre**, XLV. n. 3; gerundive expressing purpose, LXI. n. 1 (*e*).

PARTICLES (*i. e.* adv., conj., and prep.).

Et, **-que**, **atque**. VII. n. 1, Obs. 1; **ut** introduces both ind. and subjv. XXV. n. 6, Obs. 4; **quam** with the sup. XXXI. n. 5, Obs. 3; meaning of **ad** with names of towns, XXXI. n. 6; force of **num** in asking a question, L. n. 9 (*b*); the comp. of the adv. sometimes means *too*, LIV. n. 7 (*a*); difference in meaning of same prep. when used with different cases, LVII. n. 9; comparative with **quam**, LVIII. n. 4 (*a*); use or omission of the conj. LXV. n. 2 (*d*).

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Position: of verb, VII. n. 12 (*c*), Obs. 8; of monosyllabic prep. XV. n. 7 (*c*), Obs. 6; of adj. XXIV. n. 1 (*b*), Obs. 6; grouping of

words, XXIV. N. 4, Obs. 4; effect of position at beginning of a sentence, XXX. N. 1; effect of placing subj. at the end of a sentence, XXXI. N. 9; change of order for emphasis, XXXII. N. 7 (a); the unemphatic order, XXXIII. N. 3 (a); the order of the modifiers of the verb, XXXIV. N. 3 (b); position of word closely connected with the preceding or following clause, XXXVI. N. 2 (b); position of **enim**, **autem**, **quoque**, LI. N. 4 (f); the rel. before the principal clause, LI. N. 6 (b); the effect of separating words naturally connected, LXIII. N. 1 (a); position of the indefinite **quis**, LXVI. N. 4 (b), Obs. 4; position of obj. clauses of purpose, clauses of result, and quoted clauses, LXVIII. N. 10, Obs. 2.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Variation of meaning with context, XXX. N. 4, Obs. 2.

Roman way of reckoning time, XXX. N. 6, Obs. 2.

Four ways of expressing purpose, LX. N. 1, 6, Obs. 1.

THE HELVETIAN WAR.

B. G. I. 1-29.

NOTE.—The numbers within parentheses indicate the Lessons in which the following text is treated.

The divisions of Gaul.

1. (1) Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; (2) quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, (3) tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtæ, nostra Galli appellantur. (4) Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. (5) Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna
 5 flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. (6) Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciæ longissime absunt, (7) minimeque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea quæ ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; (8) proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum in-
 10 colunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. (9) Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt, quod fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. (10) Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine
 15 Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. (11) Belgæ ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad
 20 Pyrenæos montes et eam partem Oceani quæ est ad Hispaniam pertinet, spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble, forms a plot to seize the government in Gaul. The warlike Helvetii prepare to leave their narrow boundaries in a body.

2. (13) Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupidi-

tate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; (14) perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: (15) una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. (16) His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore adficiebantur. (17) Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

3. (18) His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quæ ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum cœmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetet, (19) cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt, in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. (20) In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantalædis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; (21) itemque Dumnorigi Hæduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. (22) Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent; (23) se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hæc oratione adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant.

The plot of Orgetorix discovered ; his sudden death.

4. (24) Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere cōegerunt. Damnatum pœnam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum
5 milia decem, undique cōggit, et omnes clientes obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; (25) per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest
10 suspitio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

The Helvetii continue their preparations ; they gain allies.

5. (27) Post ejus mortem, nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis excant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt;
15 frumentum omne, præterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut — domum reditionis spe sublata — paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; (28) trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque
20 exustis, una cum iis profisciscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

The Helvetii plan to cross the Roman Province. Cæsar suddenly appears and keeps them out.

6. (29) Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem
25 Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui

nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. (30) Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, Genua. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros (quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur) existimabant, vel vi co- 5 acturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone A. Gabinio consulibus.

7. (31) Cæsari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam 10 nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genuam pervenit. Provinciæ toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat — erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una; pontem, qui erat ad Genuam, jubet rescindi. (32) Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii 15 certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nammeius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent ‘sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.’ (33) Cæsar, quod memoria 20 tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat con- 25 venirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

8. (34) Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Hel- 30 vetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem, murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto, præsidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. (35) Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo 35 populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibitorium ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

The Helvetii obtain permission to go out by the only remaining way, — that through the country of the Sequani.

9. (36) Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, 5 propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Hæduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat; et 10 cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. (37) Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria 15 transeant.

Cæsar again objects, and quickly brings up his legions.

10. Cæsari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Hæduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provincia. (38) Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciæ futurum, ut 20 homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas, ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum præfecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et, qua proximum 25 iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. (39) Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his præliis pulsus, ab Ocelo, quod est ceterioris provinciæ extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris 30 provinciæ die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

Cæsar aroused by the entreaties of Roman allies, whose fields are being ravaged, at once attacks and defeats a fourth part of the Helvetii.

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Hæduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. (40) Hædui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: ‘Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut pæne in conspectu 5 exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint.’ (41) Eodem tempore Hædui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Hæduorum, Cæsarem certiores faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis viam hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Cæsarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi præter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus, Cæsar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. (43) Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Hæduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Cæsar certior factus est, tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; de tertia 20 vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen transierat. (44) Eos impeditos et inopinantes adgressus, magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugæ mandarunt, atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur *Tigurinus*: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor 25 pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum memoria L. Cassium consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quæ pars civitatis Helvetiæ insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps pœnas persolvit. (45) Qua in re Cæsar non 30 solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est; quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem prælio quo Cassium interfecerant.

The Helvetii proudly ask for peace, but refuse to accept the terms of Cæsar.

13. Hoc prælio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus xx ægerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno
 5 die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; ejus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. (46) Is ita cum Cæsare egit: 'Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi
 10 perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. (47) Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse,
 15 ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. (48) Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et interneccione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.'

14. (49) His Cæsar ita respondit: 'Eo sibi minus dubitationis
 20 dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alienjus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; (50) sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret.
 25 Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Hæduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? (51) Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo
 30 gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. (52) Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quæ polliceantur facturos intellegat, et si
 35 Hæduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint. item si

Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.' Divico respondit: 'Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti ob-sides accipere, non dare consuerint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.' Hoc responso dato, discessit.

Cæsar continues to pursue the Helvetii, who are elated by a successful skirmish.

15. (54) Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit 5
Cæsar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Hæduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui, cupi-
dius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helve-
tiorum prælium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. (55) Quo 10
prælio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multi-
tudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam, et novissimo agmine prælio nostros lacessere cœperunt. Cæsar suos
a prælio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis,
pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quin- 15
decim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut sex milibus passuum interesset.

The Hædui fail to furnish supplies; Liscus tells why.

16. (56) Interim cotidie Cæsar Hæduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, non modo frumenta 20
in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus sub-
vexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Hædui:
conferri, comportari, adesse, dicere. (57) Ubi se diutius duci 25
intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, — in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magis-
tratui præerat quem *vergobretum* appellant Hædui, qui creatur annuus, et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestatem, — graviter eos 30
accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam

necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; præsertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

17. (58) Tum demum Liscus, oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod
5 antea tacuerat proponit: 'Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud
plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi
magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem
detertere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant: si jam
principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Roma-
10 norum imperia præferre; (59) neque dubitare [debeant] quin, si Hel-
vetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Hæduis liberta-
tem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris
gerantur, hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coërceri non posse. Quin
etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Cæsari enuntiarit, intellegere
15 sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu
potuerit, tacuisse.'

Dumnorix, the Hæduan noble; his influence and his hate of the Romans.

18. (60) Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fra-
trem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus præsentibus eas res
jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quærit
20 ex solo ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius.
Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit; reperit esse vera: 'Ipsam esse
Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberali-
tatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Complures annos portoria
reliquaque omnia Hæduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta
25 habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo.
(61) His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad
largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo
sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed
etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse; atque hujus potentiæ
30 causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo
collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et
propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. (62) Favere
et cupere Helvetiis propter eam adfinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine
Cæsarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta,
35 et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris sit

restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratia, desperare.' (63) Reperiebat etiam in quærendo Cæsar, quod prælium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorige 5 atque ejus equitibus, — nam equitatui, quem auxilio Cæsari Hædui miserant, Dumnorix præerat: eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

*Cæsar spares Dumnorix out of friendship for his brother Divitiacus.
Dumnorix is reprimanded and watched.*

19. (64) Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspensiones certissimæ res accederent, — quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios tra- 10 duxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Hæduorum accusaretur, — satis esse causæ arbitratur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. (65) His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, 15 quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur. Itaque prius quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, et quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium 20 Procillum, principem Galliæ provinciæ, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul commonefacit quæ ipso præsentē in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta; (66) et ostendit quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit; petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi 25 vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20. Divitiacus, multis cum lacrimis Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statneret: 'Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua 30 Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; (67) quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Cæsare

gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existinaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.' (68) Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; 5 consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes 10 suspitiones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.¹

Cesar plans to attack the enemy in front and rear; his plan is defeated by the mistake of Considius.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura 15 montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo 20 hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab 25 hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissio ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas 30 copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne praelium committeret, nisi ipsius

¹ The Lessons cease at this point. Notes on the following Chapters will be found in Appendix B, and all new words in the General Vocabulary.

copiæ prope hostium castra visæ essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat, prælioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset pro viso sibi 5 renuntiassse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

The Romans, having turned aside to go to Bibracte, are followed by the Helvetii.

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Hæduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus 10 passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiat. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, 15 prælium non commisissent, sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere cœperunt.

A pitched battle is fought; the Helvetii are utterly defeated after a desperate struggle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, 20 misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum [ita uti supra]; sed in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri, et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his qui in 25 superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Cæsar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut æquato omnium periculo spem fugæ tolleret, cohortatus suos prælium commisit. Milites e loco superiore, pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis de-
 5 strictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et conligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut, diu jactato brachio, præoptarent scutum manu emittere, et nudo corpore
 10 pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant, et novissimis præsidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto adgressi circumvenire;
 15 et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et prælium redintegrare cœperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes sustineret.

26. Ita ancipiti prælio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius
 20 cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut cœperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto prælio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea
 25 quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotisque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo prælio circiter
 30 hominum milia cxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Cæsar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento
 35 neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

The Helvetii surrender ; Cæsar sends them back home, to keep out the Germans.

27. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum expectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Cæsar pervenit, obsides, arma, 5 servos, qui ad eos perflugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia VI ejus pagi qui *Verbigenus* appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio adficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari 10 posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

28. Quod ubi Cæsar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit : reductos in hostium numero habuit ; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, 15 armis, per fugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit ; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit. ut iis frumenti copiam facerent ; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. Id ea maxime 20 ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliæ provinciæ Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, potentibus Hæ-
duis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collo- 25 carent, concessit ; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque condicionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

The numbers of the Helvetian host.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulæ repertæ sunt litteris Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre 30 possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum

omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia cclxiii,
Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiiii, Rauracorum xxiii,
Boiorum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii.
Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum qui domum
5 redierunt, censu habito, ut Cæsar imperaverat, repertus est numerus
miliū c et x.

WORD FOR WORD TRANSLATION OF **B. G. I. 1-4** IN THE ORDER OF THE ORIGINAL.

NOTE.—The figures within parentheses indicate the Lessons of this book in which the text, corresponding to this translation, is treated.

1. (1) Gaul is as-a-whole divided into parts three; (2) of-which one inhabit the-Belgæ, another the-Aquitani, (3) the-third (part those inhabit) who of-themselves in-the-language Kelts, in-ours Gauls, are-called. (4) These all in-language, customs, laws, among themselves differ. (5) The Gauls from the Aquitani the Garumna river, from the Belgæ the Matrona and the Seine divide(s). (6) Of these (of) all the bravest are the Belgæ, on-account-of-this because from the civilization and also the refinement of-the-province very far they-are-distant, (7) least also to them merchants often go-to-and-fro, and those (things) which to enervate minds tend (they) bring in; (8) nearest also they are to-the-Germans, who across the Rhine dwell, with whom continually war they-wage. (9) Which from cause the Helvetii also the-rest-of the Gauls in-valor surpass, because almost (in) daily battles with the Germans they-contend, when either from their-own boundaries them they-keep-away, or themselves in their boundaries war wage. (10) Of-these one part, which the Gauls to-hold it has been said, beginning takes from the river Rhone; it-is-bounded by-the-Garumna river, by-the-ocean, by-the-territory of-the-Belgæ; it-reaches also on-the-side-of the Sequani and the Helvetii the river Rhine; it-slopes toward the north. (11) The Belgæ from the remotest of-Gaul boundaries take-their-rise, they-extend to the lower part of-the-river Rhine, they-look into the north and the rising sun. Aquitania from the Garumna river to the Pyrenean mountains and that part of-the-ocean which is near Spain extends, it-looks between the setting of-the-sun and the north.

2. (13) Among the Helvetii by-far the highest-born was and the richest Orgetorix. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (being)

consuls, of the royal-power by a desire being-led, a conspiracy of the nobility made, and upon-the-citizens prevailed that from territory their with all forces they-might-go-out: (14) very-easy to be, since in valor all they stood-before, of entire Gaul the supreme-power to obtain. This on-this-account more easily to-them he persuaded, because on-all-sides of the place by the nature the Helvetii are-hemmed-in: (15) one on side by the river Rhine very-broad and very-deep, which the country Helvetian from the Germans divides; the second on side by the mountain Jura very-high, which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; on the third (side) by the lake Geneva and by the river Rhone, which province our from the Helvetii divides. (16) On account of these things it-came-to-pass that both less widely they wandered and less easily (upon their) neighbors war to bear-in they were able; which in respect men of warring fond with great grief were-affected. (17) In-proportion-to the-great-number moreover of men, and in-proportion-to the glory of war and of bravery, narrow themselves territory to have they thought, which in (into) length thousands of paces two-hundred and forty, in (into) width a hundred and eighty extended.

3. (18) By these things led, and by the advice of Orgetorix deeply-moved, they determined those-things which to departure pertained to prepare, of beasts-of-burden and of carts as-much-as the greatest number to buy-up, sowings as-much-as the greatest to make, in-order-that on the journey plenty of grain might-be-on-hand, (19) with the nearest states peace and friendship to establish. For these things to be accomplished two-years for-them enough to be they thought, for the third year the departure by law they fix. For these things to be accomplished Orgetorix is chosen. This man (upon) himself an embassy to the states took. (20) In this journey he persuades Casticus, of Catamantalœdes son, a Sequanian, whose father the kingly-power among the Sequani many years had-held, and by the senate of the people Roman friend had been called, that the kingly-power in state his he seize, which (his) father before had had; (21) and also Dumnorix the Hæduan, brother of Divitiacus, who at that time the-chief-place in the state was holding and especially to the common-people acceptable was, that the same (thing) he try he persuades, and to-him daughter his in (into) marriage he gives. (22) Very-easy to do it is (to be) to-them he proves undertakings to accomplish, (on-

account-of-this) because he-himself of his-own state the government about-to-hold was: not it is (to be) doubtful that of the-whole-of Gaul most the Helvetii could; (23) he-himself with his forces and with his army for them the kingdoms about-to-win (is) he affirms. By this argument influenced, among themselves a pledge and an oath they give, and, the kingly-power having-been-seized, through three very-powerful and very-strong peoples of entire Gaul themselves to-be-masters to be able they hope.

4. (24) This conspiracy (thing) is to-the-Helvetii through informers (information) made-known. In-accordance-with-customs their, Orgetorix out-of chains (his) cause to plead they compelled. Condemned the punishment to follow it-was-fitting, (namely) that by fire he be burned. On the day appointed of the cause for (of) the pleading, Orgetorix to the trial all his retinue, about (to) of men thousands ten, from-all-sides collected, and all clients and debtors his, of whom a great number he had, to-the-same-place he brought-together; (25) through these, so-that he might not (his) cause plead, himself he rescued (snatched away). When the state on-account-of this act (thing) roused-up by arms right its to enforce was trying, and a multitude of men out-of the fields the magistrates were collecting, Orgetorix died; and not absent-is suspicion, as the Helvetii think, that he-himself to-himself death decreed.

FREE TRANSLATION OF B. G. I. 5-9.

5. (27) After his death the Helvetii, nevertheless, attempt to go forth as they had determined to do. When at length they thought they were ready for this expedition, they set fire to all their towns, about twelve in number, to about four hundred villages and to the remaining private buildings; they burned up all the corn except what they were about to carry with them, that, by taking away the hope of returning home, they might be more ready to encounter all perils; (28) they ordered every man to carry from home for himself meal enough for three months. They persuade the Rauraci, the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, their neighbors, to adopt the same plan, burn up all their towns and villages, and set out together with them; and the Boii, who formerly lived across the Rhine and had stormed Noreia

after crossing into the Noric territory, were received and joined to them.

6. (29) There were only two ways by which they could go out from home: one through the country of the Sequani, narrow and difficult, between mount Jura and the river Rhone, where with difficulty carts were drawn one by one; moreover, a very high mountain was overhanging, so that a very few could easily keep them out: the second way through our province, much more easy and open because between the territory of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, the latter of whom had recently been subdued, the Rhone flows and this is crossed in several places by a ford. (30) The last town of the Allobroges and the nearest town to the territory of the Helvetii is Geneva. From this town a bridge extends to the territory of the Helvetii. They thought they would either persuade the Allobroges (because they did not yet seem well-disposed toward the Roman people), or would compel them by force to allow them to go through their territory. When all things are prepared for departure, they appoint a day for all to come together at the bank of the Rhone. This day was the 28th of March, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

7. (31) When it was reported to Cæsar that they were trying to make their journey through our province, he hastened to set out from the city, and by the longest possible marches hurried into farther Gaul and arrived near Geneva. He levies upon the whole province as many soldiers as he can — there was, in all, one legion in farther Gaul — and orders the bridge which reached to Geneva to be cut down. (32) When the Helvetii were informed of his arrival, they sent to him as ambassadors the highest born of the state. Of this embassy Nammeius and Verudoctius held the highest place. They sent the ambassadors to say that they intended to make their journey through the province, because they had no other way, and to make it without any wrong-doing; they ask his permission to do this. (33) Cæsar, because he remembered that Lucius Cassius had been killed and his army defeated and sent under the yoke by the Helvetii, thought he ought not to grant this permission; and he did not think that men of hostile feelings, if the opportunity should be given them of making the journey would refrain from harm and wrong-doing. Yet, in order that time might intervene for the soldiers, whom he had ordered, to

come together, he replied to the legates that he would take time to think it over; they may return on the 13th of April if they want anything.

8. (34) In the meantime with that legion which he had with him and with the soldiers who had come together out of the province, he built a wall sixteen feet high and dug a ditch for nineteen miles from lake Geneva which flows into the river Rhone to mount Jura, which divides the territory of the Sequani from that of the Helvetii. After completing this work, he places garrisons here and there and fortifies redoubts, so that he can more easily keep them out, if they attempt to cross against his will. (35) When that day which he had appointed with the legates has come, and the legates have returned to him, he says he cannot, consistently with the custom and precedent of the Roman people, grant to any one a way through the province; and he declares that if they attempt to force their way he will keep them out. The Helvetii, disappointed in this hope, by joining boats and rafts which they had made, or, in some cases, by the fords of the Rhone where the depth of the river was least, tried, sometimes by day more frequently by night, to see if they could break through; but when they were repelled by the fortified work and by the running together of the soldiers, they desisted from this attempt.

9. (36) There was left the one way through the country of the Sequani, where, if the Sequani were unwilling, they could not go on account of the narrow pass. When they could not persuade these through their own efforts, they sent ambassadors to Dumnorix, the Hæduan, that by his mediation they might obtain their request from the Sequani. Dumnorix was very influential among the Sequani because of his kindness and liberality, and he was a friend to the Helvetii because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix from that state; influenced by the desire for kingly power he favored revolution, and also wished to have as many states as possible bound to him by his favors. (37) Therefore he takes upon himself this commission, and obtains his request from the Sequani, that they allow the Helvetii to go through their territory: and he has them give hostages to each other; the Sequani, that they will not keep the Helvetii from their journey; the Helvetii, that they will cross without wrong-doing and harm.

WORD FOR WORD TRANSLATION OF CÆSAR, B. G. I. 13, 14.

13. This battle having been made, the remaining forces of the Helvetii in order that to follow up he might be able, a bridge on the Arar to be made he cares for, and so (his) army he leads across. The Helvetii, by sudden his arrival deeply moved, when that which they themselves in twenty days with-the-greatest-difficulty had done, (namely) that the river they crossed, that man in one day had done they knew, legates to him they send; of which embassy Divico chief was, who in the war Cassian leader of the Helvetii had been. (46) This man thus with Cæsar discussed:

Direct form.

"If peace the people Roman with the Helvetii *will make*, into that part they *will go* and there *will be* the Helvetii, where them *you shall have placed* and to be *shall have wished*; but if in war to follow up *you shall continue*, remember both the former misfortune of the people Roman and the former valor of the Helvetii.

(47) Because unexpectedly one canton *you have attacked*, when those, who the river *had crossed*, to their own aid to bear not they were able, (*do*) not on account of that act (thing) either (to) *your* greatly valor *ascribe* (it), or *us* despise; *we* so from fathers and ancestors *our have learned*, that more by valor than by craft *we contend* or by ambuscades *we strive*.

(48) Wherefore (*do*) not *allow*, that that place, where *we shall have taken our stand* from the disaster of the people Roman and the extermination of the army a name *take*, or the memory *hand down*."

Quoted form.

'If peace the people Roman with the Helvetii *would make*, into that part they *would go* and there *would be* the Helvetii, where them *Cæsar should place* and to be *should wish*; but if in war to follow up *he should continue*, let him remember both the former misfortune of the people Roman and the former valor of the Helvetii.

(47) Because unexpectedly one canton *he had attacked*, when those, who the river *had crossed*, to their own aid to bear not they were able, let him not on account of that act (thing) either (to) *his own* greatly valor *ascribe* (it), or *them* despise; *they* so from fathers and ancestors *their had learned*, that more by valor than by craft *they contended* or by ambuscades *they strove*.

(48) Wherefore let him not *allow*, that that place where *they should take their stand* from the disaster of the people Roman and the extermination of the army a name *take*, or the memory *hand down*.'

14. (49) To these Cæsar thus replied :

“On this account *to me* less of doubt *is given*, because those things which *you have called to mind* by the memory *I hold*, and by this the more heavily *I bear* (them) by which the less because of the desert of the people Roman *they happened*; who if of any wrong to themselves conscious had been, not *it was* difficult to be on guard;

(50) but by this *they were deceived*, because neither (a thing) committed by themselves *did they know* wherefore they should fear, nor without a cause (it) to be feared was *did they think*. As to which if of the former insult to be unmindful *I am willing*, also of recent wrongs, because *I (being) unwilling* a way through the province through force *you have attempted*, because the Hædui, because the Ambarri, because the Allobroges *you have annoyed*, the memory to lay aside *am I able*?

(51) Because in *your* victory so insolently *you glory*, and because that so long *you* with impunity injuries have carried *you wonder*, to the same place *tends*. *Are wont for the gods immortal*, that by this more heavily the men from the change of fortune (things) may sorrow, whom on account of crime their to punish *they wish*, to these more prosperous sometimes fortune (things) and a longer impunity to grant.

“On this account *to him* less of doubt *was given*, because those things which *the Helvetian ambassadors had called to mind* by the memory *he held*, and by this the more heavily *he bore* (them) by which the less because of the desert of the people Roman *they had happened*; who if of any wrong to themselves conscious had been, not *it was* difficult to be on guard;

(50) but by this *they had been deceived*, because neither (a thing) committed by themselves *did they know* wherefore they should fear, nor without a cause (it) to be feared was *did they think*. As to which if of the former insult to be unmindful *he was willing*, also of recent wrongs, because *he (being) unwilling* a way through the province through force *they had attempted*, because the Hædui, because the Ambarri, because the Allobroges *they had annoyed*, the memory to lay aside *was he able*?

(51) Because in *their* victory so insolently *they glory*, and because that so long *they* with impunity injuries have carried *they wonder*, to the same place *tends*. *Are wont for the gods immortal*, that by this more heavily the men from the change of fortune (things) may sorrow, whom on account of crime their to punish *they wish*, to these more prosperous sometimes fortune (things) and a longer impunity to grant.

(52) Although *these things* are so, yet if hostages *by you to me shall be given*, in order that those things which *you promise (you)* will do *I may know*, and if to the Hædui for the wrongs which upon them and allies their *you have inflicted*, also if to the Allobroges satisfaction *you will give (make)*, *I with you peace will make.*"

(52) Although *these things* are so, yet if hostages *by them to him should be given*, in order that those things which *they promise (they)* will do *he may know*, and if to the Hædui for the wrongs which upon them and allies their *they have inflicted*, also if to the Allobroges satisfaction *they would give (make)*, *he with them peace would make.*'

Divico replied :

"So *the Helvetii* by ancestors their *have been taught*, that hostages to receive, not to give *they are wont*, of this thing *the people Roman are witnesses.*"

'So *the Helvetii* by ancestors their *have been taught*, that hostages to receive, not to give *they are wont*, of this thing *the people Roman are witnesses.*'

This reply having been given, he departed.

APPENDIX A.

METHOD OF READING LATIN.

THE teacher should see to it that the text is mastered in the order of the original, and not by finding first predicate, then subject, etc. To accomplish this, the following method is recommended :

When Lesson XIX. is reached, and before the Text is studied at all, let all the class close their books and give exclusive attention to the teacher. He will write upon the board the first word of the Text, **cōstituērunt**, and a colloquy something like what follows will ensue: "What do you know about **cōstituērunt**?" Ans., "It is the pf. ind. act., 3d plur., and means *they arranged or have arranged, they determined or have determined*." "What may we expect after it?" Ans., "A noun in the accus. case, or an inf. as in the preceding lesson."

Now add the next word, and the Text will stand :

cōstituērunt cum . . .

"What may **cum** be?" Ans., "Either a prep. or a conj." "If it is a prep., what may we expect after it?" Ans., "An abl.; cf. **cum omnibus cōpiīs XIII.**" "If a conj., what?" Ans., "The ind. or subj.; cf. **cum prohibent IX., cum præstārent XIV.**

cōstituērunt cum proximīs . . .

"What possibilities for **proximīs**?" Ans., "Dat. or abl. plur.; probably an adj., but perhaps a noun; cf. **omnibus XIV., finitimīs XVI.**"

cōstituērunt cum prōximīs cīvitātibus . . .

"What possibilities for **cīvitātibus**?" Ans., "Dat. or abl. plur." "What construction for **proximīs** is probable?" Ans., "Adj. limiting **cīvitātibus**." "If **cīvitātibus** is an abl., will it certainly show that **cum** is a prep.?"¹ Ans., "No; cf. **cum virtūte XIV.**, where **cum** is a conj., and **virtūte** an abl. of respect, which does not admit a prep."

¹ In the first book of Cesar's Gallie War, the conj. **cum** is immediately followed, in the order of the text, eight times by an abl. which might be an abl. governed by a prep. The lesson of this fact for the beginner is: Be cautious, and wait for the Latin to develop its own meaning.

cōstituērunt cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem . . .

“What are the possibilities for **pācem**?” Ans., “It is an accus. sing. and may be the obj. of a verb, *cf.* **numerum** XVIII.; the subj. of an inf., *cf.* **Gallōs** X.; the pred. of an inf., *cf.* **perfacile** XIV.; or an appositive, *cf.* **Rhēnum** X.” “May it be the obj. of **cōstituērunt**?” Ans., “Yes.” “Are we sure that it is?” Ans., “No.”

amīcitiam, which follows, after **et**, has the same possibilities as **pācem**.

cōstituērunt cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre.

Here the sentence ends. “How may we now determine the force of **cum**?” Ans., “It must be a prep., as no ind. or subjv. — one of which modes is necessary after the conj. **cum** — is now possible in this sentence.” “May **pācem et amīcitiam** be the obj. of **cōstituērunt**?” Ans., “No, for that would complete the sentence without bringing in **cōfirmāre** at all.” “May **pācem et amīcitiam** be the subj. of **cōfirmāre**?” Ans., “No, for the verb **cōfirmāre** requires an obj., and the use of these nouns as subj. would leave it without any.” “What, then, is the construction of **cōfirmāre**?” Ans., “It is the complementary inf. after **cōstituērunt**, with **pācem et amīcitiam** as its objects.”

This method should be continued through this Lesson and through every Lesson for several weeks. It is slow at first, but will rapidly grow easier, and will secure alertness of thought and a ready command of the language. Occasionally written exercises should be substituted for the oral, to test the progress of the class, and constant translation by hearing as well as sight should be required. The Notes of these Lessons will be adapted to this method. The writer is very greatly indebted to Professor W. G. Hale, of Cornell University, who has explained the method very fully in a little pamphlet called “The Art of Reading Latin,” published by Ginn & Co., Boston. Every Latin teacher should read it.

APPENDIX B.

Notes on B. G. I. 21–29.

CHAPTER 21.

certior factus . . . cōnsēdisse; *cf.* **certior factus trādūxisse** XLIII. — **mīlia**; XVII. n. 7 (*b*) — **mīsit**; its obj. understood would be some such word as **mīlitēs**; this obj. is the antec. of **quī**, and **quī cōgnōscerent** expresses purpose; the clauses **quālis esset nātūra** and **quālis (esset) ascēnsus** are indir. questions and the obj. of **cōgnōscerent**; *cf.* XLIII. n. 2 (*c*); **quālis** is an interrogative adj., not an adv. With what does it agree? — **facilem**; limits **ascēnsus** understood. — **dē tertiā vigiliā**; *cf.* XLIII. Vocab. — **ducibus**; in apposition with **iīs**. **cōgnōverant**; for form and meaning, *cf.* **cōgnōscerent** above, LXVI. n. 8, Obs 2, and LXIV. Vocab. — **jugum**: strictly a *yoke*, but here a (*yoke-shaped*) *ridge* — **ascendere**; *cf.* **ascēnsus** above, and LX. n. 5. — **sit**; the preceding **quid** is a substantive interrogative pron.; *cf.* the adj. pron. **quī** LIV. v. 6 (*d*); **quid** is declined like the indefinite **quis**; see A. & G. 104. H. 188, I.; **cōnsiliī** is a predicate gen., *what is of his plan, what belongs to his plan, what his plan is*; *cf.* **tantī** LXVIII. and A. & G. 214, c. H. 401; explain mode and tense of **sit**. — **ierant**, for **īverant**, from **īre**. — **habēbātur**; for meaning, *cf.* LV. n. 7 (*a*); **perītissimus**; **reī mīlitāris** depends upon it, *very experienced of military science*, where we should say in Eng. *very experienced in military science*; see A. & G. 218, a. H. 399, I. 2. — **Sullæ**; nom. **Sulla**, though a masculine noun; *cf.* III. n. 5. — **Crassī** depends on **exercitū**, supplied from what goes before; see H. 398, 1 and n. 1.

CHAPTER 22.

lūce; for form of nom. *cf.* XVIII. n. 2, Obs. 2; for const. *cf.* XXI. n. 2. — **summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain*, not *the highest mountain*; *cf.* IX. n. 5 (*b*). — **passibus**; for const., *cf.* LV. n. 10 (*c*); limited by preceding **mīlle**, which is here an indecl. adj.; see A. & G. 94, e. H. 178.

— **Labiēnī**; cf. **Crassī**, Chap. 21. What pron. is used in such cases in Eng., to supply the place of the omitted noun? — **equō admissō**, (*his*) *horse having been let go, with loose reins, at full speed*; the root meaning of **mittere** is *to let go*; distinguish **equus** from **eques**, **equitātus**, **equester**. — **voluerit**; review the conjug. of this verb, A. & G. 138. H. 293; explain mode and tense. — **cōgnōvisse**; give the exact words which **Considius** addressed to **Cæsar**; **īnsignibus**, here from the noun **īnsigne**, *a distinguishing mark, decoration, uniform*. — **præceptum erat**: for mode, cf. XXV. n. 6, Obs. 4. — **nē . . . committeret, nisi . . . vīsæ essent**. What were the exact words of **Cæsar** to **Labienus**? XLVII. n. 6, XLVI. n. 3. — **fieret**; voice? cf. **fiēbat** XVI. Vocab.; why subjv.? — **abstinēbat**; for const. of preceding **præliō**, cf. IX. n. 15. — **multō diē**, *in the much day, late in the day*; why abl.? — **perterritum**; force of **per**? XVIII. n. 3, (b). — **prō vīsō**, *in place of (a thing) seen, as seen*; **vīsō**, in form a partic., is here a noun. — **quō cōnsuērat intervallō** = **intervallō quō cōnsuērat**, *at the interval at which he was accustomed*; cf. **quæ cīvītās est** for **cīvītās quæ est** XXXVII.; for impf. force of the plpf. **cōnsuērat**, cf. LI. n. 4 (c).

CHAPTER 23.

diēi; a gen. depending on **postrīdiē**, which is an adv., but was originally a noun, being contracted from **posterō diē**, *on the day after*; see A. & G. 214, g. H. 398, 5. — **cum . . . oportēret**; cf. **quō oportēret** LVII. n. 2. — **Bibracte**; nom. same as abl.; see A. & G. 57, d. H. 63, 2. — **cōpiōsissimō**; the nom. masc. of the positive **cōpiōsus** is formed from **cōpia** with the ending **-ōsus**; for force of this ending, cf. **bellicōsus** XXXVIII., **sēditōsus** LVIII., and A. & G. 164, k. H. 328. — **aberat**; for preceding **mīlibus**, cf. **passibus**, Chap. 22; for **passuum**, cf. XVII. n. 8. — **exīstimāvit**; for preceding **prōspiciendum**, cf. XXXIII. n. 3 (b); **reī frūmentāriæ**, *for the grain supply*; dat. with **prōspiciendum** (**esse**); cf. **rēspública**, **rēs familiāris**, **rēs militāris**, **novæ rēs**. — **contendit**; like the preceding **āvertit** has the same form in 3d sing. pres. ind. as in pf. ind.; cf. LXVII. n. 6; here probably pf. like preceding **exīstimāvit**. — **seu** for **sive**. — **eō magis quod**; **magis** is used as the comp. of **māgnopere** XLVII.; for whole expression, cf. **hōc facilius . . . quod** XIV., **eō . . . minus . . . quod** XLIX. — **sive**; cf. preceding **seu**. — **rē**; const.? — **ā novissimō agmine**; for use of same expression without **ā**, cf. LV.; for meaning of **ā**, cf. X. n. 14. — **cœpērunt**; for translation of preceding abl. absolutes, cf. XXVIII. n. 7 (c).

CHAPTER 24.

id animum advertit; the last two words are usually written as one; cf. LXIV. and note also the difference in Lat. between the expressions meaning *to notice* and *to punish*; for two accus. **id** and **animum**, cf. XLIII. n. 5 (b), Gram. Less. — **quī sustinēret . . . mīsit**; cf. other examples of the rel. clause of purpose in XXXII., LIV., and Chap. 21, and note that in all these instances the antec. of the rel. is the obj. of the verb on which the purpose clause depends. — **in mediō colle**; *in the middle of the hill, i. e. half way up, not in the middle of the summit*; cf. **multō diē**, Chap. 22. What important difference between the way of expressing the time in which and the place in which? — [**ita utī suprā**]; in brackets because it is doubtful whether these words belong in the text; omit in translation. — **complērī**; voice? for parts, cf. **flēns** LXVIII. — **eum**; antec.? — **impedīmenta**; from **impedire**, means *that which hinders, (i. e. makes the march slow,) the baggage train*, including the beasts of burden, while **sarcinās**, above, refers to the *personal baggage* of each soldier, something like the modern *knapsacks*, though not carried on the back. — **cōnfertissimā aciē**, *in a very crowded line of battle*; why abl.? difference in meaning between **aciēs** and **agmen**?

CHAPTER 25.

equīs: What does this word suggest as to the noun with which preceded. ing **suō** agrees, and what const. for this noun is suggested by **remōtīs**? — **æquātō periculō**, lit. *the danger having been made equal*, freely, *by making the danger equal*; cf. **spē sublātā** XXVII. — **perfrēgērunt**; from **perfringere**. — **fēcērunt**: How does this verb show that the first word in the sentence is not a nom. sing.? What word shows that it is not an accus. plur.? Why may it not be a nom. plur. neut.? What, then, must be its case, antec., and const.? — **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō**; for const. cf. LXIII. n. 7. — **sē inflexisset**, *had bent itself, had become bent*; note that the shields of soldiers standing next to one another were overlapped in forming the phalanx, and that these shields, which were carried on the left arm, were pinned and held together by the Roman javelins; for mode of **inflexisset**, cf. XL. n. 2 (b). — **sinistrā**; cf. **dextram** LXVIII. — **ēmittere**; for meaning, cf. **admissō**, Chap. 22; **præoptārent**, preceding, is a subjv. of result; **manū**; fem. by exception; why abl.? — **mille passuum**; **mille** is here a noun like **mīlia**, but cf. **mille**, Chap. 22. — **eō**; here an adv. meaning *to that place, thither*, not the demonstrative pron. —

succēdentibus; on the use of this pres. partic., *cf.* LX. n. 12, Obs. 2. — **novissimīs præsidiō**; *cf.* **Gallīs impedimentō**, above; **novissimīs** means *to those at the rear*, or simply *to the rear*; the best Eng. for the whole expression? — **latere apertō**; for omission of prep., *cf.* **novissimō agmine** LV. — **cœpērunt**; followed by **circumvenire** as well as **instāre**. — **conversa sīgna . . . intulērunt**, *they bore in the turned about standards, they wheeled about and advanced*. Make a list of the military names and expressions in this and the preceding Chap. — **resisteret**; used with the dat.; **victīs**, from **vincere**, means *those conquered, the conquered*; *cf.* **novissimīs**, above. Of what is the preceding **aciēs** the subj.? — **venientēs**; *cf.* **succēdentibus**. Note the large number of partic. in this Chap., and that in many cases the Eng. would have clauses instead. Make these partic. a special study, noting the difference in meaning between those of dep. verbs and the others, and the variety of Eng. translation required in rendering them idiomatically.

CHAPTER 26.

pūgnātum est; used impersonally, lit. translated *it was fought*, freely *there was fighting*; the preceding adv. may then be freely translated like an adj.; the preceding **ancipitī prœliō** is an abl. of manner; **ancipitī** is from nom. **anceps**. — **diūtius** is a comp. from **diū**. — **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one party . . . the other*; *cf.* XV. n. 7, Gram. Less. — **ab hōrā septimā**; the day from sunrise to sunset, whatever its length, was divided into twelve equal hours, which must, of course, have varied in length with the seasons; *cf.*, for the night, XLIII., Vocab. — **pūgnātum sit**; for const., *cf.* LII. n. 2, Obs. 3. — **ad multam noctem**; *cf.* **multō diē**, Chap. 22. — **prō vallō**; *for, in place of, as, a rampart*. — **objēcerant**; for force of **ob** in composition, *cf.* X. n. 4, Obs. 8. — **coniciēbant** for **conjiciēbant**; see A. & G. 10, d. H. 36, 4, and foot-note 1, also XX. n. 1. — **potitī sunt**; for case used with it, *cf.* XIV. n. 7. — **ūnus ē filiīs**, *one out of the sons, one of the sons*; see A. & G. 216, c. H. 397, 3, n. 3, and foot-note 1. — **iērunt** for **ivērunt**. — **pervēnērunt**; **partem (noctis)** in this sentence is the accus. of duration of time, and **diē** the abl. of time at which; with these regular uses contrast **nocte** in the preceding clause and **prœliō**, near the beginning of the Chap., both of which are exceptionally used in the abl. to express duration of time; see A. & G. 256, b. H. 379, 1. — **Lingonas**; *cf.* L. n. 8 (c). — **juvārent**; for dir. form, *cf.* **nē . . . tribueret** XLVII. — **quī . . . habitūrum**; *cf.* **sī . . . accidisset . . . existimātūrum** LXVII.; force of the position of **quī**? for omission of prep. with **locō**, *cf.* XXIX. n. 9; **Helvētiōs** is the obj. of **habēret**, to be supplied;

eōs, referring to **Lingonas**, is the obj. of **habiturum** (**esse**); if the Lingones harbored the enemies of the Romans, they would be regarded as enemies by Cæsar.

CHAPTER 27.

convēnissent: here transitive; for position and translation of its subj., **quī**, cf. IX. n. 1 (*d*), Obs. 1; XXXVI. n. 2 (*b*), Gram. Less. — **jūssisset**; note the four subjv. after one conj., viz. **cum**; why subjv.? **essent**, preceding, is subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc., **jūssisset** being a verb of saying. — **eō . . . pervēnit**; cf. **eō**, Chap. 25. — **perfūgissent**; for mode, cf. **essent**, above. — **ea conquīruntur**; **ea**, referring to **obsidēs**, **arma**, **servōs**, in preceding sentence, is neut. because the *hostages* and *slaves* are here regarded as things rather than men; cf. H. 439, 2, and n. — **hominum mīlia . . . pāgī**; note the possessive and partitive gen. depending on the same noun. — **Verbigēnus appellātur**; for case of **Verbigēnus**, cf. XX. n. 4 (*d*). — **perterritī**; limits **mīlia**; for gender, see A. & G. 187, *d*. H. 438, 6. — **adficerentur**; for const., cf. LXV. n. 3, Obs. 2. — **quod . . . exīstimārent**; subjv. in indir. disc.; Cæsar is here quoting two reports or perhaps two conjectures of his own in regard to the departure of the Helvetii. — **prīmā nocte**; *in the first of the night, in the early part of the night*. What other adj. have been used, like **prīmā**, to designate a part of a thing, and in what phrases?

CHAPTER 28.

resciit for **rescivit**, from **resciscere**; cf. LXVI. n. 8, Obs. 2; for tense, cf. LVII. n. 1 (*a*). — **imperāvit**; takes what case? LXII. n. 1, Obs. 1; for **quōrum**, preceding its antec. **his**, cf. **quæ pars . . . ea** XLIV.; dir. obj. of **imperāvit**? XX. n. 5 (*b*); **purgātī**; nom., agreeing with subj. of **vellent**; see A. & G. 272, *b*. H. 536, 2, 1); **sibi**, *to him, in his sight*; **vellent**; form in dir. disc.? — **in numerō hostium**, lit. *in the number of enemies, freely as enemies*; cf. **prō vallō**, Chap. 26. — **unde**, *from which place, whence*; cf. **ubi**, *where*, **ibi**, *there*, **eō**, *thither*, **inde**, *thence*. — **revertī**; What means *they returned*? cf. **reverterentur** XXXIII., **revertērunt** XXXV. — **domī**; cf. LXI. n. 4. — **tolerārent** is here a result clause; the preceding **quō** = **ut eō**, and has **nihil** as its antec., lit. *there was nothing (of such a sort) that they would by means of it endure hunger*. — **ipsōs**; the antec. are **Helvētiōs**, **Tulingōs**, **Lato-brīgōs** — **nē . . . trānsīrent**; a subjv. after the idea of fearing sug-

gested in **nōluit**; cf. LXV. n. 3, Obs. 2. — **Galliæ prōvinciæ**; which of these two words is a dat.? — **concēssit**; note the emphatic position of **Boiōs**; it is the obj. of **collocārent**, of which the subj. is **Hæduī** understood; **Hæduīs** is the dat. of indir. obj. after **concēssit**; for **collocārent**, cf. **conquirerent**, above; for **virtūte**, cf. XXX. n. 2; **dedērunt**, pf. of **dare**; antec. of preceding **quibus** and **illī**? for force of **atque**, see A. & G. 156, a. H. 554 I. 2, n.; translated lit. *into an equal condition and they themselves were*, freely, *into the same condition as themselves*.

CHAPTER 29.

litteræ; this word in the plur. may mean either *letters of the alphabet*, *a letter (epistle)*, or *literature*; it is here used in the first sense. — **quibus in tabulīs**; for repetition of antec., cf. **quibus itineribus** XXIX. — **exisset**; for form, cf. XLIV. 5; it is the verb of an indir. question, the preceding **quī** being an interrogative adj.; cf. **quās in partēs** LIV.; for **domō** cf. XXVIII. n. 1 (b). — **quī . . . possent**; the clause describes **eōrum** like an adj., emphasizing a characteristic or condition rather than a fact; see A. & G. 320. II. 503, I. — **sēparātīm**; for the adv. ending **-tim**, cf. **nōminātīm**, **prīvātīm**, **præsertīm**. — **puerī**; stem and nom.? how different from stem and nom. of **agrī**? — **senēs**; see A. & G. 61. H. 66. — **summa**, *sum*, here a noun; the preceding **rērum** may be translated *items*. — **erat . . . CCLXIII**; **capitum**, *souls*, rather than *heads*; a partitive gen. depending on **mīlia**; review in this connection the numerals, A. & G. 94. H. 174. — **possent**; cf. **possent**, above. — **ad mīlia**; **ad** is here an adv. meaning *about*; note that **fuērunt** agrees with predicate noun rather than subj.; see A. & G. 204, b. H. 462; cf., however, **summa erat mīlia**, above. — **eōrum quī . . . rediērunt**; why ind. here, but subjv. in **eōrum quī . . . possent**, above?

APPENDIX C.

WORD-LISTS.

Words occurring five or more times in the First Book of Cæsar's "Gallic War."

-A NOUNS.

amīcitia	cōpia	grātia	prōvincia
Belgæ	fortūna	injūria	summa
causa	Gallia	memoria	

-O NOUNS.

ager	concilium	Labiēnus	prælium
amīcus	colloquium	lēgātus	rēgnum
animus	cōnsilium	Liseus	Rhēnus
annus	Divitiacus	locus	Rhodanus
Ariovistus	equus	Lūcius	Rōmānus
arma	frūmentum	Marcus	Sēquanī
auxilium	Gallus	numerus	socius
bellum	Germānī	oppidum	solum
beneficium	Hæduī	pāgus	tēlum
carrus	Helvētī	perīculum	Valerius
castra	imperium	populus	

3d DECL. NOUNS.

agmen	finis	mōns	pāx
Allobrogēs	flūmen	multitūdō	pēs
Cæsar	frāter	nēmo	prīnceps
cīvitās	homo	nihil	ratio
cōnsuētūdo	hostis	nox	salūs
cōnsul	iter	obses	tempus
dicio	jūs	ōrātio	timor
Dumnorix	legio	Orgetorix	virtūs
eques	miles	pars	vīs
explōrātor	milia	pater	voluntās

-Ū NOUNS.

adventus	equitātus	impetus	passus
domus	exercitus	manus	senātus

-Ē NOUNS.

aciēs	diēs	fidēs	rēs	spēs
-------	------	-------	-----	------

VERBS.*1st Conjug. (-ā verbs).*

appellāre	dare	imperāre	nūntiāre	pūgnāre
arbitrārī	dēspērāre	impetrāre	occupāre	putāre
comparāre	ēnūntiāre	jūdicāre	perturbāre	rogāre
cōfirmāre	existimāre	mandāre	postulāre	superāre

2d Conjug. (-ē verbs).

commovēre	habēre	obtinēre	perterrēre	respondēre
continēre	jubēre	oportet	pollicērī	tenēre
dēbēre	licet	persuādēre	prohibēre	vidēre

3d Conjug. (-e verbs).

accidere	committere	discēdere	mittere	recipere
accipere	cōficere	dividere	ostendere	redūcere
addūcere	conjicere	dūcere	patī	relinquere
agere	cōsīdere	facere	pellere	revertī
animadvertere	cōstituere	gerere	perficere	sequī
capere	cōsuēscere	incolere	petere	statuere
cōgere	contendere	īnstruere	proficiscī	trāducere
cōgnōscere	dēligere	intelligere	quærere	ūtī
colloquī	dīcere	intermittere	querī	vincere

4th Conjug. (-ī verbs).

audīre	convenīre	pervenīre	reperīre	venīre
--------	-----------	-----------	----------	--------

Irreg. Verbs.

abesse	esse	īnferre	præesse	trānsīre
cōpisse	exīre	īre	referre	velle
cōferre	ferre	posse	tollere	

ADJECTIVES.

Positive degree.

alius	multus	reliquus	tōtus
alter	omnis	Rōmānus	ullus
barbarus	paucus	tantus	ūnus
māgnus	quartus	tertius	uter

Comp. degree.

amplior	gravior	mājor	minor	plūs	superior
---------	---------	-------	-------	------	----------

Sup. degree.

nōbilissimus	novissimus	plūrimus	prīmus	proximus	summus
--------------	------------	----------	--------	----------	--------

ADVERBS.

Positive degree.

circiter	ita	nōn	satis	tum
facile	jam	proptereā	tam	ubi
ibi	neque	quam	tamen	

Comp. degree.

amplius	gravius	minus
---------	---------	-------

Sup. degree.

maximē	prīmum
--------	--------

ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>A. & G.</i> . . .	Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar	<i>impers.</i> . . .	impersonal
<i>abl.</i> . . .	ablative	<i>impf.</i> . . .	imperfect
<i>accus.</i> . . .	accusative	<i>indef.</i> . . .	indefinite
<i>act.</i> . . .	active	<i>ind.</i> . . .	indicative
<i>adj.</i> . . .	adjective	<i>indir.</i> . . .	indirect
<i>adv.</i> . . .	adverb	<i>inf.</i> . . .	infinitive
<i>antec.</i> . . .	antecedent	<i>Lat.</i> . . .	Latin
<i>Bk.</i> . . .	Book	<i>lit.</i> . . .	literal
<i>Chap.</i> . . .	Chapter	<i>masc.</i> . . .	masculine
<i>cf.</i> . . .	CONFER, compare	<i>N.</i> . . .	Note.
<i>comp.</i> . . .	comparative	<i>neut.</i> . . .	neuter
<i>conj.</i> . . .	conjunction	<i>nom.</i> . . .	nominative
<i>conj'g.</i> . . .	conjugation	<i>obj.</i> . . .	objective
<i>const.</i> . . .	construction	<i>Obs.</i> . . .	Observation
<i>dat.</i> . . .	dative	<i>p.</i> . . .	page
<i>decl.</i> . . .	declension	<i>partic.</i> . . .	participle
<i>dep.</i> . . .	deponent	<i>pass.</i> . . .	passive
<i>dir.</i> . . .	direct	<i>pers.</i> . . .	person
<i>disc.</i> . . .	discourse	<i>pf.</i> . . .	perfect
<i>e. g.</i> . . .	EXEMPLĪ GRĀTIĀ, for example	<i>plur.</i> . . .	plural
<i>Eng.</i> . . .	English	<i>plpf.</i> . . .	pluperfect
<i>etc.</i> . . .	ET CĒTERA, and so forth	<i>prep.</i> . . .	preposition
<i>fem.</i> . . .	feminine	<i>pres.</i> . . .	present
<i>fut.</i> . . .	future	<i>pron.</i> . . .	pronoun
<i>gen.</i> . . .	genitive	<i>rel.</i> . . .	relative
<i>Gram.</i> . . .	Grammar	<i>sing.</i> . . .	singular
<i>H.</i> . . .	Harkness's Latin Grammar	<i>subj.</i> . . .	subject
<i>i. e.</i> . . .	ID EST, that is	<i>subjv.</i> . . .	subjunctive
		<i>sup.</i> . . .	superlative
		<i>viz.</i> . . .	namely
		<i>Vocab.</i> . . .	Vocabulary

The same abbreviation has generally been used for the singular and the plural.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The following Vocabulary contains all the Latin words found in the first twenty-nine Chapters of Cæsar's Gallic War.

It has been considered not only unnecessary but hurtful to the student constantly to repeat in the Vocabulary facts which he should already know, and facts which are governed by those simple rules, a knowledge of which is essential to even an elementary use of the language. The repetition of such facts blinds the pupil to the existence of the rules which govern them, and destroys that self-reliance which is necessary to success in sight reading. Accordingly, the pupil has not been told with every recurrence of a noun in **-tās** that its gen. is **-tātis**, or with every recurrence of a verb in **-āre** that its pf. and partic. are in **-āvit** and **-ātus**. Exceptions to regular rules are always given. If the gen. of a noun in **-us** is not given, it is to be considered a masc. of the **-o** declension.

A slight divergence from the usual method of giving the parts of verbs has been made. In the Text of Cæsar, **B. G. I. 1-29**, neither the 1st sing. of the pres. ind. nor that of the pf. ind. is found at all. It would, then, be a serious departure from the inductive method to use these forms in giving the parts of every verb. Accordingly, the pres. ind. (except that of verbs in **-io** of the 3d conjug.) has been omitted, and the 3d sing. of the pf. has been used instead of the 1st sing. The pf. pass. or fut. act. partic. has been used as one of the principal parts instead of the supine. The objections to the use of the latter have been well stated by Mr. Tetlow in the Preface to his *Inductive Lessons in Latin*.

In this connection it is not out of place to speak of the unfortunate convention by which the 1st sing. of the pres. ind. is used in naming verbs and in giving the principal parts. It seems only reasonable that a principal part should be a common form, and should show one of the stems of the verb. The 1st sing. of the pres. ind. is almost unknown in the narrative authors usually read by beginners; and in the 1st and 3d conjug. it does not show the pres. stem, and, therefore, in naming verbs the 1st and 3d conjug. are entirely undistinguished.

The words in parentheses are merely kindred with the leading word, and, in very many cases, are not the words from which this is derived. In so elementary a book, it has been thought unwise to discuss or use roots to any extent.

A.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by*.
abdere, -didit, -ditus, *to put away, hide*.
abdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead away*.

abesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be away or distant*.

abstinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, trans. and intrans., *to keep from*.

ac, another form for **atque**; it is used only before consonants.

accēdere, -cēssit, -cēssus, *to go to*,

approach, be added; *accēdit quod* or *ut*, it is added that, moreover.

accidere, -cidit (ad and *cadere*, to fall), fall upon, fall out, happen (used generally of unfortunate occurrences, hence Eng. *accident*).

accipere (*accipio*), -cēpit, -ceptus, to take to one's self, receive, accept.

accurrere, -currit (or -cucurrit), to run to, run up.

accūsāre (ad and *causa*), to call to account, blame, accuse.

aciēs, -ēi, a sharp edge, a sharp glance, a battle line (presenting sharp weapons).

ācritēr, sharply.

addūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead to, draw to, induce.

adesse, -fuit, -futūrus, to be near, be present, assist.

adficere (*adfacio*), -fēcit, -fectus, to do to (somebody), affect.

adfīnitās (*fīnēs*), nearness, relationship by marriage.

adgredī; see *aggredī*.

adhibēre, to hold, summon, employ.

admīrārī, to wonder at, admire.

admittere, -mīsīt, -missus, to let go to, send to, allow.

adorīrī, -ortus, to rise against, attack.

adscīscere, -scīvit, -scītus, to take to one's self, unite.

adventus, -ūs, a coming to, approach.

adversus (in form the pf. partic. of *advertere*), turned toward, in front of, adverse, unfavorable.

advertere, -vertit, -versus, to turn to or toward.

ædificium, a building.

ægerrumē or **ægerrimē**, adv. in sup., with the greatest trouble.

æquāre, to make equal.

ager, **agrī**, field, territory.

agere, **ēgit**, **āctus**, to set in motion, drive, do, discuss.

aggredī (*aggredior*), -gressus (ad and *gradī*), to go towards, to attack.

agmen (*agere*), that which is set in motion, an army on the march, a line (of march); **novissimum agmen**, the newest or last line, the rear.

alere, **aluit**, **altus**, to nourish, support.

aliēnus, (**alius**), belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.

aliquī, indef. adj., any.

alius, -a, -ud (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. or pron., one of any number, another.

Alpēs, the Alps.

alter, -era, -erum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. or pron., one of two, the other.

altitūdo, height, depth; cf. **altus**.

altus, high or deep.

amīcitia, friendship; cf. **amīcus**, friend.

amīcus, friend.

āmittere, -mīsīt, -missus, to let (a thing) go away, send away, lose.

amor (**amāre**), love, desire.

amplus, ample, much, great.

anceps, -cipitis (**ambo**, both and **caput**, a head), having a head on both sides, double, doubtful.

angustīæ, -ārūm (**angustus**), narrowness, straits, a narrow pass.

angustus, narrow.

animadvertere (**animus**, **ad**, and **vertere**), to turn the mind or attention to, notice (in this sense takes simple accus.); in **hominem animadvertere**, to punish a man; cf. the Eng. expression *to attend to*, in sense of *to punish*.

animus, soul, mind, feeling, courage.

annus, a year.

annuus (**annus**), annual, for a year.

ante, adv. and prep., before.

anteā, adv., before.

antiquus (**ante**), old, ancient, former.

aperire, -peruit, -pertus, to uncover, open; the partic. **apertus** is commonly used as a simple adj. meaning uncovered, open.

appellāre, to call (by name).

Aprilis, -is, masc. (probably from **aperire**, to open), the month of April; also very frequently an adj.

apud, prep. with accus., among, near, with.

Aquitānī, the Aquitani.

Aquitānia, Aquitania.

Arar or **Araris** (**Ararim** accus., and **Ararī** abl., are found), the name of a Gallic river, the Saône.

arbitrāri, to judge, think.

arma, nom. plur. neut., armor, arms.

ascendere or **adscendere**, -scendit, -scēnsus (ad and scandere), to climb up, ascend

ascēnsus or **adscēnsus**, -ūs, a climbing up, ascent.

atque, and, and also.

attingere, -tigit, -tactus, to touch upon, reach.

auctōritās, advice, authority, influence.

audācia (**audāx**), boldness, audacity.

audācter, boldly.

audēre, ausus est, to dare.

augēre, auxit, auctus, trans., to increase.

Aulus, a Roman first or individual name; generally represented in Lat. authors by the initial A.

aut, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

autem, but, moreover.

auxilium, help, aid; in plur. auxiliary troops.

āvertere, -vertit, -versus, to turn away.

avus, grandfather.

B.

bellāre, to war, wage war.

bellicōsus (**bellum**), warlike.

bellum, war.

beneficium (**bene**, well, and **facere**), well-doing, a favor.

biduum, the space of two days, two days.

biennium (**bis** and **annus**), the space of two years.

bipartītō, adv. (**bis**, twice, and **pars**), in two parts.

bonitās, goodness.

bonus, good, goodly.

brāchium, the fore-arm, the arm.

C.

cadere, cecidit, cāsūrus, to fall.

Cæsar, -is, full name **Cāius Jūlius Cæsar**, a great Roman, — writer, general, statesman.

Cāius, more correctly written **Gāius** or **Gājus**, a Roman first name, usually represented by C.

calamitās, disaster, calamity.

capere (**capiō**), cēpit, captus, to take.

captivus, a captive.

caput, -itis, a head.

carrus, a cart.

Cassiānus, adj., pertaining to Cassius.

castellum, a small fort, a castle.

castra, -ōrum (the sing. **castrum**, a fortress, is not found in Cæsar), a camp.

cāsus, -ūs (*cadere*, to fall), a falling, accident, misfortune, chance.

Catamantalœdēs, -is, a Gallic name.

causa, cause, reason.

cavēre, cāvit, cautus, to take care, beware of.

celeriter, adv. (*celerius*, *celerrimē*), quickly.

Celtæ, the *Kelts*.

cēnsus, -ūs (*cēnsēre*, to reckon), a numbering or rating, a census.

centum, indecl., one hundred.

certus, sure, certain; *hominem certiorē facere*, to inform a man.

cibārius, pertaining to food; *cibāria*, neut. plur. as noun, provisions.

circiter, adv., about.

circuitus, -ūs (*circum* and *ire*), a going around, a circuit.

circum, prep. with accus., around, about.

circumvenīre, -vēnit, -ventus, to come around, surround, impose upon, circumvent.

citerior, adj. in comp. (positive not found), nearer, *hither*; *citerior Gallia*, Gaul on this side the Alps, i. e. on the Roman or eastern side; *ulterior Gallia*, Gaul beyond the Alps.

citrā, prep. with accus., on this side of.

cīvītās, citizenship, a state, the body-politic.

claudere, clausit, clausus, to close.

cliēns, a client, dependent.

coēmere (*con* and *emere*), -ēmit, -emptus, to buy up.

cœpit, cœpisse (*he, she, it*) began.

coërcēre, to enclose on all sides, restrain, coerce.

cōgere, cōgēit, cōactus (*con*, to-

gether, and *agere*, to drive, lead), to drive together, collect, compel.

cōgnōscere, cōgnōvit, cōgnitus, to learn thoroughly; *cōgnōvit*, he has learned, he knows.

cohortārī, to urge strongly, encourage.

collis, masc. by exception, a hill.

collocāre, to place together, set up, establish.

colloquī, -locūtus, to confer, converse.

combūrere, -būssit, -būstus, to burn up, consume.

commeāre, to go back and forth.

commemorāre, to call to mind, to mention.

committere, -misit, -missus, to cause to go together, commit, cause; *prælium committere*, to join battle.

commodē, adv. (*con* and *modus*, a measure — in due measure), conveniently.

commonefacere (*commonefacio*), -fēcit, -factus, to put in mind, remind forcibly.

commovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, to move deeply.

commūnīre, to fortify strongly.

commūtāre, to change entirely.

commūtatio (*mūtāre*, to change), a changing, change.

comparāre (*con*, intensive and *parāre*), to prepare with zeal.

comperīre, -perit, -pertus, to find out certainly (by searching or inquiry).

complūrēs, complūra or complūria neut., very many.

comportāre, to bring together.

complexī, -plexus, to embrace.

complēre, -plēvit, -plētus, to fill out, complete.

cōnārī, to try.

cōnātum, *a thing attempted, an attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs (cōnārī), *an attempt.*

concēdere, -cēssit, -cēssus, *to go away, yield.*

concidere, -cīdit, -cīsus (con, intensive, and cædere, *to cut*), *to cut to pieces, to kill.*

conciliāre, *to bring together, win over.*

concilium, *an assembly, council; cf.*

cōnsilium, *a plan, counsel.*

concursum, -ūs (con and currere, *to run*), *a running together.*

condicio and, less correctly, conditio (condicere), *an agreement, condition.*

condonāre, *to give up, to pardon.*

condūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to bring together, hire.*

cōnferre, -tulit, collātus, *to bring together, collect, compare; where con is intensive, to bring vigorously or rapidly, sē conferre, to betake one's self.*

cōnfertus (cōnfercīre, *to cram together*), *pressed together, crowded.*

cōnficere, -fēcit, -fectus (con and facere), *to accomplish, complete.*

cōnfidēre, -fīsus est (with act. meaning), *to trust fully, confide in.*

cōnfirmāre, *to strengthen, establish, encourage, affirm.*

conicere or conicere (conicio), -jēcit, -jectus, *to throw or put together, to conjecture, to hurl with force.*

conjūrātio (con and jūrāre, *to swear, take oath*), *a swearing together, a conspiracy.*

conligāre or colligāre, *to fasten together.*

conquīrere, -quīsivit, -quīsitus, (con and quære) *to search for.*

cōnsanguineus, adj. or noun (con and sanguis, *blood*), *akin by blood.*

cōnsciscere, -scīvit, -scītus, *to decree, determine.*

cōnscius (con, with, and scīre, *to know*), *knowing with one's self or with others, conscious.*

cōnscribere, -scripsit, -scriptus, *to write together, enroll.*

cōnsequi, -secūtus, *to follow up, to obtain.*

cōnsidere, -sēdit, -sessūrus, *to sit down (used especially of a large number), to hold a session, to encamp.*

cōnsilium, *a plan.*

cōnsistere, -stitit, *to take a stand, stop.*

cōnsolārī, *to console, to comfort.*

cōnspectus, -ūs (cōnspicere, *to see*), *sight.*

cōnspicārī, *to get sight of, to see.*

cōnstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to set together, arrange, determine.*

cōnsuēscere, -suēvit, -suētus, *to accustom one's self; in pf. to have accustomed one's self, to be wont.*

cōnsul, consul, *the title of the chief executive officer at Rome.*

cōnsumere, -sūmpsit, -sūmptus (con, intensive, wholly, and sūmere, *to take*), *to consume, destroy.*

contendere, -tendit, -tentus, *to strive, hasten.*

continenter, *continually.*

continēre, -tinuit, -tentus, *to hold together, bound.*

contrā, adv., and prep. with accus., *against.*

contumēlia, *effrontery, insult.*

convenīre, -vēnit, -ventus, *to come together, to meet; convenit, it is agreed, it is fitting.*

conventus, -ūs, *a coming together, a meeting.*

convertere, -vertit, -versus, *to turn or wheel about.*

convocāre, *to call together, summon.*

cōpia, *plenty*; in plur. *forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, *well-supplied, copious.*

cotīdiē or **quotīdiē**, *daily.*

creāre, *to make, to elect.*

cremāre, *to burn.*

crēscere, **crēvit**, **crētus**, intrans., *to grow, increase*; cf. the trans. **augēre**.

cultus, -ūs, *culture, way of living, civilization.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

cum (**quum**), conj., *when, since, although.*

cupere (**cupio**), **cupīvit** or **-iit**, **cupītus**, *to long for, desire, be well-disposed toward* (in the last sense it takes a dat.).

cupidē, *eagerly.*

cupiditās, *desire, cupidity.*

cupidus, *desirous, fond.*

cūrāre, *to take care.*

custōs, -ōdis, *a guard.*

D.

damnāre, *to condemn.*

dare, **dedit**, **datus**, *to give.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from, concerning, for.*

dēbēre, **dēbuit**, **dēbitus** (**dē** and **habēre**), *to have or keep from some one, to owe, to be bound*; **dēbet**, *he ought.*

decem, indec., *ten.*

dēcipere (**dēcipio**), **-cēpit**, **-ceptus**, *to catch away, entrap, deceive.*

decurio (**decem**), *the commander of a company of ten cavalry, a decurion.*

dēditicius, *one who has surrendered, a captive.*

dēditio (**dedere**, *to give up*), *a surrender.*

dēfendere, **-fendit**, **-fēnsus**, *to ward off, to defend.*

dēfessus (partic. of **dēfetiscī**, *to crack open*), *exhausted.*

dēicere or **dējicere** (**dēicio**), **-jēcit**, **-jectus**, *to cast down.*

deinde (**dē** and **inde**), *from thence, thereafter, next.*

dēliberāre (from **dē** and **librāre**, *to weigh*) *to weigh well, ponder.*

dēligere, **-lēgit**, **-lēctus**, *to choose from, select.*

dēminuere, **-minuit**, **-minūtus** (**dē** and **minus**), *to lessen.*

dēmōnstrāre, *to show.*

dēmum, adv., *at last.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally.*

dēpōnere, **-posuit**, **-positus**, *to place aside, lay aside.*

dēpopulārī, *to lay waste.*

dēprecātor (**dēprecārī**, *to beg off, to intercede*) *an intercessor, mediator.*

dēsīgnāre (**sīgnum**, *a mark*), *to mark out, point out, describe.*

dēsistere, **-stitit**, **-stitūrus**, *to stand off, to desist.*

dēspērāre, *to be hopeless, to despair.*

dēspicere (**dēspicio**), **-spexit**, **-spectus**, *to look down upon, to despise.*

dēstituere, **-stituit**, **-stitūtus**, *to set away from, to abandon.*

dēstringere, **-strinxit**, **-strictus**, *to strip off*; of a sword, *to strip off the scabbard, unsheathe, draw.*

dēterrēre, *to frighten away from, to deter.*

deus, *a god.*

dexter, -tera, -terum, or more frequently -tra, -trum, *the right*; dextra (manus, fem., *the hand*, being understood), *the right hand*.

dīcere, dīxit, dictus, *to say, tell*.

dictio (dīcere), *a saying, pleading*.

diēs, -ēī, masc., sometimes fem., *day, time*.

differre, distulit, dilātus, *to bear apart, differ*.

difficilis, *difficult*.

dīmittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send apart, dismiss*.

discēdere, -cēssit, -cēssūrus, *to go apart, depart*.

discere, didicit, *to learn*.

disicere or disjicere (disicio), -jēcit, -jectus, *to cast apart*.

dispōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to place apart, place here and there*.

dītissimus, *richest*.

diū, adv., *long* (used of time, not of space).

diūturnus, adj. (diū), *long* (of time).

dīvidere, -vīsīt, -vīsus, *to divide*.

dolēre, doluit, *to feel pain, to grieve for*.

dolor, *pain, grief*.

dolus, *craft, deceit*.

domus, ūs, fem. (has some forms of the -o decl.), *a house, a home*.

dubitāre, *to doubt, to hesitate*.

dubitātio, *doubt*.

dubius, *doubtful*.

ducentī (duo and centum), *two hundred*.

dūcere, dūxit, ductus, *to lead, draw, consider*.

dum, conj., *while, until*.

Dumnorix, -igis, a man's name.

duo, duæ, duo, irreg., *two*.

duodecim (duo and decem), indecl., *twelve*.

dux, -cis (dūcere), *a leader*.

E.

ēdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead out*.

effēmināre, *to make effeminate, enervate*.

efferre, extulit, ēlātus, *to bear out*.

ego, I; see mihi, mē, nōs.

ēgredi (ēgredior), -gressus, *to go out*.

ēgregius (ē and grex, -gis, *a herd*), out of the (common) herd, hence, eminent, excellent.

emere, ēmit, emptus, *to buy*.

ēmittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to let go forth, to send out*.

enim, *for*; placed generally after the first word of the clause.

ēnūtiāre, *to speak out or openly, make known*.

eo; see īre.

eō, adv., *to that place, thither*.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.

eques, equitis (equus, *a horse*), *a horseman, a knight*.

equester, equestris, equestre, adj., *belonging to a horseman, cavalry*.

equitātus, -ūs, *a collection of horsemen, cavalry*.

equus (same root as āc-er, *sharp*), *a horse*.

ēripere (ēripio), -ripuit, -reptus, *to snatch away*.

esse (sum), fuit, futūrus, *to be*.

et, *and*.

etiam, *even, also*.

ēvellere, -vellit, -vulsus, *to tear out*.

ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.

exemplum, *an example.*

exercitus, -ūs, *an exercised and disciplined body, an army.*

exīre, -iit, -itum, *to go out.*

exīstimāre (**ex** and **æstimāre**), *to estimate, think.*

exīstimātio (**exīstimāre**), *estimation, opinion.*

expedīre, *to set free from (something); the pf. pass. partic. is commonly used like an adj. in all respects, and means unencumbered, without baggage, open.*

explōrātor (**explōrāre**, *to search out*), *a spy, a scout.*

expūgnāre (*to fight successfully*), *to take by storm.*

expectāre, *to wait for, to expect.*

extrēmus, *outermost, extreme, the end of; cf. reliquus, the rest of.*

F.

facere (**facio**), **fēcit**, **factus**, *to make or do.*

facile, *adv., easily.*

facilis, *easy.*

facultās, *opportunity.*

famēs, -is, *hunger.*

familia, *a body of slaves, household, retinue.*

familiāris (**familia**), *belonging to the household, private, intimate; as noun, a friend.*

favēre, **fāvit**, **fautūrus**, *to favor; takes dat. of person.*

ferē, *adv., almost.*

ferre, **tulit**, **lātus**, *irreg, to bear.*

ferrum, *iron.*

fidēs, **eī**, *faith, a promise, a promise of protection, protection.*

fieri, **factus**, *to be made, to be done, to*

happen; used as pass. of simple verb facere, but not when it is compounded with a prep.

filia, *daughter.*

filius, *son.*

fīnis, *masc. by exception, the end; in plur. limits, confines, territory.*

fīnitimus (**fīnēs**, *borders, boundaries*), *bordering upon, neighboring; in plur. masc. usually a noun meaning neighbors.*

firmus, *firm, strong.*

flāgitāre, *to ask repeatedly or earnestly.*

flēre, **flēvit**, **flētus**, *to weep.*

fluere, **flūxit**, **fluxus**, *to flow.*

flūmen, *a river.*

fortis, *brave.*

fortitūdo (**fortis**), *bravery.*

fortūna, *fortune (either good or bad); in plur. goods, possessions.*

fossa, *that which has been dug, a ditch.*

frāter, -tris, *brother.*

frāternus, *of a brother, brotherly, fraternal.*

frīgus, -oris, *cold, coldness.*

fructus, -ūs (**fruī**, *to enjoy*), *enjoyment, what one enjoys, fruit.*

frūmentārius (**frūmentum**), *belonging to grain, fruitful.*

frūmentum, *grain.*

fuga, *flight.*

fugitīvus, *a runaway, deserter.*

G.

Gallus, *a Gaul.*

Gallia, *Gaul.*

Gallicus, *Gallic.*

Garumna, *the Garumna.*

Genāva or **Genua**, *Geneva, a town in Switzerland.*

gerere, gessit, gestus, to carry on, wage.

Germānī, the Germans.

gladius, a sword.

glōria, a glory.

glōriārī, to boast, glory.

Græcī, the Greeks.

Græcus, adj., Greek.

grātia, favor either shown or received, hence, either kindness or popularity.

graviter, heavily, severely; graviter ferre, to be annoyed at, be angry at.

H.

habēre, to have, hold.

Hæduus, a Hædian, one of the Hædii.

Hellēnēs, the Hellenes.

Helvētia, the country of the Helvetii, now Switzerland.

Helvētius, Helvetian, of the Helvetii.

Helvētīi, the Helvetii.

hībernus (hiems, winter), belonging to winter; hīberna, -ōrum (with castra understood), winter quarters.

hic, hæc, hoc, this.

hiemāre, to pass the winter, to winter.

Hispānia, Spain.

homo, -inis, a human being, man.

honor, honor, office.

hōra, an hour.

hortārī, to urge.

hostis, a stranger, an enemy; in plur. the enemy.

hūmānitās, refinement.

I.

ibi, there; cf. ubi, where, when.

ictus, -ūs, (icere, to strike), a blow.

idem, eadem, idem, the same.

Idūs, -uum, fem. by exception, the Ides, the 13th of the month, except in March, May, July, and Oct., when they came on the 15th.

ignōrāre (in neg. and root of (g)nōscere), not to know, to be ignorant.

ille, illa, illud, that, used of what is remote in contrast to what is near.

illic (ille), in that place, there, yonder.

immortālis (in neg. and mors), undying, immortal.

impedimentum, that which impedes, a hindrance; in plur. the heavy baggage of an army (including the beasts which drew it); cf. sarcinæ.

impedire, -pedivit, -peditus (in, against, and pēs, foot), to impede, to place at a disadvantage.

impendēre, no pf. nor pf. partic., intrans., to overhang.

imperāre, to command; prōvinciæ militēs imperāre, to give orders to the province for soldiers.

imperium, supreme power.

impetrāre, to obtain one's request.

impetus, -ūs (in prep. and petere), an attack.

importāre, they bring in, import.

improbus, above or below the proper standard, base, excessive, wicked.

imprōvisō, adv. (in neg., prō, before, fore, vīsus, seen), unexpectedly.

impūne, adv., without punishment, with impunity.

impūnitās, impunity.

in, prep., into, with accus.; in, with abl.

incendere, -cendit, -cēnsus, to set fire to; cf. combūrere.

incitāre, to urge on, incite.

incolere, -coluit (in prep. and **colere**, to cultivate), to inhabit.

incommodus, inconvenient; as a noun in the neut., an inconvenience, a mild term for misfortune.

incrēdibilis, not to be believed, incredible, remarkable.

inde, from that place, thence; cf. **ibi**, there.

indiciū, information.

indūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead into, induce.

Inferior, lower.

Inferre, intulit, illātus, to bear into or upon, to wage upon.

Inflectere, -flēxit, -flectus, to bend.

Influere, -flūxit, -fluxūrus, to flow, or flow into.

inimicus (in neg. and **amicus**), unfriendly.

initium, beginning.

injūria, injustice, wrong.

injūssū, found only in abl., without command.

inopia (in neg. and **ops**, help; cf. **cōpia**, from **con** and **ops**), want, scarcity, helplessness.

inopīnāns, adj., unexpected, unaware.

Insciēns (in neg. and **sciēre**, to know), simple adj., though pres. partic. in form, not knowing, unaware.

Insequi, -secūtus, to follow up.

Insidiae, nom. plur. (in, in, and **sedēre**, to sit), an ambush, treachery.

Insignis (in, upon, and **signum**, a mark), marked, remarkable; **insigne**, neut. as noun, a mark, badge of office, uniform.

Insolenter (in neg. and **solēre**, to be accustomed), strangely, insolently.

Instāre, -stitit, -stātūrus, to stand

upon, to approach, to be near at hand, to press upon.

Instituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, to arrange, construct, instruct.

Institūtum, custom, institution.

Instruere, -strūxit, -structus, to build into, set in order, draw up.

intellegere or **-ligere**, -lēxit, -lēctus (inter, between, and **legere**, to choose), to understand, to know.

inter, prep. with **accus.**, between, among.

intercēdere, -cēssit, -cēssūrus, to go between, to intervene.

interclūdere, -clūsit, -clūsus (inter, between and **claudere**, to shut), to shut off, cut off.

interdiū, adv., by day.

interdum, adv., sometimes.

intereā, adv., meanwhile.

interesse, -fuit, -futūrus, to be between or among, to take part in; **interest**, it makes a difference, it interests.

interficere (**interficio**), -fēcit, -fec-tus, to kill.

interim, meanwhile.

intermittere, -mīsit, -missus, to cause to go between, leave off, interrupt.

internecio, destruction, extermination.

interpres, -etis, an interpreter.

intervallum (inter, between, and **vallum**, the breastwork of a camp), a distance between, an interval.

invītus, unwilling.

ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, intensive or emphatic pron., self.

Ire (**eo**), **īvit**, **itum**, to go.

is, **ea**, **id**, dem. pron., this, that; he, she, it.

ita, adv., so.

itaque, and so, therefore.

item, adv., likewise, also.

iter, itineris, neut., journey, route, march.

J.

jactāre, to throw about; when used of words, to discuss.

jam, adv., at this time (as contrasted with the past or future), at last, already.

jubēre, jūssit, jūssus, to order.

jūdicāre, to judge.

jūdicium, a judgment, a trial, a court of justice.

jugum, that which joins, a yoke (conquered armies, in token of submission, were often compelled to pass under a yoke consisting of a spear set on two uprights, cf. Eng. subjugate) a (yoke-shaped) hill, a ridge.

jumentum, a yoke or draught animal, beast of burden.

jungere, junxit, junctus, to join.

Jūra, a mountain chain extending from the Rhone to the Rhine.

jūs, jūris, right, law, justice.

jūsjurandum (really two words, jūs and jurandum, and declined as two), an oath.

jūstitia (jūstus, just), justice, sense of justice, uprightness.

juvāre, jūvit, jūtus, to help; juvat, impers., it pleases.

K.

Kalendæ, -ārum, the Calends, the first day of a month.

L.

laccessere, laccessivit or laccessiit, laccessitus, to provoke, assail.

lacrima, a tear.

lacus, -ūs, a lake.

largīrī, largītus, to give bountifully, give bribes.

largiter, largely, bountifully.

largitio, lavish giving, bribery, liberality.

lātē, widely.

lātus, wide, broad.

lātītūdo, width.

latus, -eris, the side.

lēgatio, embassy; cf. lēgātus, ambassador.

lēgātus, lieutenant, ambassador.

legio, a legion; the Roman legion was a body of soldiers, numbering in the army of Cæsar about 3600 men.

Lemannus, the name of a lake, Leman or Geneva.

lēnitās (lēnis, smooth), smoothness, gentleness.

lēx, -gis, law.

liberālītās (liber, free), the quality of a freeman, generosity.

liberē (from adj. liber), freely.

liberī (the sing., meaning child, not found), children.

libertās, freedom, liberty.

licērī, to bid (at an auction).

licet, it is permitted; ei licet, it is permitted to him, he may.

Lingonēs, the Lingones.

lingua, the tongue, language.

linter, -tris, fem. by exception, a boat.

littera or lītera, a written sign, a letter of the alphabet; in plur. letters, a letter (epistle), literature.

locus, a place; **loca**, nom. plur. (as if from nom. sing. **locum**).

longē, adv., far.

longitūdo, length.

loquī, **locūtus**, to speak.

Lūcius, a Roman first name, usually represented by **L**.

lūx, -cis, light.

M.

magis (comp. of **māgnopere**), more.

magistrātus, -ūs, a civil office, a civil officer, magistrate.

māgnopere, adv. (**māgnō** and **opere**), with great toil, greatly; **magis**, comp., more; **maximē**, sup., very greatly, most, especially.

māgnus, great, large.

māior (comp. of **māgnus**), greater; **mājōrēs nātū** or simply **mājōrēs**, those greater by birth, ancestors, elders.

malefīcium (male, adv., badly, and **facere**), wrong-doing, an evil deed.

mandāre (**manus**, the hand, and **dare**), to give into one's hand, commit.

manus, -ūs, fem. by exception, a hand, an armed force (as the instrument by which war is waged).

matara, a javelin used by the Gauls.

māter, -tris, mother.

mātrimōnium, marriage.

Mātrona, the Matrona.

mātūrāre, to hasten.

mātūrus, ripe, early.

maximē, very greatly, most, especially

maximus, irregular sup. of **māgnus**, greatest.

mē, accus., me; see **ego**.

medius, adj., the middle of; cf. the meaning of **summus** and **extrēmus**.

memoria, memory.

mēnsis, -is, masc. by exception, a month.

mercātor, merchant.

merērī, **meritus**, to merit, deserve, earn.

meritum (**merērī**), desert, merit.

mētīrī, **mēnsus**, to measure.

meus, my, mine.

mihi, dat., me; see **ego**.

militāris (**mīles**), belonging to a soldier, military.

mīles, -itis, soldier.

mīlle (in sing. usually an indecl. adj.; in plur. a noun decl. like **mare**), a thousand.

minimē, adv. in sup., least, by no means; cf. **minus**.

minimus (irreg. sup. of **parvus**), least, very small.

minor (comp. of **parvus**), smaller, less.

minuere, **minuit**, **minūtus** (**minus**), to lessen.

minus, adv. in comp., less; **minimē**, sup., least.

mittere, **mīsit**, **missus**, to let go, send.

modo, adv., only.

molere, **moluit**, **molitus**, to grind.

monēre, to remind, warn, advise.

mōns, masc. by exception, a mountain.

morārī, trans. or intrans., to delay; distinguish **morī**, to die.

morī (rarely **morīrī**), **mortuus**, to die.

mors, death.

mōs, **mōris**, custom; in plur. customs, manners, character.

movēre, **mōvit**, **mōtus**, to move.

mulier, -is, a woman.

multitūdo, a great number, multitude.

multus, *much*; plur. *many*; plus, comp. neut.; **plūrimus**, sup.
mūnīre (*mœnia*, walls), to wall, to fortify.
mūnitio, a fortifying, a fortification.
mūrus, a wall.

N.

nam, conj., *for*.
nātūra, nature, disposition.
nāvis, a ship, a boat.
nē, conj., that . . . not, not to, lest; after words of fearing, *that*.
nec; see **neque**.
necēssāriō, adv., necessarily, of necessity.
necēssārius, necessary; as noun, a close friend or near relative.
negāre, to say . . . not, to deny.
nēmo, **nēminī** dat. (*nē* and *homo*), no man, no one; the gen. and abl. sing. of this word are supplied by **nullius** and **nullō**.
neque or **nec**, adv. and conj., and not; **neque** . . . **neque**, neither . . . nor.
nervus, a sinew, tendon, nerve; in plur. power, strength.
nēve or **neu** (*nē* and *ve*, or), or not.
nex, **necis**, death, especially a violent death.
nihilum, nothing; **nihil**, the indecl. form, is more common.
nisi, if not, unless.
nītī, **nīsus**, or **nīxus**, to rest upon, rely upon, strive.
nōbilis, well-known, noble by birth.
nōbilitās, nobility; cf. **nōbilis**, high-born.
noctū, adv., by night.

nōlle, **nōluit** (*nē* and *velle*), to be unwilling.
nōmen, a name.
nōminātim, adv., by name.
nōn, adv., not.
nōnāgintā, ninety.
nōndum, not yet.
nōnnullus, not none, some.
nōnnunquam, not never, sometimes; cf. **nōnnullus**.
Nōricus, of the Norici, Noric.
nōs, nom. or accus. plur., we or us.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
novem, indecl., nine.
novus, new; **novæ rēs**, new things, revolution.
nox, -ctis, night.
nūbere, **nūpsit**, **nūptus**, to veil one's self; hence, to marry (said of the woman); **hominī nūbere**, to veil one's self for a man, marry a man.
nūdus, naked, unprotected.
nullus (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj. (**ne**, not, and **ullus**, any), not any, no, none.
num, interrogative particle; in direct questions expects a neg. answer.
numerus, a number.
nūntiāre, to announce.
nūntius (perhaps akin to **novus**, new), a bearer of news, messenger, news.
nūper, recently.

O.

ob, prep. with accus., on account of; in composition, in the way of, against.
obērātus, one bound to service for debt, a debtor.
obicere or **-jicere** (**obicio**), -jēcit, -jēctus, to throw in the way or against.
oblīvīscī, -lītus, to forget.

obsecrāre (*ob* and *sacrum*, *sacred*),
to ask on religious grounds, to beseech.

obses, obsidis, a *hostage*; hostages
were human beings given by one
person or nation to another, in
order to guarantee the fulfilment
of an agreement; if the agreement
was broken, the hostages might be
killed.

obstringere, -strinxit, -strictus, to
bind.

obtinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, to hold,
possess, occupy.

occāsus, -ūs, a *falling*, setting.

occidere, -cīdit, -cīsus (*ob* and
cædere, to cut), to cut down, kill.

occultāre, to conceal.

occupāre, to seize, take possession of.
Oceanus, the ocean.

Ōcelum, a town in Cisalpine Gaul.

octo, eight.

octōdecim, eighteen.

octōgintā, indecl. adj., eighty.

oculus, an eye.

ōdisse, ōdit, to hate; found only in
the pf. system, and in the pf. is
pres. in sense.

offendere, -fendit, -fēnsus, to hit
against, stumble, blunder, offend.

offēnsio (offendere), a striking
against, a stumbling, offence.

omnīnō, adv., altogether, in all.

omnis, all, every.

oportet, impers. verb, it is necessary,
it behooves.

oppidum, a stronghold, a town. [*siege*.

oppūgnāre, to fight against, storm, be-
ops, ability; in plur. means, resources.

opus, -eris, a work, a piece of work.

ōrāre, to entreat, beg.

ōrātiō, a speech, oration.

Orgetorix, -igis, an Helvetian chief.

oriēns, adj., rising.

orīrī, ortus, to rise.

ostendere, ostendit, ostentus (*obs*
for *ob*, and *tendere*, to stretch),
to stretch in the way of, show.

P.

pābulātiō (pābulārī), a getting of
food, a foraging.

pābulum (pāscere, to feed, pasture),
that which feeds, food, especially for
animals, fodder.

pācāre, to pacify, to subdue.

pæne, almost.

pāgus, canton, district.

pār, paris, adj., equal.

parāre, to make ready, prepare.

parātus (pf. pass. partic. of parāre),
prepared, ready.

pārēre, to appear at call (as a serv-
ant), to obey; takes dative.

pars, part, direction.

parvus, minor, minimus, little, small.

passus, -ūs, a pace; the Roman mile
was a thousand paces, and the
Roman (double) pace was a little
less than five feet.

pater, -tris, father.

patēre, patuit, to lie open, extend.

patī, passus, to endure, permit.

paucī (sing. very rare), few.

pāx, pācis, peace.

pellere, pepuli, pulsus, to drive.

per, prep. with accus., through.

perducere, -dūxit, -ductus, to lead
through.

perficere (perficio), -fēcit, -fectus,
to accomplish, finish.

perfringere (per and frangere, to
break), -frēgit, -fractus, to break
through.

perfuga, masc. by meaning, a run-away, deserter.

perfugere (**perfugio**), -fūgit, to run away, desert.

periculum, that which tests, a peril.

peritus (**perīrī**, to try), experienced, skilled.

permovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, to move thoroughly or deeply, to influence strongly.

perniciēs, -ēī (**nex**), destruction.

perpaucus, very little; in plur. very few.

perrumpere, -rūpit, -ruptus, to break through.

persequī, -secūtus, to follow up, pursue.

persevērāre, to continue, persist.

persolvere, -solvit, -solūtus, to loose thoroughly, to pay in full.

persuādēre, **persuāsīt**, **persuāsum**, to persuade.

perterrēre, to frighten thoroughly.

pertinēre, -tinuit, stretch out, tend, pertain.

pervenīre, -vēnit, -ventum, to come through, arrive.

pēs, **pedis**, a foot of man or beast, and also the measure of length.

petere, **petīvit**, **petītus**, to aim at, seek.

phalanx, -gis, a close battle array, a phalanx.

pīlum, a heavy javelin.

plēbs, -bis, plebeians, common people.

plūrimus, irreg. sup. of **multus**, very much, most; in plur., very many.

plūs, **plūris** (neut. comp. of **multus**), more.

pōna, punishment, penalty.

pollicērī, **pollicitus**, to promise.

pōnere, **posuit**, **positus**, to place.

pōns, masc. by exception, a bridge.

populārī, to lay waste.

populatio (**populārī**), a laying waste, ravaging.

populus, people.

portāre, to carry.

portōrium (**portāre**), a tax, especially a tax paid on goods imported.

poscere, **poposcit**, to ask urgently, demand.

posse, **potuit** (**potis**, able, and **esse**, to be), to be able.

possessio, a possession.

post, prep. with accus., after, behind.

postea, adv., after that, afterwards.

posterus (**post**), coming after, following.

postquam, conj., later than, after, as soon as.

postrīdiē, adv. (**posterus** and **diēs**; cf. **prīdiē**), on the day after; **postrīdiē ējus diēi**, on the day after this day, on the following day.

potēns, being able, powerful.

potentia (**potēns**), power.

potestās (**posse**), power, lawful authority.

potīrī, **potītus**, to obtain; takes abl.

præcēdere, -cēssit, -cēssus, to precede, surpass.

præcipere (**præcipio**), -cēpit, -cep-tus, to take beforehand, to anticipate, to give rules, instruct, direct.

præesse, -fuit, to be over, to command; cf. **præficere**, to put in command.

præferre, -tulit, -lātus, to bear before, prefer, choose.

præficere (**præficio**), -fēcit, -fectus, to put before, set over, put in command.

præmittere, -mīsit, -missus, to send before.

præoptāre, to choose rather, prefer.

præsēns (in form, a partic. from præesse), present, immediate.

præsentia (præ and esse), a being present, presence; in præsentia, at present.

præsertim, especially.

præsidium, a sitting before, a guard.

præstāre, -stitit, -stātus, to stand before, excel, furnish; præstat, it is better.

præter, prep. with accus., along by, beyond, except.

præterire, -iit, -itus, to go by, pass by; præterita, things gone by, the past.

præterquam, adv., further than, beyond, besides.

prætor (præ and ire), a leader, commander, judge, governor.

precēs, prayers.

prendere (also written prehendere), prendit, prēnsus, to grasp.

pretium, a price.

prīdiē, adv. (prīmus and diēs; cf. postrīdiē), on the day before; prīdiē ējus diēi, on the day before this day, on the preceding day.

prīmum, adv., in the first place, first.

prīmus, first.

prīnceps, -cipis, adj. or noun, chief.

prīncipātus, -ūs, leadership.

prīstinus, former.

prīus, adv. in comp., sooner; prius quam or priusquam, conj., sooner than, before.

prīvātīm, privately, as private citizens.

prīvātus, belonging to an individual, private.

prō, prep. with abl., in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to.

probāre, to test, prove, approve.

prōdere, -dedit, -ditus, to put forth, transmit, hand down.

prœlium, battle.

profectio, a setting out, departure.

proficisci, -fectus (prō and facere, to make forward, make headway), set out, depart.

prohibēre, to keep away, prevent.

prōdicere or -jicere (prōicio), -jēcit, -jectus, to throw before or forth, fling away.

prope, adv. and prep. with accus., near; sup. proximē.

prōpellere, -pulit, -pulsus, to drive before.

propinquus, near; as noun, a relative.

prōpōnere, -posuit, -positus, to put or set forth, declare.

propter, prep. with accus., on account of.

propterea, adv., for this reason.

prōspicere (prōspicio), -spēxit, -spectus, to look forward, look out for.

prōvincia, province.

proximē, adv., latest, last, next.

proximus, nearest.

publicē, publicly, by public authority.

publicus, public.

Publius, a Roman first name, usually represented by the initial P.

puer, -i, a child, boy.

pūgna, a fight.

pūgnāre, to fight.

purgāre, to make clear, clear.

putāre, to think.

Pyrænæus, Pyrenean, of the Pyrenees.

Q.

quā, *where*.

quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty*.

quadringentī, adj., *four hundred*; cf.

quadrāgintā, indecl., *forty*.

quærere, quæsivit or -iit, quæsītus, *to seek*; cf. querī, *to complain*.

quālis, adj., *of what sort*.

quam, adv. and conj., *how, as, than*; with sup. denotes the highest possible degree.

quantus, adj. (quam, *how*), *how great, as much as*; after tantus (*so great*), quantus may be translated as.

quārē (quā and rē), *on account of which thing, wherefore*.

quartus, *fourth*.

quattuor, indecl., *four*.

-que, conj., *and*; enclitic.

querī, questus, *to complain*.

quī, quæ, quod, *who, which, what*; also used as interrogative adj.

quidem, *indeed*; in Cæsar mostly in the phrase nē . . . quidem, enclosing the emphatic word, thus nē Cæsar quidem, *not even Cæsar*.

quīn, conj., when used with the ind., *but, nay more, in fact*; when used with the subjv., *that, but that, that not*.

quīndecim (quīnque and decem), *fifteen*.

quīngentī, *five hundred*.

quīnī, distributive, *five to each, five at a time*.

quīnque, *five*.

quīntus, *fifth*.

quis, quæ, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything*.

quis, quæ, quid, interrogative pron., *who? which? what?*

quisquam, quæquam, quidquam, *any one, anything*; used in neg. clauses.

quisque, quæque, quidque or quodque, *each one, every one*.

quod, conj., *because*.

quoque, conj., *also*.

quotidiānus, *daily*.

quotidiē, adv., *daily*.

quum, conj.; see cum.

R.

rapīna (rapere, *to seize*), *plundering*.

ratio, *a reckoning, account, consideration, plan, reason*.

ratis, *a raft*.

recēns, *fresh, recent*.

recipere (recipio), -cēpit, -ceptus, *to take back, receive*; sē recipere, *to betake oneself, to retreat*.

redimere, -ēmit, -emptus, *to buy back, buy up*.

redintegrāre, *to make whole again, renew*.

redīre, -iī, -itūrus, *to go back*.

reditio, *a going back, return*.

redūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead back, withdraw*.

referre, -tulit, -lātus, *to bring back, report*.

rēgnum, *royal power, kingdom*.

rēicere or rējicere (rēicio), -jēcit, -jectus, *to throw back*.

relinquere, -līquit, -lictus, *to leave*.

reliquus, adj., *the rest of, remaining*.

reminiscī, *to remember*.

removēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to move back, remove*. [port.

renūntiāre, *to bring back word, repellere, -pulit, -pulsus, to drive back*.

repentīnus, *sudden*.

reperire, repperit, repertus, *to find out*.

reprehendere, -hendit, -hēnsus, *to hold back, blame*.

repugnāre, *to fight back, be opposed*.

rēs, rei, *a thing* (in the widest sense); its translation will vary widely with the context.

rescindere, -scidit, -scissus, *to cut away, break down*.

resciscere, -scivit or -sciit, -scītus, *to find out*.

resistere, -stitit, *to stand back, stop, resist*.

respondēre, -spondit, -spōnsus, *to answer*.

respōsum, *the thing answered, a reply*.

rēspública (also written as two words, rēs publica, and always decl. as two), *the commonweal, state, republic*.

restituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to set up again, restore*.

retinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, *to hold back*.

reverti, -versus, dep., *to return*; in the pf. tenses, the stem of act. form revertit was used by Cæsar.

Rhēnus, *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, *the Rhone*.

rīpa, *the bank of a river*.

rogāre, *to ask*.

Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum, *the Romans*.

Rōmānus, adj., *Roman*.

rota, *a wheel*.

rūrsus, adv. (for reversus, from revertere), *turned back, back, again*.

S.

sæpe, adv., *often*.

salūs, -ūtis, *a sound condition, health, welfare, safety*.

sarcinæ, *sacks, bundles*, especially soldiers' packs (carried by each soldier); cf. impedimenta.

satis, adv. or adj., *sufficiently, enough*.

satisfacere (satisfacio), -fēcit, -factūrus, *to do enough, satisfy, apologize*.

scelus, -eris, *a crime*.

scīre, scōvit, scītus, *to know*.

scūtum, *a shield*, oblong, wooden and covered with leather.

sēcrētō, *separately, in private*.

secundus, *following, second, favorable* (a wind following or right astern would be a favorable wind).

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdecim (sex and decem), indecl. numeral, *six and ten, sixteen*.

sēditiōsus, *seditions*.

sēmentis, *a sowing, planting*.

semper, *always*.

senātus, -ūs, *a body of old men, a senate*.

senex, senis, *an old man*.

sēnī (sex), distributive, *six to each, six at a time*.

sentire, sēnsit, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, think*.

sēparātīm, *separately*.

septentrio or septentriōnēs, *the Great Bear, the north*.

septimus, *seventh*.

sepultūra, *a burying, burial*.

Sēquana, fem., *the Seine*.

Sēquanī, *the Sequani*.

sequi, secūtus, *to follow*.

servītus, -ūtis (servus, *a slave*), *servitude*.

seu; see sive.

sex, *six*.

sexāgintā, *sixty*.

sī, conj., *if*.

silva, *a forest*.

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once.*
 sīn (sī and nē, not), *but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulī, *one to each, one at a time.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *on the left side, left; sinistra (manus), the left hand; cf. dextra.*

sive, conj. (sī and vel), *or if; sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

socer, *father-in-law.*

socius, *an ally.*

sōl, masc. by exception, *the sun.*

solum, adv., *only; nōn solum, . . . sed etiam, not only, . . . but also.*

solum, *the soil, the ground.*

sōlus (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj., *alone.*

soror, *sister.*

spātium, *extent, either of space or time.*

spectāre, *to look, face.*

spērāre, *to hope, expect.*

spēs, -eī, *hope.*

spontis gen., sponte abl., *wanting in other cases; in abl., with suā, it means of one's own accord, by one's self.*

statuere, statuit, statūtus, *to cause to stand, establish, decide.*

studēre, studuit, *to be eager for, desire.*

studium, *zeal, devotion, a pursuit.*

sub, prep. with accus. or abl., *under.*

subducere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to draw from below, draw up, withdraw.*

subesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be under, be near.*

subicere or subjicere (subicio), -jēcit, -jectus, *to throw under, place beneath.*

subire, -iit, -itus, irreg., *to go under or near, to undergo.*

sublevāre, *to lift up from beneath, aid.*

submovēre; see summovēre.

subsistere, -stitit, *to make a stand, resist.*

subvehere, -vēxit, -vectus, *to carry from below, i. e. to carry up.*

succēdere, -cēssit, -cēssūrus, *to go under, march up, take the place of.*

suī, gen. sing. or plur., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

sum; see esse.

sūmere, sūmpsit, sūmptus, *to take up, assume.*

summa [the fem. of summus as a noun, the highest (part), the top], *the sum.*

superus (irreg. sup. of superus), *highest.*

summovēre or submovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to remove, dislodge.*

sūmptus, -ūs (sūmere), *expense.*

superāre, *to overcome, surpass.*

superesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be over (i. e. left over), to survive; cf. præesse.*

superus, superior, suprēmus or summus, *high, higher, highest; superior, when used of time, means former.*

suppetere, -petīvit, -petitūrus (sub and petere), *to be on hand, be in store.*

suppliciter (supplex), *suppliantly, as a suppliant.*

supplicium (sub and plicāre, *to fold, bend, as the knees in kneeling*), *a kneeling, supplication, punishment.*

suprā, adv., *above, before.*

suscipere (suscipio), -cēpit, -ceptus (subs for sub, *from under, and*

capere) *to take from under, take up or upon, undertake.*

suspītio or **suspīcio**, *suspicion.*

sustinēre, **-tinuit**, **-tentus** (subs for sub, *from under*, and **tenēre**), *to hold up, hold out against, support, sustain.*

suus, possessive adj. pron., *his, her, its, their.*

T.

tabula, *a board*; hence, from the practice of using for records boards covered with wax, *a writing-tablet, or the writing on a tablet.*

tacēre, *to be silent*; also sometimes transitive, *to be silent about, pass over in silence.*

tam, adv., *so* (used mostly before adv. and adj.).

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless.*

tandem [**tam**, *so*, and termination **-dem** (*cf.* **īdem**), *just so far, so long*], *at last*; in a question, *pray.*

tantus, adj., *so much, so great.*

tēlum, *a weapon used for fighting at a distance, a missile.*

temperantia (**temperāre**), *self-control, moderation.* [*frain.*

temperāre, *to govern one's self, re-*
temptāre or **tentāre** (**tenēre**), *to hand'e, try.*

tempus, **-oris**, *time.*

tenēre, **tenuit**, **tentus**, *to hold.*

terra, *the earth, a country.*

tertius, *third.*

testis, masc. or fem., *a witness.*

timēre, **timuit**, *to fear.*

timor (**timēre**), *fear, alarm.*

Titus, a Roman first name, usually represented by initial **T.**

tolerāre, *to bear, endure, maintain.*

tollere, **sustulit**, **sublātus**, irreg., *to lift up, remove, destroy.*

tōtus (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-ī**), *the who'e, the whole of, entire.*

trādere, **-didit**, **-ditus**, *to hand over, hand down, surrender.*

trādūcere or **trānsdūcere**, **-dūxit**, **-ductus**, *to lead across*; *cf.* **trānsīre**.

trāgula, *a heavy, Gallic javelin.*

trāns, prep. with accus., *across.*

trānsfigere, **-fixit**, **-fixus**, *to pierce through, transfix.*

trānsire, **-iit**, **-itus**, *to go across.*

trecentī, adj., *three hundred.*

trēs, *three.*

tribuere, **tribuit**, **tribūtus**, *to assign, ascribe.*

trīdium, *the space of three days*; *cf.* **biduum.**

trīginta, indecl. adj., *thirty.*

triplex, **-icis** (**trēs** and **plicāre**, *to fold*), *threefold, triple.*

tum, adv. of time, *then.*

tuus, *thy, thine, your*; *cf.* **suus.**

U.

ubi, *when, where.*

ulciscī, **ultus**, *to avenge, punish.*

ullus (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-ī**), adj., *any.*

ulterior, adj. (positive wanting, **ultimus**, sup.), *farther.*

ūnā, adv., *together.*

unde, *from which place, whence.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

ūnus (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-ī**), adj., *one.*

urbs, *a city*; to a Roman, often *the city of Rome*, just as "the city" means *Boston* to one living in the suburbs of that city.

ut or utī, conj., *that, in order that, so that*; if followed by the ind., *as or when*.

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), adj., *which (of two)?*

ūtī, ūsus, *to use*; takes abl.

uxor, *wife*.

V.

vacāre, *to be empty, vacant*.

vadium, *a ford, a shallow*.

vagārī, *to wander*.

valēre, valuit, valitūrus, *to be strong or powerful, to avail*.

vallum (vallus, *a stake*), *a line of stakes, a palisade, generally with earth behind it, a wall of earth, a rampart*.

vastāre (vastus, *empty*), *to make empty, to lay waste*.

vectigal, *tax, revenue*.

vel, or; vel . . . vel, *either . . . or*.

velle, voluit, irreg., *to wish*.

venīre, vēnit, ventum, *to come*.

verbum, *a word*.

verērī, *to feel awe of, fear*.

vergere, *to slope, verge, be situated*.

vergobretus, *the title of the chief magistrate among the Hædui*.

vērus, *true, right*.

vesper, -ī, *the evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your, plur.*; cf. tuus, *thy or your, sing.*

veterānus, *old, veteran*; as noun, *a tried soldier, a veteran*.

vetus, -eris, *old, former*.

vexāre, *to annoy, vex*.

via, *way*.

victōria, *victory*.

vīcus (cf. -wich in *Norwich*), *a group of houses, a village, street*.

vidēre, vīdit, vīsus, *to see*; in pass., *often, to seem*.

vigilia, *watchfulness, a watch of the night*; the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise, whatever its length, into four equal watches.

vīgintī, indecl., *twenty*.

vincere, vīcit, victus, *to conquer*.

vinculum or vinclum, *that which binds, hence, a rope, chain, fetter*.

virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valor*.

vīs, gen. vīs, *force, violence*; in plur. virēs, *strength*.

vīta, *life*.

vītāre, *to shun*.

vix, adv., *with effort, with difficulty, scarcely*.

vocāre, *to call, summon*.

volēbat; see velle.

voluntās (volent(i)-, stem of pres. partic. of velle, *to wish*, and -tās), *willingness, will, desire*.

vōs, nom. and accus. plur., *you*; cf. poss. adj. vester.

vulgus or volgus (of the -o decl., neut. by exception, and hence having nom. and accus. alike; wanting in plur.), *the public, the crowd, the mob*.

vulnerāre or volnerāre, *to wound*.

vulnus or volnus, *a wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — The following Vocabulary contains the most common meanings of the Latin words used in the first twenty Chapters of Cæsar's Gallic War. Where proper names have the same form in English as in Latin, it has been thought unnecessary to give them.

The Vocabulary is intended to be merely suggestive. Fuller particulars in regard to all these words will be found in the Latin-English Vocabulary. The pupil who thoroughly masters the words as they occur in the Lessons will need to consult this Vocabulary very little. In all cases, before looking up a word the Latin for which seems unfamiliar, stop and think where that word has occurred in the text. Then look up the passage, and note the construction and any peculiarity in the use of the word. Only thus can skill in Latin composition be gained. Study the text and base your own Latin upon it.

If you fail to find the word you are looking for, turn to its simplest synonym. The number of Latin words in common use is more limited than in English, and many simple Latin words have a great variety of English meaning. The dash has been used to avoid the repetition of an English word just used; thus, *not*, *nōn*; *and* —, *neque*.

A.

able, to be —, *posse*.

about, circiter.

accept, accipere.

accident, cāsus.

accomplish, perficere.

accord, of one's own —, *suā sponte*.

account, on — *of*, *propter, ob*.

accuse, accūsāre.

accustom one's self, cōsuēscere.

across, trāns.

add, to be added, accēdere.

admire, admirārī.

adverse, adversus.

advice, auctōritās.

advise, monēre.

affect, afficere.

affirm, cōfirmāre.

against, contrā; in composition, *ob*.

agreed, it is —, *convenit*.

aid, auxilium.

akin by blood, cōsanguineus.

all, omnis; in —, *omnīnō*.

ally, socius.

almost, ferē.

alone, sōlus.

Alps, Alpēs.

already, jam.

also, quoque, etiam, item.

altogether, omnīnō.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus.

ambush, insidiæ.

among, inter, apud.
 ample, amplus.
 and, et, -que, atque.
 angry, to be — at, graviter ferre.
 animal, a yoke or draught —, jūmentum.
 announce, nūntiāre.
 annoy, vexāre; to be annoyed at, graviter ferre.
 annual, annuus.
 another, alius; belonging to —, aliēnus.
 answer, respōnsum; to —, respondēre.
 any, ullus, aliquī; — one, quisquam; if — one, si quis.
 approach, adventus; to —, instāre, accēdere.
 April, Aprīlis.
 arms, arma.
 army, exercitus; — on the march, agmen; — in line of battle, aciēs.
 arrange, cōstituere, instituire.
 arrive, pervenire.
 as, ut or utī, quam, or appositive.
 ask, rogāre.
 assign, tribuere.
 assume, sūmere.
 at last, dēmum.
 attack, aggredī, adorīrī.
 attempt, cōnātum, cōnātus.
 audacity, audācia.
 authority, auctōritās.
 avenge, ulciscī.

B.

baggage, without —, expeditus.
 bank (of a river), rīpa.
 battle, proelium.
 be, esse; — near, adesse; — distant, abesse; — in command, præesse;

— of interest, interesse; — unwilling, nōlle; — well-disposed, esse bonō animō, cupere; — annoyed at, graviter ferre; — at hand, instāre; — on hand, suppetere.
 bear, ferre; — into, inferre; — out, efferre.
 because, quod.
 before, ante, prep.; antea, adv.; priusquam, conj.
 beg, orāre.
 began, cœpit.
 beginning, initium.
 behind, post.
 beseech, obsecrāre.
 besides, præterquam.
 betake one's self, sē recipere, sē cōnferre.
 between, inter.
 beware of, cavēre.
 beyond, extrā.
 bid, licērī.
 bind, obstringere.
 blame, reprehendere.
 boast, glōriārī.
 boat, linter.
 boldly, audācter.
 boldness, audācia.
 bordering upon, finitimus.
 bound, continēre.
 bountifully, largiter.
 brave, fortis.
 bravery, fortitūdo.
 break down, rescindere; — through, perrumpere.
 bribe, largīrī.
 bribery, largitio.
 bridge, pōns.
 bring together, condūcere, cōnferre; — in, importāre; — back word, renūntiāre.
 brother, frāter.

brotherly, frāternus.
 building, ædificium.
 burn, cremāre; — up, combūrere,
 exūrere.
 but, sed, autem; — if, sīn.
 buy, emere, coēmere; — back, re-
 dimere.
 by, ā or ab.

C.

Calends, Kalendæ.
 call (summon) vocāre; — (by name)
 appellāre; — together, convo-
 cāre.
 camp, castra.
 canton, pāgus.
 care, to take —, cūrāre, cavēre.
 carry, portāre; — together, compor-
 tāre; — up, subvehere; — on,
 gerere.
 Cassius, pertaining to —, Cassiānus.
 cart, carrus.
 cast down, dējicere.
 castle, castellum.
 cause, causa; to —, committere.
 cavalry, equitātus; adj. equester.
 chain, vinculum or vinclum.
 chance, cāsus.
 change, commūtatio.
 character, mōrēs.
 chief, princeps.
 children, liberī.
 choose, dēligere.
 city, urbs.
 civilization, cultus.
 client, cliēns.
 cold, frīgus.
 collect, cōgere, cōnferre.
 come, venīre; — together, conve-
 nire; — through, pervenire.
 comfort, cōsōlārī.

command, imperāre, jubēre, præ-
 esse; without —, injūssū.
 commit, committere, mandāre.
 compel, cōgere.
 complain, querī.
 concerning, dē.
 condemn, damnāre.
 confer with, colloquī.
 conscious, cōnscius.
 conspiracy, conjūratio.
 consul, cōnsul.
 consume, consūmere.
 continue, perseverāre.
 continually, continenter.
 converse with, colloquī.
 council, concilium.
 country, terra, finēs.
 courage, animus.
 crime, scelus.
 crowd, vulgus.
 custom, institūtum, mōs.
 cut to pieces, concidere.

D.

daily, quotidiānus, adj.; quotidiē,
 adv.
 danger, periculum.
 dare, audēre.
 daughter, filia.
 day, diēs; by —, interdiū.
 death, mors, nex.
 debtor, obārātus.
 deceit, dolus.
 deceive, dēcipere.
 decide, statuere.
 declare, prōponere.
 decree, cōnsciscere.
 deep, altus.
 defend, dēfendere.
 depart, proficisci, discēdere.
 departure, profectio.

depth, altitūdō.
describe, dēsīgnāre.
desert, meritum.
deserve, merērī.
desire, voluntās, cupiditās; *to* —, studēre, cupere.
desist, dēsistere.
despair, dēspērāre.
despise, dēspicere.
destroy, tollere.
destruction, internecio, perniciēs.
deter, dēterrēre.
determine, cōstituere.
devotion, studium.
die, morī.
differ, differre.
difficult, difficilis.
difficulty, with —, vix.
disaster, calamitās.
discuss, agere, jactāre.
dismiss, dīmittere.
disposition, nātūra.
distant, *to be* —, abesse.
district, pāgus.
ditch, fossa.
divide, dividere.
do, agere, facere.
doubt, dubitatio; *to* —, dubitāre.
doubtful, dubius.
draw, dūcere; — *up*, instruere.
drive, pellere, agere; — *back*, repellere; — *before*, prōpellere.

E.

eagerly, cupidē.
early, mātūrus.
earth, terra.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis.
effeminate, *to make* —, effēmināre.
eighty, octōgintā.

either . . . *or*, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.
elect, creāre.
elders, majōrēs.
embassy, lēgatio.
embrace, cōmplectī.
encourage, cōnfirmāre.
end, finis; *the* — *of*, extrēmus, adj.
enemy, hostis.
enervate, effēmināre.
enforce, exsequī.
enough, satis.
enroll, cōnscribere.
especially, maximē, præsertim.
establish, cōnfirmāre, statuere.
even, etiam; *not* —, nē . . . quidem.
every, omnis; — *one*, quisque.
example, exemplum.
excel, præstāre.
excellent, ēgregius.
except, præter.
expect, exspectāre.
expense, sūmptus.
extend, patēre.
extent, spatium.
extreme, extrēmus.
eye, oculus.

F.

face, spectāre.
faith, fidēs.
fall, cadere.
far, longē.
farther, ulterior, adj.
father, pater; *father-in-law*, socer.
favor, beneficium, grātia; *to* —, favēre.
favorable, secundus.
fear, timēre, verērī.
feel, sentīre.
feelings, animus.

few, pauci; *a very* —, perpauci.
field, ager.

fifteen, quīdecim.

fifth, quīntus.

fight back, repugnāre.

find out, reperire.

finish, perficere.

fire, to set — to, incendere.

firm, firmus.

first, prīmus.

five, quīnque; — *to each*, quīnī; —
hundred, quīngentī.

flow, fluere; — *into*, influere.

flight, fuga.

fodder, pābulum.

follow, sequi; — *up*,³ exsequi, in-
sequi.

following, posterus.

fond, cupidus.

food, pābulum.

foot, pēs.

for, prō, prep.; nam, enim, con-
junctions.

foraging, pābulatio.

force, vis.

forces, cōpiæ.

ford, vadum.

foreign, aliēnus.

forest, silva.

forget, oblivisci.

former, vetus, prīstinus, superior.

fortification, mūnitio.

fortify strongly, commūnīre.

fortune, fortūna.

forty, quadrāgintā.

four, quattuor; — *hundred*, qua-
dringentī.

fourth, quartus.

fraternal, frāternus.

freedom, libertās.

freely, liberē.

fresh, recēns.

friend, amicus, familiāris, necēs-
sarius.

friendship, amicitia.

frighten thoroughly, perterrere.

from, ā or ab, ē or ex.

front, in —, adversus, adj.

fruitful, frūmentārius.

furnish, præstare.

G.

Gaul, Gallia.

generosity, liberālitās.

Geneva, Lake —, Lemannus.

gentleness, lēnitās.

Germans, Germānī.

give, dare; — *bountifully*, largīrī.

glory, glōria; *to* —, glōriārī.

go, ire; — *out*, exīre; — *across*,
trānsīre; — *to*, accēdere; — *back*
and forth, commeāre.

god, deus.

good, bonus.

grain, frūmentum.

grandfather, avus.

grasp, prendere orprehendere.

great; māgnus; *so* —, tantus.

greatly, māgnopere.

Greeks, Græcī.

grief, dolor.

grieve for, dolēre.

grind, molere.

grow, crēscere.

guard, custōs, præsidium.

H.

hand, right —, dextra; *to* — *down*,
prōdere.

happen, accidere.

hasten, contendere, mātūrāre.

hate, ōdisse.

have, habēre.

he, is.

heavily, graviter.

height, altitūdo.

help, auxilium.

Helvetian, Helvētius, adj. and noun.

her, suus, ejus.

hesitate, dubitāre.

hide, abdere.

high, altus, superus; high-born, nō-bilis.

himself, ipse.

hire, condūcere.

his, suus, ejus.

hither, citerior, adj.

hold, tenēre; — back, retinēre.

home, domus.

honor, honor.

hope, spēs; to —, spērāre.

horseman, eques.

hostage, obses.

house, domus.

household, familia.

how, quam; — great, quantus.

hundred, centum; four —, quadringentī; five —, quīgentī.

I.

I, ego.

Ides, Idūs.

if, sī; but —, sīn.

immortal, immortālis.

impede, impedire.

import, importāre.

impunity, impūnitās; with —, impūne.

in, in.

inconvenient, incommodus.

increase, augēre, trans.; crēscere, intrans.

incredible, incrēdibilis.

induce, indūcere.

influence, auctōritās.

information, indicium.

inhabit, incolere.

injustice, injūria.

insolently, insolenter.

instruct, instruere.

insult, contumēlia.

intercessor, dēprecātor.

interest, to be of —, interesse.

interpreter, interpres.

intervene, intercēdere.

intimate, familiāris.

into, in.

it, is, ea, id.

its, suus, ejus.

J.

join, jungere; — battle, praelium committere.

journey, iter.

judge, jūdicāre.

justice, jūstitia.

K.

keep away, prohibēre.

Kelts, Celtæ.

kill, interficere, occīdere, concīdere.

kindness, grātia.

kingdom, rēgnum.

know, scīre, intellegere, cōgnōvisse.

knight, eques.

known, make —, ēnūntiāre.

L.

lake, lacus.

language, lingua.

last, at —, dēnum.

law, lēx.

lay, — waste, vastāre, populārī, dēpopulārī; a laying waste, populātio.

lead, dūcere; — into, indūcere; — to, addūcere; — through, perdūcere; — out, ēdūcere; — across, trādūcere; — away, abdūcere.

leader, dux, princeps.

leadership, principātus.

learn, discere, cōgnōscere.

least, minimē.

leave, relinquere.

length, longitūdo.

less, minus.

lessen, minuere, dēminuere.

lest, nē.

liberty, libertās.

lieutenant, lēgātus.

life, vīta.

lift up, sublevāre, tollere.

line (of march), agmen.

little, parvus.

long (of time), diū, adv.; diūturnus, adj.

look, spectāre.

lose thoroughly, persolvere.

love, amor.

lower, inferior, adj.

M.

magistrate, magistrātus.

make, facere; — known, ēnūntiāre.

man, homo.

many, multus, in plur.; very —, complūrēs.

march, iter; to —, iter facere.

marriage, mātīmōnium.

marry, nūbere.

may, licet.

means, opēs.

meanwhile, intereā, interim.

measure, mētīrī.

meet, convenīre.

meeting, conventus.

memory, memoria.

mention, commemorāre.

merchant, mercātor.

merit, meritum; to —, merērī.

mind, animus.

mine, meus.

misfortune, incommodum.

moderation, temperantia.

month, mēnsis.

moreover, autem, accēdit ut or quod.

mother, māter.

mountain, mōns.

move, movēre; — deeply, permovēre, commovēre.

much, multus.

multitude, multitūdo.

N.

name, nōmen.

narrow, angustus.

narrowness, angustiae.

nature, nātūra.

nay more, quā.

near, propinquus.

nearest, proximus.

necessary, necēssārius; it is —, oportet.

necessarily, necēssariō.

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus.

next, proximus.

night, by —, noctū.

nine, novem.

no man, no one, nēmo.

noble (by birth), nōbilis.

nobility, nōbilitās.

none, nullus.

Noric, Nōricus.

north, septentrio.

not, nōn, nē; and —, neque (nec);

— yet, nōndum; — even, nē . . .

quidem.

nothing, nihil.

notice, animadvertere.

nourish, alere.

number, numerus; a great —, multi-
tudo.

O.

oath, jūsjurandum.

obtain, potiri, cōsequi; — one's re-
quest, impetrare.

ocean, Oceanus.

of, de.

offence, offensio.

offend, offendere.

often, sæpe.

old, antiquus, vetus.

one, unus; — hundred, centum; no
—, nemo; — at a time, singuli.

only, solum, modo.

opinion, existimatio.

opportunity, facultas.

oppose, to be opposed, repugnare.

or, aut, vel; — if, sive.

order, jubere.

other, alius, alter.

ought, debere.

our, noster.

out of, ex or ex.

overcome, superare.

overhang, impendere.

owe, debere.

P.

pace, passus.

pardon, condonare.

part, pars.

pass by, præterire.

past, præterita, plur.

pay in full, persolvere.

peace, pax.

people, populus; common —, plēbs,
vulgus.

peril, periculum.

permit, pati; it is permitted, licet.

persuade, persuadere.

pertain, pertinere.

place, locus; to the same —, eodem;

to —, ponere; — here and there,

dispōnere; — aside, depōnere;

— at a disadvantage, impedire.

plan, cōsiliū.

planting, sementis.

pleading, dictio.

plenty, cōpia.

plunder, rapina.

point out, designare.

ponder, deliberare.

popularity, grātia.

possess, obtinere.

possession, possessio.

power, potestas, potentia, nervi;

royal —, rēgnum; supreme —,

imperium.

powerful, potēns.

pray, orare.

prayers, precēs.

prefer, præferre.

prepare, comparare.

press upon, instare.

present, præsens; at —, in præsentiā;

to be —, adesse.

prevent, prohibere.

price, pretium.

private, privatus.

privately, privatim.

promise, fidēs; to —, polliceri.

property, res familiāris.

proportion, in — to, prō.
prove, probāre.
province, prōvincia.
provisions, cibāria.
provoke, lacescere.
public, publicus.
publicly, publicē.
punish, ulciscī, animadvertere in.
punishment, supplicium, pœna; with-
out —, impūne.
pursue, persequī.
pursuit, studium.
put in command, præficere.
Pyrenean, Pŷrēnæus.

Q.

quickly, celeriter.

R.

raft, ratis.
ravaging, populatio.
reach, attingere.
ready, parātus.
rear, novissimum agmen.
reason, causa.
receive, recipere.
recent, recēns.
recently, nūper.
reckless, improbus.
refinement, hūmānitās.
refrain, temperāre.
relationship (by marriage), adfinitās.
relative, propinquus, necēssārius,
nouns.
rely upon, nīti.
remaining, reliquus.
remarkable, insignis, incrēdibilis.
remember, reminiscī.
remind, monēre; — forcibly, commo-
nefacere.

remove, removērē.
reply, respōsum; to —, respondēre.
report, renūntiāre.
republic, rēpublica.
resist, subsistere.
rest, the — of, reliquus.
restore, restituere.
restrain, coërcēre.
retinue, familia.
retreat, sē recipere.
return, reditio; to —, redire, reverti
revolution, novæ rēs.
Rhine, Rhēnus.
Rhone, Rhodanus.
richest, dītissimus.
ridge, jugum.
right, jūs.
ripe, mātūrus.
rise, orīrī.
river, flūmen.
route, iter.
royal power, rēgnum.
running together, concursus.

S.

same, Idem; to the — place, eōdem.
satisfy, satisfacere.
say, dicere; — . . . not, negāre.
scarcely, vix.
scout, explōrator.
second, secundus.
sedition, sēditiōsus.
see, vidēre.
seek, petere, quærere.
seem, vidēre, in pass.
Seine, Sēquana.
seize, occupāre.
self, ipse.
senate, senātus.
send, mittere; — before, præmittere.

separately, sēcrētō, sēparātīm.

servitude, servitūs.

set out, proficiscī ; — *up*, collocāre ;

— *forth*, prōpōnere ; — *fire to*,
incendere.

setting, occāsus.

seventh, septimus.

severely, graviter.

ship, nāvis.

show, ostendere, dēmōnstrāre.

shun, vitāre.

side, on this — *of*, citrā ; *from all sides*,
on all sides, undique.

sight, cōspectus.

silent, be —, tacēre.

since, cum.

sinew, nervus.

sister, soror.

situated, be —, vergere.

six to each, sēnī.

sixteen, sēdecim.

slope, vergere.

small, parvus.

smoothness, lēnitās.

snatch away, ēripere.

so, ita, tam ; — *great*, tantus.

soil, solum.

soldier, miles.

some, nonnullus.

sometimes, nōnnunquam, interdum.

son, filius.

sooner, prius ; — *than*, prius-
quam.

sowing, sēmentis.

Spain, Hispānia.

speak, loquī.

speech, ōrātiō.

spy, explōrātor.

stand, take a —, cōsistere.

state, civitās.

storm, oppūgnāre.

strength, vīrēs.

stretch out, pertinēre.

strive, nīti, contendere.

strong, firmus ; *be* —, valēre.

subdue, pācāre.

sudden, repentinus.

sufficiently, satis.

summon, convocāre, adhibēre.

sun, sōl.

sure, certus.

surpass, prācēdere.

suspicion, suspicio or suspitio.

Switzerland, Helvētia.

T.

take, capere ; — *upon*, suscipere ;

— *back*, recipere ; — *up*, sūmere ;

— *by storm*, expūgnāre ; — *care*,

cūrāre, cavēre ; — *a stand*, cōn-
sistere.

tax, vectīgal, portōrium.

tear, lacrima.

ten, decem.

tend, pertinēre.

territory, finēs.

than, quam.

that, ille, is, pronouns ; — *or so* —,

ut, utī ; — *or but* —, quā ; —, —

not or lest, nē.

their, suus, eōrum.

then, tum.

thence, inde.

there, ibi, illīc.

therefore, itaque.

thing, rēs.

think, putāre, exīstimāre, arbitrārī.

third, tertius.

this, hic, is.

thousand, mille.

three, trēs.

through, per.

throw, jacere; to keep throwing, jac-tāre.

thy, tuus.

time, tempus; at the same —, simul. together, ūnā.

touch upon, attingere.

town, oppidum.

treachery, insidiā.

trial, iudicium.

troops, cōpiæ.

trouble, with the greatest —, ægerrimē.

true, vērus.

try, cōnārī.

turn away, āvertere.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vīgintī

two, duo; — hundred, ducentī.

U.

unaware, īnsciēns.

under, sub.

undergo, subīre.

understand, intellegere.

undertake, suscipere, cōnārī.

undertaking, cōnātum.

unexpectedly, imprōvisō.

unexpected, inopināns.

unfavorable, adversus.

unfriendly, inimīcus.

unite, adscīscere.

until, dum.

unwilling, invītus; to be —, nōlle.

urge, hortārī, incitāre.

use, ūtī.

V.

valor, virtūs.

vex, vexāre.

victory, victōria.

village, vīcus.

virtue, virtūs.

visit, commeāre ad.

W.

wage, gerere; — upon, īferre; —

war, bellāre.

wait for, exspectāre.

wall, mūrūs.

wander, vagārī.

war, bellum.

warlike, bellicōsus.

warn, monēre.

waste, lay —, vastāre, populārī.

watch (of the night), vigilia.

way, via, iter.

we, nōs.

weapon, tēlum.

weep, flēre.

well-disposed, to be —, esse bonō

animō, cupere.

well-known, nōbilis.

when, ubi, cum, ut.

where, ubi, quā.

wherefore, quārē.

whether . . . or, sive . . . sive.

which, quī; — (of two), uter.

while, dum.

who, quī.

whole, tōtus.

wicked, improbus.

wide, lātus.

widely, lātē.

width, lātitūdo.

wife, uxor.

win over, conciliāre.

winter quarters, hīberna; to winter,

hiemāre.

wish, voluntās; to —, velle.

with, cum.

without, sine ; — *command*, injūssū.

witness, testis.

wonder at, admirārī.

wont, be —, cōnsuēvisse.

word, verbum.

work, opus.

wrong, injūria.

wrong-doing, maleficium.

Y.

year, annus ; *two years*, biennium.

yearly, annuus.

yet, tamen ; *not* —, nōndum.

yield, concēdere.

yoke, jugum.

you, vōs, tū.

your, vester, tuus.

Language and Grammar.

Text-books representing the best established usage and the most progressive thought and methods in language instruction.

CLARK'S GRAMMARS.

By S. W. CLARK, A.M.

Clark's Easy Lessons in Language 25 cents

Clark's Normal Grammar 70 cents

Clark's method of presenting the subject of grammar has been for many years very popular and successful, and still retains a large share of public favor.

CONKLIN'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

65 cents

By B. Y. CONKLIN.

A complete graded course, compassing the entire range of the usual two-book course.

HARVEY'S REVISED GRAMMARS.

Harvey's Revised Elementary Grammar 42 cents

Harvey's Revised Practical English Grammar 65 cents

Harvey's Revised Grammars include the most valuable features of the "language lesson" system, while retaining all that is inseparable from a thorough knowledge of technical grammar.

HOLBROOK'S NEW ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

By ALFRED HOLBROOK, President National Normal University

65 cents

A complete course in grammar, based on the objective method of teaching.

KERL'S GRAMMARS.

Kerl's Language Lessons 32 cents

Kerl's Common-School Grammar 72 cents

These two books form a practical course in English grammar. In arrangement of subjects, clearness and brevity of definitions, and system of analysis, Kerl's Grammars have few superiors.

LYTE'S GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

65 cents

By E. O. LYTE.

Designed for common-school grades or for pupils who have received some elementary instruction in the use and form of language. Prominence is given to composition and letter-writing.

MAXWELL'S LANGUAGE SERIES.

Maxwell's Primary Lessons in Language and Composition	30 cents
Maxwell's Introductory Lessons in English Grammar	40 cents
Maxwell's Complete Grammar (in press).	-

Designed to train young children in the proper use of the words that belong to a child's vocabulary, and to give them facility in the use of such sentence forms as they can readily imitate and employ.

QUACKENBOS'S LANGUAGE SERIES.

Quackenbos's Illustrated Lessons in our Language	42 cents
Quackenbos's English Grammar	63 cents

These two books form a popular course in language. They are intended to impart a practical knowledge of English grammar in as easy and attractive a manner as possible.

SWINTON'S LANGUAGE SERIES.

Swinton's Language Primer	28 cents
Swinton's Language Lessons	38 cents
Swinton's New English Grammar	56 cents

Swinton's Language Series takes the pupil from the primary grades through the advanced grades in high schools, academies, etc. In these books the inductive method is skillfully applied and the correct use of language simply and practically developed.

WELLS'S SHORTER COURSE IN ENGLISH

<u>GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION</u>	36 cents
--	----------

By W. H. WELLS, A.M.

This is a complete common-school course in language lessons, grammar, composition and letter-writing. It is a book of progressive exercises in speaking and writing English, accompanied by a constant application of principles and rules.

Copies of the above books will be mailed to any address, postpaid, on receipt of price. Full catalogue sent on application. Correspondence in reference to the introduction of our books is cordially invited.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,

NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO

American History for Schools.

BARNES'S SERIES:

Barnes's Primary History of the United States. By T. F. DONNELLY. For Intermediate Classes. Fully illustrated. A fitting introduction to Barnes's Historical Series. 60 cents.

Barnes's Brief History of the United States. Revised to the present Administration. The page has been enlarged and reset in larger and clearer type, and the work is embellished with many new cuts and maps. \$1.00.

ECLECTIC SERIES:

Eclectic Primary History of the United States. By EDWARD S. ELLIS. A book for younger classes, or those who have not the time to devote to a more complete history. 50 cents.

New Eclectic History of the United States. By M. E. THALHEIMER. A revised, enlarged, and improved edition of the "Eclectic History of the United States." Fully illustrated with engravings, colored plates, etc. \$1.00.

EGGLESTON'S SERIES:

Eggleston's First Book in American History. By EDWARD EGGLESTON. With Special Reference to the Lives and Deeds of Great Americans. Beautifully illustrated. A history for beginners on a new plan. 60 cents.

Eggleston's History of the United States and its People. By EDWARD EGGLESTON. For the Use of Schools. Fully illustrated with engravings, maps, and colored plates. \$1.05.

NILES'S SCHOOL HISTORY:

Niles's School History of the United States. By SANFORD NILES. A comprehensive book, attractively written and illustrated. Adapted for use in Grammar Grades. 75 cents.

QUACKENBOS SERIES:

Quackenbos's Elementary History of the United States. Revised and corrected by J. D. QUACKENBOS, A.M., M.D. Fully illustrated with maps and engravings. 60 cents.

Quackenbos's School History of the United States. From the Earliest Discoveries to the Present Time. Illustrated. \$1.05.

SWINTON'S SERIES:

Swinton's First Lessons in Our Country's History. Admirably adapted for use either as a text-book for beginners or as a supplementary reader. 48 cents.

Swinton's Condensed History of the United States. Revised edition. Illustrated with colored maps, portraits, etc. 90 cents.

Any of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, on receipt of price. Complete price-list sent on application.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY, Publishers,
NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO

GEOGRAPHY.

STANDARD TWO-BOOK SERIES.

All of these geographies have been edited with great care to present the latest information regarding the geography of the world and the results of the most recent researches and discoveries. They also have special editions for some or all of the States.

APPLETONS' STANDARD GEOGRAPHIES.

Appletons' Elementary Geography	55 cents
Appletons' Higher Geography	\$1.25

The elementary book is objective in method. In the advanced, special prominence is given to industrial, commercial, and practical features.

BARNES'S NEW GEOGRAPHIES. By JAMES MONTEITH.

Barnes's Elementary Geography	55 cents
Barnes's Complete Geography	\$1.25

A special feature of these books is the plan of teaching by comparison, or association of ideas. The advanced book includes Physical, Descriptive, Commercial, and Industrial Geography.

CORNELL'S GEOGRAPHIES. Revised Series.

Cornell's Primary Geography (New Edition)	42 cents
Cornell's Intermediate Geography (New Edition)	86 cents

These popular books have been entirely revised, yet the distinctive features of the series remain unchanged.

ECLECTIC GEOGRAPHIES. New Two-Book Series.

Eclectic Elementary Geography	55 cents
Eclectic Complete Geography	\$1.20

The text of the Eclectic Geographies is comprehensive and simply worded. The maps show physical features of the earth's surface fully and accurately.

HARPER'S GEOGRAPHIES.

Harper's Introductory Geography	48 cents
Harper's School Geography	\$1.08

The introductory book is written in pleasing narrative style. The advanced book presents physical and political elements in proper order of sequence, showing relations of industries and wealth to physical characteristics.

NILES'S GEOGRAPHIES.

Niles's Elementary Geography	44 cents
Niles's Advanced Geography	\$1.00

The elementary book consists of interesting reading lessons, cultivating observation and exciting the imagination. The advanced book includes Mathematical, Physical, and Political Geography.

SWINTON'S GEOGRAPHIES.

Swinton's Introductory Geography	55 cents
In Readings and Recitations.	
Swinton's Grammar-School Geography	\$1.25
Physical, Political, and Commercial.	

The text of these books is carefully graded so that the Introductory connects with the Grammar School without the need of any intermediate manual.

Any of the above books will be sent, postpaid, to any address on receipt of price. Correspondence in reference to the introduction of these books is cordially invited. Special allowances made when books are exchanged.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO

Physical Geography.

In addition to the series of Political Geographies published by the American Book Company, their list includes the following standard and popular text-books on Physical Geography :

APPLETONS' PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Large 4to \$1.60

Prepared by a corps of scientific experts with richly-illustrated engravings, diagrams, and maps in color, and including a separate chapter on the geological history and the physical features of the United States.

CORNELL'S PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Large 4to \$1.12

Revised edition, with such alterations and additions as were found necessary to bring the work in all respects up to date.

ECLECTIC PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

12mo \$1.00

By RUSSELL HINMAN. A new work in a new and convenient form. All irrelevant matter is omitted and the pages devoted exclusively to Physical Geography clearly treated in the light of recent investigations. The numerous charts, cuts, and diagrams are drawn with accuracy, fully illustrating the text.

GUYOT'S PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Large 4to \$1.60

By ARNOLD GUYOT. Revised, with new plates and newly-engraved maps. A standard work by one of the ablest of modern geographers. All parts of the subject are presented in their true relations and in their proper subordination.

MONTEITH'S NEW PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

4to \$1.00

A new and comprehensive work, embracing the results of recent research in this field, including Physiography, Hydrography, Meteorology, Terrestrial Magnetism, and Vulcanology. The topical arrangement of subjects adapts the work for use in grammar grades as well as for high and normal schools.

Any of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, on receipt of price. Full price-list of books on all subjects for all grades will be sent on application.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,
NEW YORK .: CINCINNATI .: CHICAGO

Standard Two-Book Series in Arithmetic.

Popular Books, Freshly Written, Attractive, Carefully Graded.

APPLETONS' STANDARD ARITHMETICS.

Appletons' Numbers Illustrated	36 cents
Appletons' Numbers Applied	75 cents

These books embody many new and practical features. The primary book is objective in method ; the advanced book inductive.

FICKLIN'S NEW ARITHMETICS.

Ficklin's Elementary Arithmetic	40 cents
Ficklin's National Arithmetic	70 cents

A complete arithmetical course, designed to teach arithmetic by the smallest expenditure of *time, labor* and *money*.

FISH'S NEW ARITHMETICS.

Fish's Arithmetic, Number One	30 cents
Fish's Arithmetic, Number Two	60 cents

The latest and best result of Mr. Fish's life-long studies in this department of text-book authorship. The books are fresh and bright in methods of treatment and present many novel features.

HARPER'S GRADED ARITHMETICS.

Harper's First Book in Arithmetic	30 cents
Harper's Second Book in Arithmetic	60 cents

A common-school series, complete in two books, combining oral and written work. The minimum of theory and maximum of practice.

MILNE'S ARITHMETICS.

Milne's First Lessons in Arithmetic	22 cents
Milne's Practical Arithmetic	50 cents

A complete course prepared on the inductive method, including oral and written exercises.

WHITE'S NEW ARITHMETICS.

White's First Book of Arithmetic	30 cents
White's New Complete Arithmetic	65 cents

White's New Arithmetics constitute one of the strongest and most attractive two-book series published.

Any of the above books will be sent, postpaid, to any address on receipt of price. Our complete list embraces standard and popular books for all grades. Correspondence is cordially invited.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,

NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO

Forum a. m. 1800

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

10 Jul 51 PY

Jul 31 51 LU

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045917361

Harper

60772

